	Pictorial index	Search by illustration
1	**For safety and security**	Make sure to read through them
2	**Instrument cluster**	How to read the gauges and meters, the variety of warning lights and indicators, etc.
3	**Operation of each component**	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving, etc.
4	**Driving**	Operations and advice which are necessary for driving
5	**Audio system**	Operating the audio system
6	**Interior features**	Usage of the interior features, etc.
7	**Maintenance and care**	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures
8	**When trouble arises**	What to do in case of malfunction or emergency
9	**Vehicle specifications**	Vehicle specifications, customizable features, etc.
	Index	Search by symptom
		Search alphabetically

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 2 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

For your information 8
Reading this manual.....12
How to search 13
Pictorial index.....14

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use
Before driving.....30
For safety drive 32
Seat belts.....34
SRS airbags.....38
Airbag manual on-off system 48
Safety information for children 50
Child restraint systems 51
Installing child restraints 60
Exhaust gas precautions 70

1-2. Hybrid system
Hybrid system features 71
Hybrid system precautions 75

1-3. Theft deterrent system
Immobilizer system 82
Alarm 87
Double locking system.....93

2 Instrument cluster

2. Instrument cluster
Warning lights and indicators..... 96
Gauges and meters..... 101
Multi-information display ... 104
Energy monitor/ consumption screen..... 113

3 Operation of each component

3-1. Key information
Keys 118

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
Side doors 122
Back door 127
Smart entry & start system..... 132
Push button start 146

3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 157
Rear seats..... 159
Head restraints..... 161

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 163
Inside rear view mirror..... 165
Outside rear view mirrors..... 167

3-5. Opening and closing the windows
Power windows 170

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving
Driving the vehicle 174
Cargo and luggage 184
Trailer towing 185

4-2. Driving procedures
Power (ignition) switch.....195
EV drive mode 201
Hybrid transmission 203
Turn signal lever 211
Parking brake.....212

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers
Headlight switch.....213
Fog light switch 219
Windshield wipers and washer 221
Rear window wiper and washer 225

4-4. Refueling
Opening the fuel tank cap 227

4-5. Toyota Safety Sense
Toyota Safety Sense 230
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 234
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 242
Automatic High Beam 248
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 252

4-6. Using the driving support systems
Cruise control 257
Toyota parking assist-sensor 262
Simple-IPA (Simple-Intelligent Parking Assist) 269
Driving assist systems..... 283

4-7. Driving tips
Hybrid vehicle driving tips 289
Winter driving tips..... 292

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 4 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

5 Audio system

5-1. Basic Operations
Audio system types.....296
Steering wheel audio switches.....297
AUX port/USB port.....298

5-2. Using the audio system
Optimal use of the audio system 299

5-3. Using the radio
Radio operation 301

5-4. Playing audio CDs and MP3/WMA discs
CD player operation.....304

5-5. Using an external device
Listening to an iPod 312
Listening to a USB memory device 320
Using the AUX port.....327

5-6. Using Bluetooth® devices
Bluetooth® audio/phone 328
Using the steering wheel switches..... 333
Registering a Bluetooth® device..... 334

5-7. “SET UP” menu
Using the “SET UP” menu (“Bluetooth” menu)..... 335
Using the “SET UP” menu (“Phone” menu)..... 340

5-8. Bluetooth® Audio
Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player 345

5-9. Bluetooth® Phone
Making a phone call 348
Receiving a phone call 350
Speaking on the phone 351

5-10. Bluetooth®
Bluetooth®..... 353

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 5 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

6 Interior features

6-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger
Automatic air conditioning system 358
Seat heaters 367
6-2. Using the interior lights
Interior lights list.....368
• Interior lights.....369
• Vanity lights 369
• Personal lights.....370
6-3. Using the storage features
List of storage features 372
• Glove box 373
• Console box 373
• Bottle holders 374
• Cup holders 375
• Auxiliary boxes 376
Luggage compartment features.....377
6-4. Other interior features
Other interior features.....383
• Sun visors.....383
• Vanity mirrors 383
• Clock 384
• Portable ashtray 384
• Power outlets.....385
• Armrest.....386
• Assist grips 386
• Coat hooks 387
• Panoramic roof shade.....387

7 Maintenance and care

7-1. Maintenance and care
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior..... 390
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior..... 394
7-2. Maintenance
Maintenance requirements 397
7-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance
Do-it-yourself service precautions 400
Hood..... 402
Positioning a floor jack 404
Engine compartment 405
12-volt battery 412
Tires 417
Tire inflation pressure..... 427
Wheels 429
Air conditioning filter..... 431
Electronic key battery..... 433
Checking and replacing fuses 436
Light bulbs..... 441

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 6 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

8 When trouble arises

8-1. Essential information
Emergency flashers 456
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 457

8-2. Steps to take in an emergency
If your vehicle needs to be towed 458
If you think something is wrong 464
If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 465
If a warning message is displayed 472
If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire) 481
If you have a flat tire (vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit).....493
If the hybrid system will not start.....508
If the electronic key does not operate properly 510
If the 12-volt battery is discharged 513
If your vehicle overheats.....518
If the vehicle becomes stuck 523

9 Vehicle specifications

9-1. Specifications
Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 526
Fuel information 538

9-2. Customization
Customizable features 540

9-3. Initialization
Items to initialize..... 547

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 550
Alphabetical index..... 553

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Toyota policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Toyota

Both genuine Toyota and a wide variety of other spare parts and accessories for Toyota vehicles are currently available on the market. Should it be determined that any of the genuine Toyota parts or accessories supplied with the vehicle need to be replaced, Toyota recommends that genuine Toyota parts or accessories, be used to replace them. Other parts or accessories of matching quality can also be used. Toyota cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Toyota products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the use of non-genuine Toyota spare parts or accessories may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Cruise control system (if equipped)
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system
- Toyota Safety Sense (if equipped)

Be sure to check with any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

High voltage parts and cables on the hybrid vehicles emit approximately the same amount of electromagnetic waves as the conventional gasoline powered vehicles or home electronic appliances despite of their electromagnetic shielding.

Unwanted noise may occur in the reception of the radio frequency transmitter (RF-transmitter).

Scrapping of your Toyota

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Toyota contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, before you scrap your vehicle.



Your vehicle contains batteries and/or accumulators. Do not discard them into the environment but cooperate with separate collection (Directive 2006/66/EC).

⚠ WARNING

■ General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Reading this manual

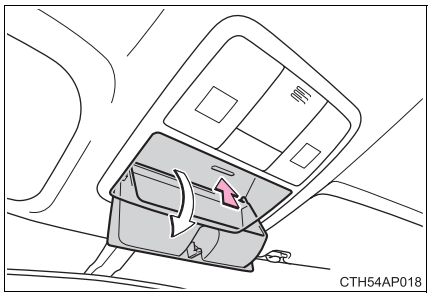
WARNING:
Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.

NOTICE:
Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.

1 2 3 ··· Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

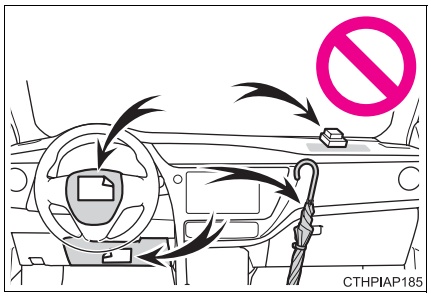
Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.

Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).


CTH54AP018

Indicates the component or position being explained.

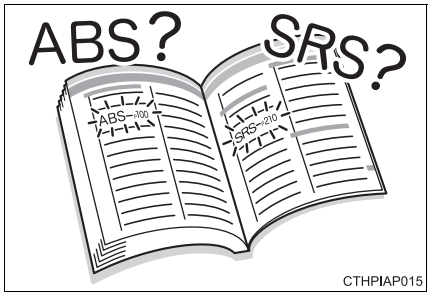
Means “Do not”, “Do not do this”, or “Do not let this happen”.


CTHPIAP185

How to search

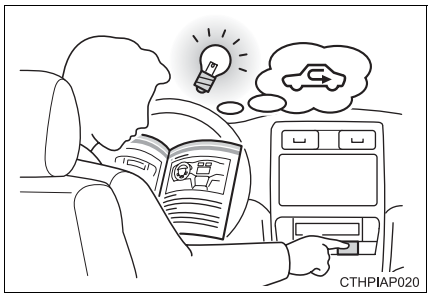
■ **Searching by name**

• Alphabetical index ..... P. 553



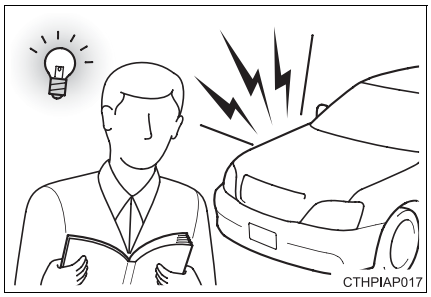
■ **Searching by installation position**

• Pictorial index ..... P. 14



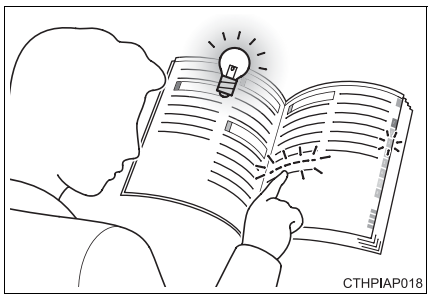
■ **Searching by symptom or sound**

• What to do if... (Troubleshooting) ..... P. 550



■ **Searching by title**

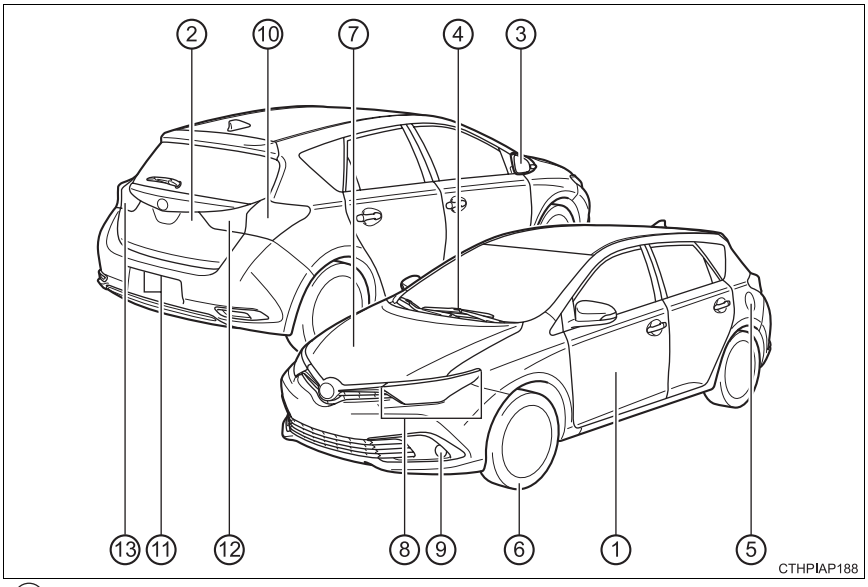
• Table of contents ..... P. 2



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 14 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Pictorial index

Exterior



① **Doors . . . . . P. 122**
Locking/unlocking . . . . . P. 122
Opening/closing the side windows . . . . . P. 170
Locking/unlocking using the mechanical key. . . . . P. 510
Warning messages . . . . . P. 472

② **Back door . . . . . P. 127**
Locking/unlocking . . . . . P. 127
Warning messages . . . . . P. 472

③ **Outside rear view mirrors . . . . . P. 167**
Adjusting the mirror angle . . . . . P. 167
Folding the mirrors. . . . . P. 167
Defogging the mirrors . . . . . P. 362

④ **Windshield wipers . . . . . P. 221**
Precautions for winter . . . . . P. 292
Precautions for using a car wash . . . . . P. 392

⑤ **Fuel filler door . . . . . P. 227**
Refueling method . . . . . P. 227
Fuel type/fuel tank capacity . . . . . P. 528

⑥ **Tires . . . . . P. 417**
Tire size/inflation pressure . . . . . P. 534
Winter tires/tire chains . . . . . P. 292
Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system*1 . . . . . P. 417
Coping with flat tires . . . . . P. 481

⑦ **Hood . . . . . P. 402**
Opening . . . . . P. 402
Engine oil . . . . . P. 529
Coping with overheating . . . . . P. 518

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving
(Replacing method: P. 441, Watts: P. 537)

⑧ **Headlights/front position lights/daytime running lights/ turn signal lights . . . . . P. 211, 213**

⑨ **Front fog lights*1 . . . . . P. 219**

⑩ **Stop lights/tail lights/turn signal lights . . . . . P. 211, 213**

⑪ **License plate lights . . . . . P. 213**

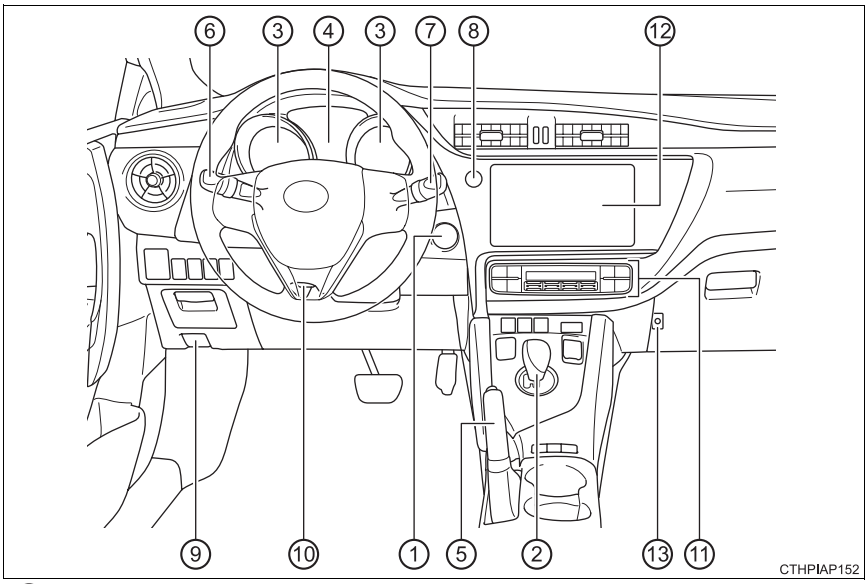
⑫ **Tail lights . . . . . P. 213**
Rear fog light*3 . . . . . P. 219
Back-up light*2
Shifting the shift position to R . . . . . P. 203

⑬ **Tail lights . . . . . P. 213**
Rear fog light*2 . . . . . P. 219
Back-up light*3
Shifting the shift position to R . . . . . P. 203

*1: If equipped
*2: Left-hand drive vehicles
*3: Right-hand drive vehicles

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 16 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Instrument panel (left-hand drive vehicles)



① **Power switch . . . . . P. 195**
Starting the hybrid system/changing the modes . . . . . P. 195
Emergency stop of the hybrid system . . . . . P. 457
When the hybrid system will not start . . . . . P. 508
Warning messages . . . . . P. 472

② **Shift lever . . . . . P. 203**
Changing the shift position . . . . . P. 203
Precautions against towing . . . . . P. 458

③ **Meters . . . . . P. 101**
Reading the meters/adjusting the meter light . . . . . P. 101
Warning lights/indicator lights . . . . . P. 96
When the warning lights come on . . . . . P. 465

④ **Multi-information display . . . . . P. 104**
Energy monitor . . . . . P. 113
If a warning message or indicator is displayed . . . . . P. 472

⑤ **Parking brake . . . . . P. 212**
Applying/releasing . . . . . P. 212
Precautions for winter . . . . . P. 293
Warning buzzer/message . . . . . P. 212

⑥ **Turn signal lever . . . . . P. 211**
Headlight switch . . . . . P. 213
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/ daytime running lights . . . . . P. 213
Front fog lights*1/rear fog light . . . . . P. 219

⑦ **Windshield wiper and washer switch . . . . . P. 221**
Usage . . . . . P. 221
Adding washer fluid . . . . . P. 410
Headlight cleaners*1 . . . . . P. 221

⑧ **Emergency flasher switch . . . . . P. 456**

⑨ **Hood lock release lever . . . . . P. 402**

⑩ **Tilt and telescopic steering lock release lever . . . . . P. 163**
Adjustment. . . . . P. 163

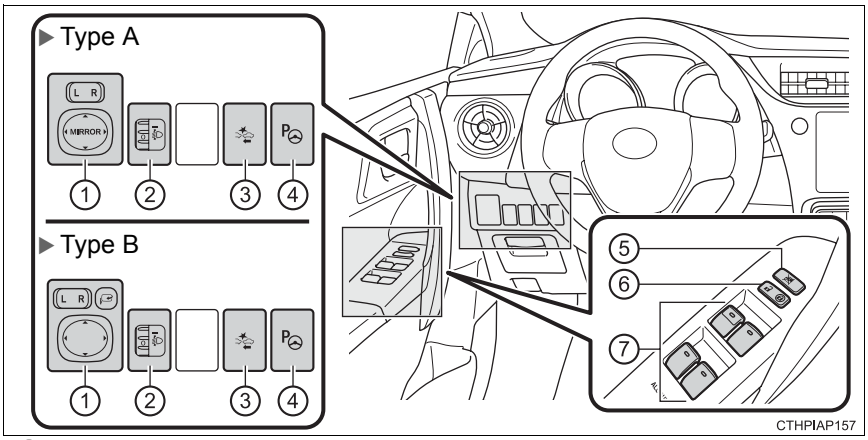
⑪ **Air conditioning system . . . . . P. 358**
Usage . . . . . P. 358
Rear window defogger. . . . . P. 362

⑫ **Audio system*1 . . . . . P. 296**
Navigation/multimedia system*1, 2
Energy monitor/trip information/past record . . . . . P. 113

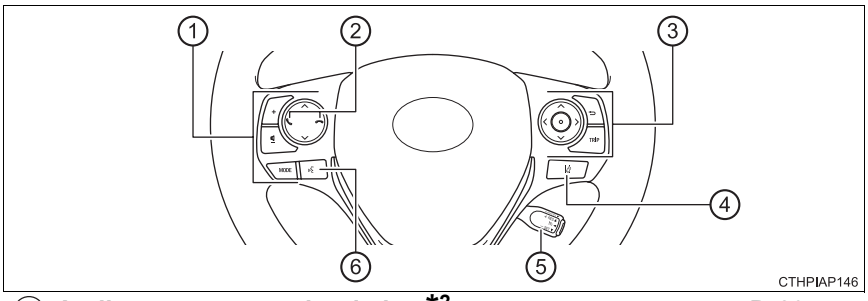
⑬ **Tire pressure warning reset switch*1 . . . . . P. 419**

*1: If equipped
*2: Refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

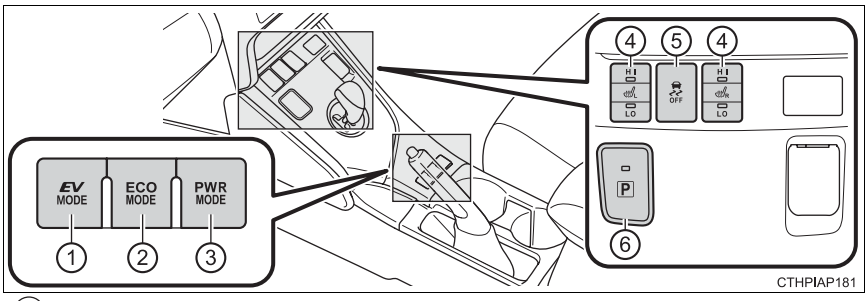
Switches (left-hand drive vehicles)



① **Outside rear view mirror switches . . . . . P. 167**
② **Headlight leveling dial*1 . . . . . P. 216**
③ **PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) switch*1 . . . . . P. 234**
④ **Simple-IPA switch*1 . . . . . P. 270**
⑤ **Window lock switch . . . . . P. 170**
⑥ **Door lock switch . . . . . P. 124**
⑦ **Power window switches*1 . . . . . P. 170**



① **Audio remote control switches*2 . . . . . P. 297**
② **Telephone switches*2 . . . . . P. 333**
③ **Meter control switches . . . . . P. 106, 107**
④ **LDA (Lane Departure Alert) switch*1 . . . . . P. 242**
⑤ **Cruise control switch*1 . . . . . P. 257**
⑥ **Talk switch*2 . . . . . P. 333**

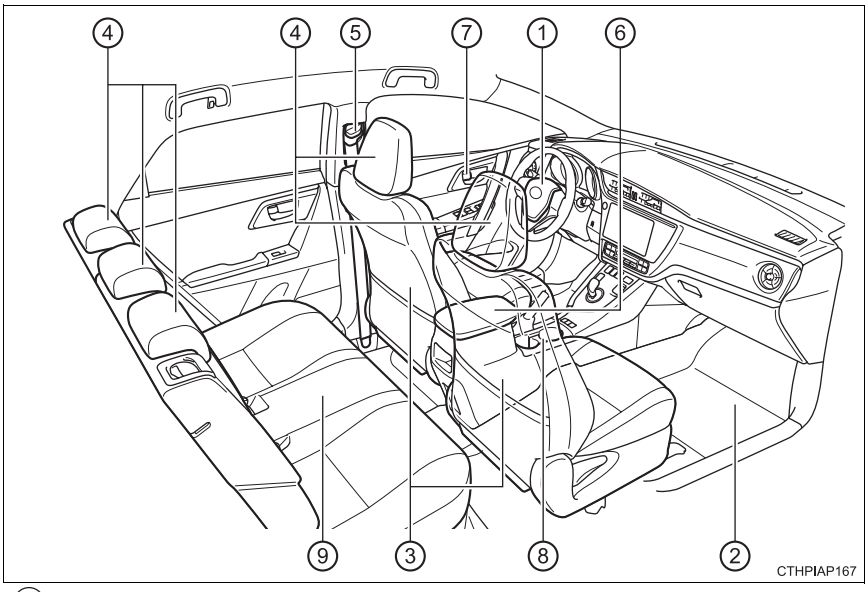


① **EV drive mode switch . . . . . P. 201**
② **“ECO MODE” switch . . . . . P. 206**
③ **“PWR MODE” switch. . . . . P. 206**
④ **Seat heater switches*1 . . . . . P. 367**
⑤ **VSC OFF switch. . . . . P. 284, 285**
⑥ **P position switch . . . . . P. 205**

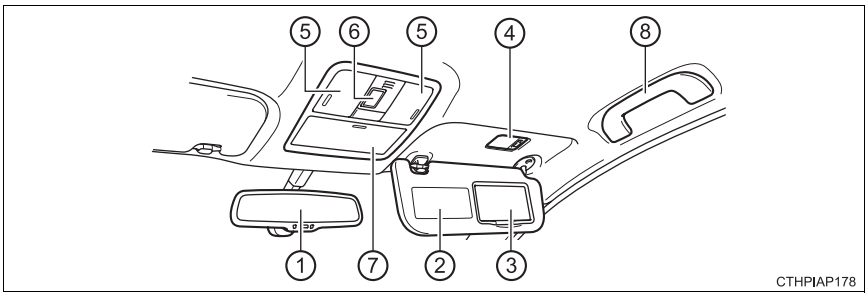
*1: If equipped
*2: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 20 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Interior (left-hand drive vehicles)



① **SRS airbags** . . . . . **P. 38**
② **Floor mats** . . . . . **P. 30**
③ **Front seats** . . . . . **P. 157**
④ **Head restraints** . . . . . **P. 161**
⑤ **Seat belts** . . . . . **P. 34**
⑥ **Console box** . . . . . **P. 373**
⑦ **Inside lock buttons** . . . . . **P. 124**
⑧ **Cup holders** . . . . . **P. 375**
⑨ **Rear seats** . . . . . **P. 159**



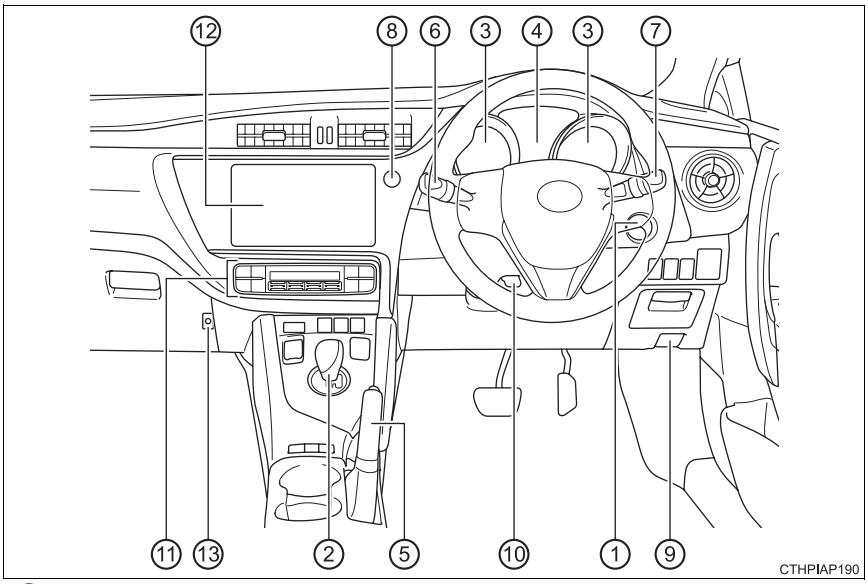
① **Inside rear view mirror** . . . . . **P. 165**
② **Sun visors*1** . . . . . **P. 383**
③ **Vanity mirrors** . . . . . **P. 383**
④ **Vanity lights*2** . . . . . **P. 369**
⑤ **Interior lights/personal lights** . . . . . **P. 369, 370**
⑥ **Panoramic roof shade switch*2** . . . . . **P. 387**
⑦ **Auxiliary boxes** . . . . . **P. 376**
⑧ **Assist grips** . . . . . **P. 386**

*1: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P. 68)



*2: If equipped

Instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles)



① **Power switch . . . . . P. 195**
Starting the hybrid system/changing the modes . . . . . P. 195
Emergency stop of the hybrid system . . . . . P. 457
When the hybrid system will not start . . . . . P. 508
Warning messages . . . . . P. 472

② **Shift lever . . . . . P. 203**
Changing the shift position . . . . . P. 203
Precautions against towing . . . . . P. 458

③ **Meters . . . . . P. 101**
Reading the meters/adjusting the meter light . . . . . P. 101
Warning lights/indicator lights . . . . . P. 96
When the warning lights come on . . . . . P. 465

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 23 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

④ **Multi-information display . . . . . P. 104**
Energy monitor . . . . . P. 113
If a warning message or indicator is displayed . . . . . P. 472

⑤ **Parking brake . . . . . P. 212**
Applying/releasing . . . . . P. 212
Precautions for winter . . . . . P. 293
Warning buzzer/message . . . . . P. 212

⑥ **Turn signal lever . . . . . P. 211**
Headlight switch . . . . . P. 213
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/ daytime running lights . . . . . P. 213
Front fog lights*1/rear fog light . . . . . P. 219

⑦ **Windshield wiper and washer switch . . . . . P. 221**
Usage . . . . . P. 221
Adding washer fluid . . . . . P. 410

⑧ **Emergency flasher switch . . . . . P. 456**

⑨ **Hood lock release lever . . . . . P. 402**

⑩ **Tilt and telescopic steering lock release lever . . . . . P. 163**
Adjustment. . . . . P. 163

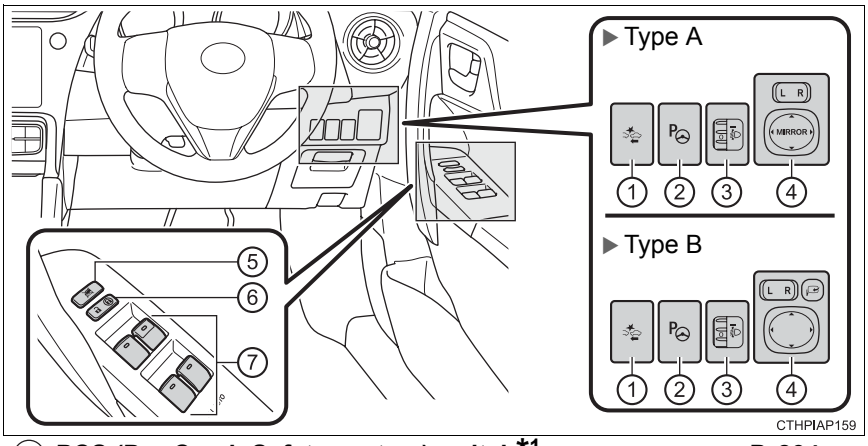
⑪ **Air conditioning system . . . . . P. 358**
Usage . . . . . P. 358
Rear window defogger. . . . . P. 362

⑫ **Audio system*1 . . . . . P. 296**
Navigation/multimedia system*1, 2
Energy monitor/trip information/past record . . . . . P. 113

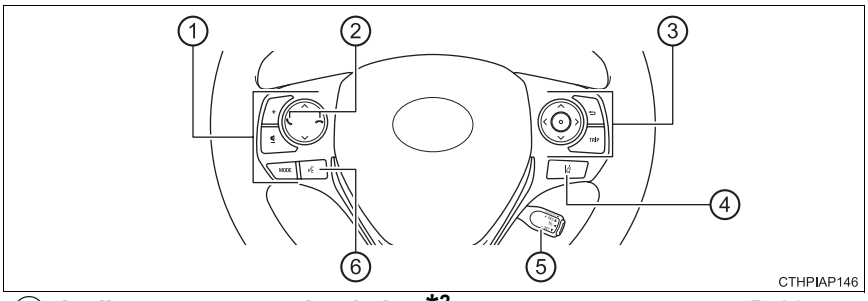
⑬ **Tire pressure warning reset switch . . . . . P. 419**

*1: If equipped
*2: Refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

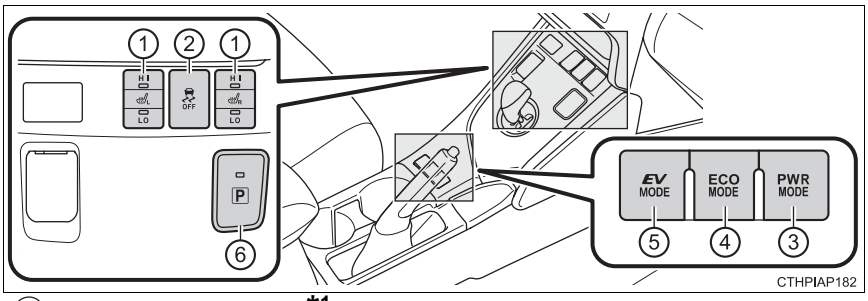
Switches (right-hand drive vehicles)



① **PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) switch*1 . . . . . P. 234**
② **Simple-IPA switch*1 . . . . . P. 270**
③ **Headlight leveling dial*1 . . . . . P. 216**
④ **Outside rear view mirror switches . . . . . P. 167**
⑤ **Window lock switch . . . . . P. 170**
⑥ **Door lock switch . . . . . P. 124**
⑦ **Power window switches*1 . . . . . P. 170**



① **Audio remote control switches*2 . . . . . P. 297**
② **Telephone switches*2 . . . . . P. 333**
③ **Meter control switches . . . . . P. 106, 107**
④ **LDA (Lane Departure Alert) switch*1 . . . . . P. 242**
⑤ **Cruise control switch*1 . . . . . P. 257**
⑥ **Talk switch*2 . . . . . P. 333**

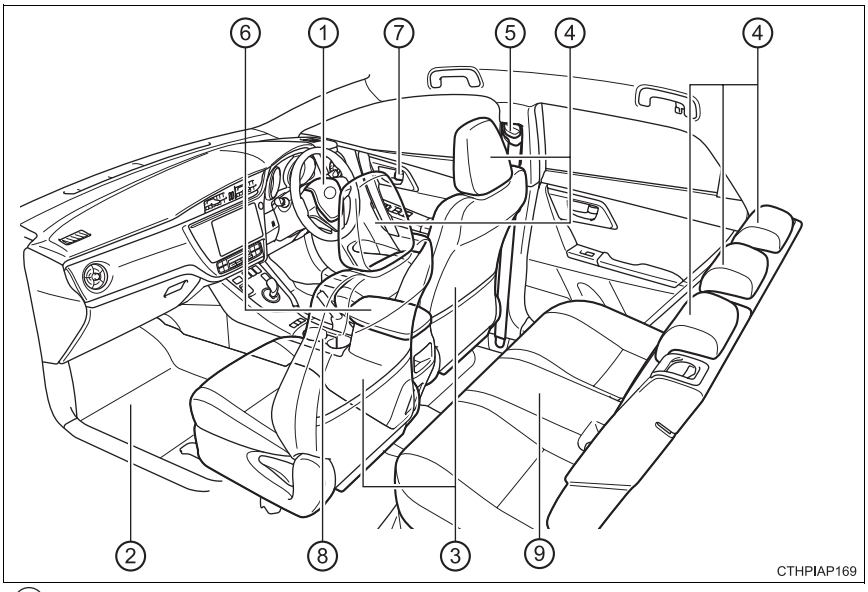


① **Seat heater switches*1 . . . . . P. 367**
② **VSC OFF switch . . . . . P. 284, 285**
③ **“PWR MODE” switch . . . . . P. 206**
④ **“ECO MODE” switch . . . . . P. 206**
⑤ **EV drive mode switch . . . . . P. 201**
⑥ **P position switch . . . . . P. 205**

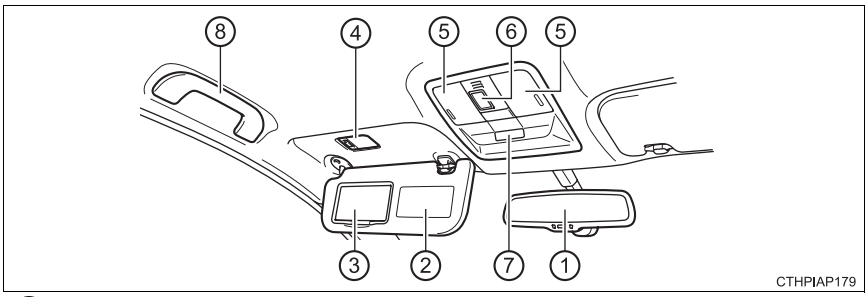
*1: If equipped
*2: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 26 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Interior (right-hand drive vehicles)



① **SRS airbags** . . . . . **P. 38**
② **Floor mats** . . . . . **P. 30**
③ **Front seats** . . . . . **P. 157**
④ **Head restraints** . . . . . **P. 161**
⑤ **Seat belts** . . . . . **P. 34**
⑥ **Console box** . . . . . **P. 373**
⑦ **Inside lock buttons** . . . . . **P. 124**
⑧ **Cup holders** . . . . . **P. 375**
⑨ **Rear seats** . . . . . **P. 159**



① **Inside rear view mirror** . . . . . **P. 165**
② **Sun visors*1** . . . . . **P. 383**
③ **Vanity mirrors** . . . . . **P. 383**
④ **Vanity lights*2** . . . . . **P. 369**
⑤ **Interior lights/personal lights** . . . . . **P. 369, 370**
⑥ **Panoramic roof shade switch*2** . . . . . **P. 387**
⑦ **Intrusion sensor cancel switch** . . . . . **P. 90**
⑧ **Assist grips** . . . . . **P. 386**

*1: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P. 68)



*2: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 28 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

For safety and security 1

1-1. For safe use
Before driving.....30
For safety drive.....32
Seat belts.....34
SRS airbags.....38
Airbag manual on-off system.....48
Safety information for children.....50
Child restraint systems.....51
Installing child restraints.....60
Exhaust gas precautions.....70

1-2. Hybrid system
Hybrid system features.....71
Hybrid system precautions.....75

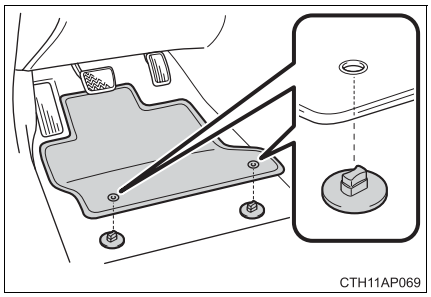
1-3. Theft deterrent system
Immobilizer system.....82
Alarm.....87
Double locking system.....93

Before driving

Floor mat

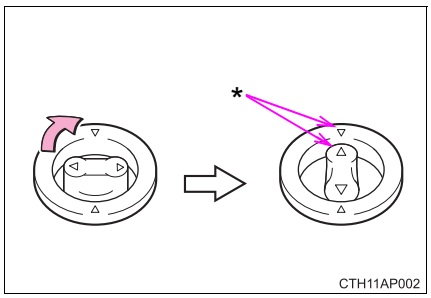
Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.

*: Always align the △ marks.



The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 31 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

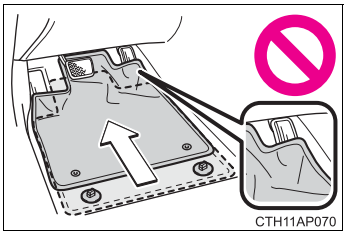
Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Toyota Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ Before driving

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.
- With the hybrid system stopped and the shift position in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

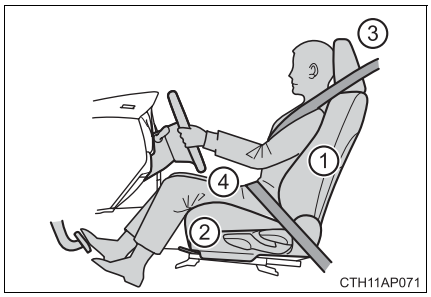

CTH11AP070

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 32 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

For safety drive

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



① Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P. 157)

② Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P. 157)

③ Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P. 161)

④ Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P. 34)

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P. 34)

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 51)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 33 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see backward clearly by adjusting the inside and outside rear view mirrors properly. (→P. 165, 167)

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

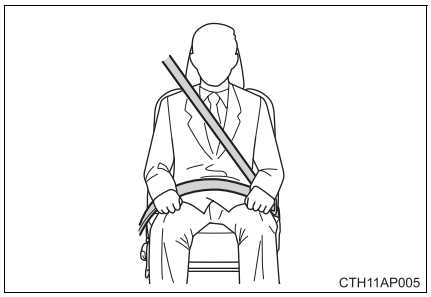
- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired.
  Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

Correct use of the seat belts

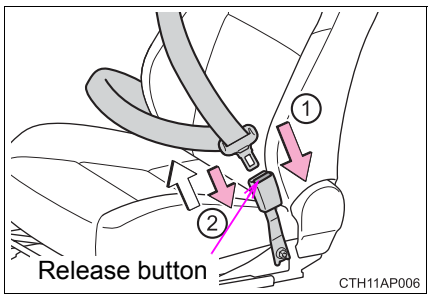
- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seat-back. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.
- Do not twist the seat belt.


CTH11AP005

Fastening and releasing the seat belt

① To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

② To release the seat belt, press the release button.



CTH11AP006

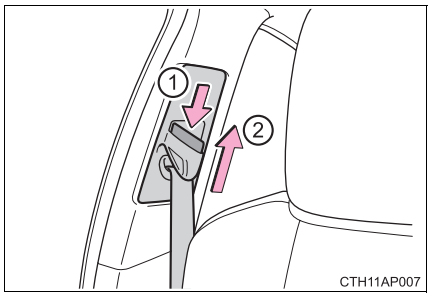
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 35 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)

① Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button.

② Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up.

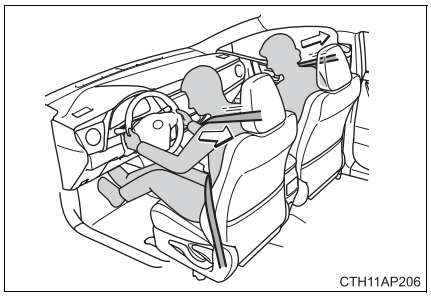
Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.



Seat belt pretensioners (front seats)

The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal or side collision.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact, a rear impact or a vehicle rollover.



■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 51)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. (→P. 34)

■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated (front seats)

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

■ Seat belt regulations

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for seat belt replacement or installation.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

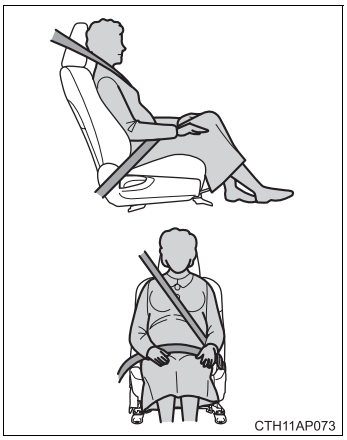
- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Toyota recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

■ Pregnant women

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 34)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.


CTH11AP073

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 37 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P. 34)

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ Seat belt pretensioners (front seats)

If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Adjustable shoulder anchor (front seats)

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident. (→P. 35)

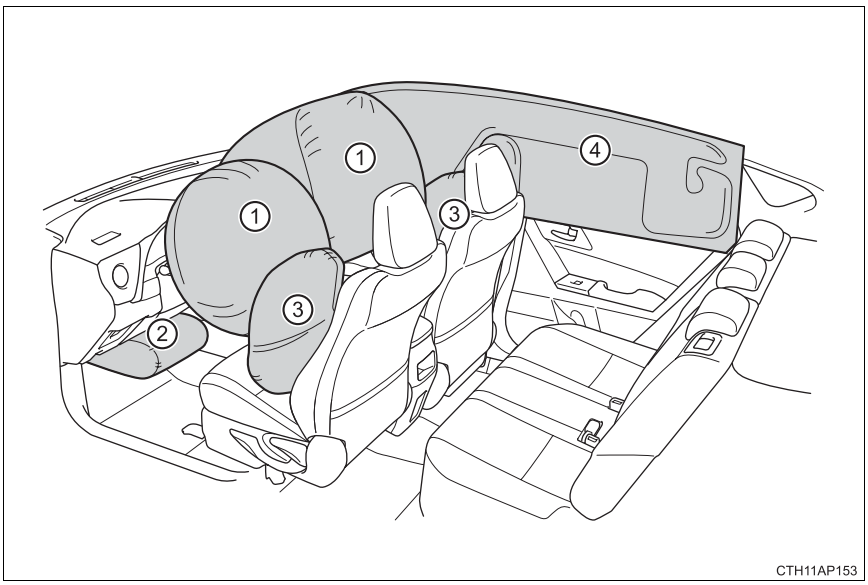
■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted.
  If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 38 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.



◆ SRS front airbags

① SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

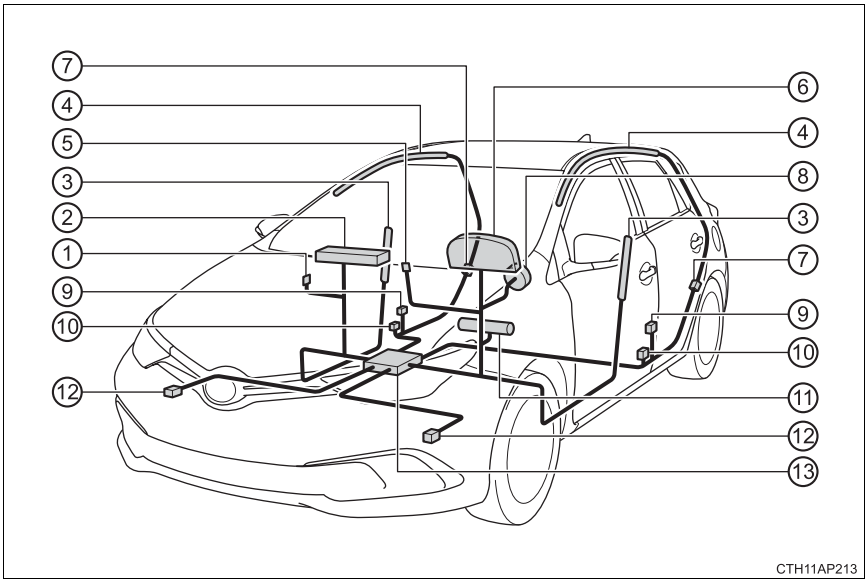
② SRS driver's knee airbag
Can help provide driver protection

◆ SRS side and curtain shield airbags

③ SRS front side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

④ SRS curtain shield airbags
Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats

SRS airbag system components



① Airbag manual on-off switch
② Front passenger airbag
③ Front side airbags
④ Curtain shield airbags
⑤ “PASSENGER AIR BAG” indicator
⑥ SRS warning light
⑦ Side impact sensors (rear)
⑧ Driver airbag
⑨ Side impact sensors (front)
⑩ Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters
⑪ Driver’s knee airbag
⑫ Front impact sensors
⑬ Airbag sensor assembly

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 40 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
  The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag.

  Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:

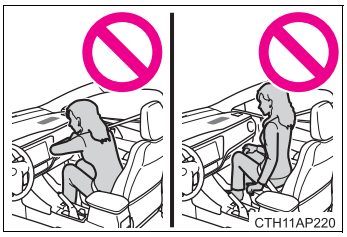
  • Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  • Slightly recline the back of the seat.
    Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  • If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

  The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Toyota strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P. 51)

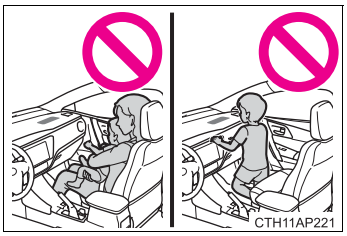
WARNING

■SRS airbag precautions

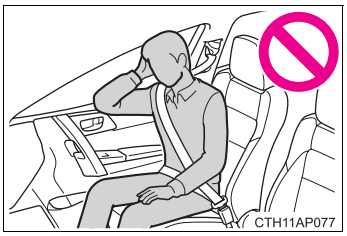
- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



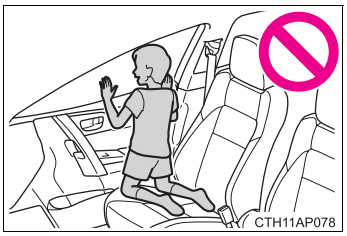
- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.
- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.



- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



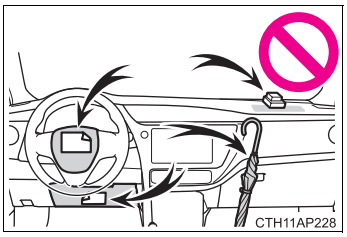
- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



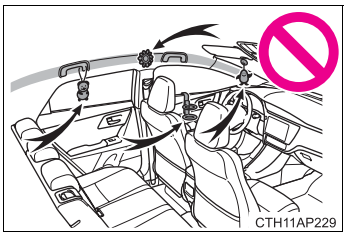
WARNING

■SRS airbag precautions

- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad, lower portion of the instrument panel.
  These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and driver's knee airbag deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield, side door glass, front or rear pillar, roof side rail and assist grip. (Except for the speed limit label →P. 497)



- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS driver's knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.

WARNING

■SRS airbag precautions

- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components.
  Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.
- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows or winches
- Modifications to the vehicle’s suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios (RF-transmitter) and CD players
- Modifications to your vehicle for a person with a physical disability

■ **If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)**

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)**

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform).

  However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:

  • If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
  • If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle “underrides”, or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pre-tensioners will activate.

■ **SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)**

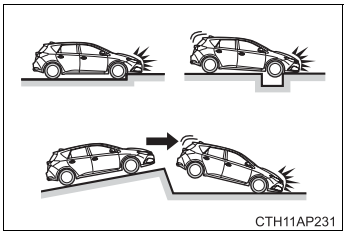
- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).
- The SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 45 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

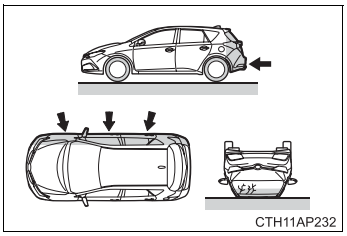
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling


CTH11AP231

Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

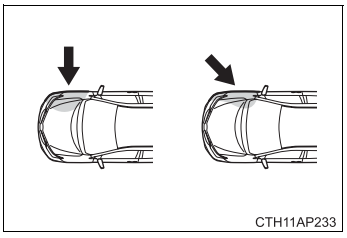
- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover


CTH11AP232

Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

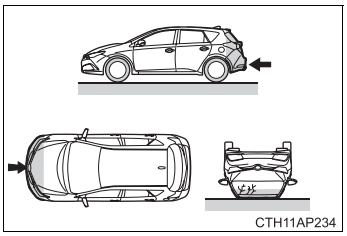
The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle


CTH11AP233

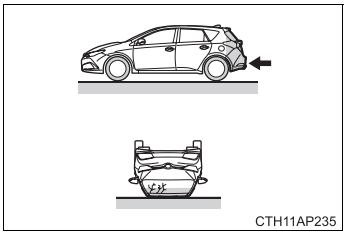
The SRS side airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover


CTH11AP234

The SRS curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side or low-speed frontal collision.

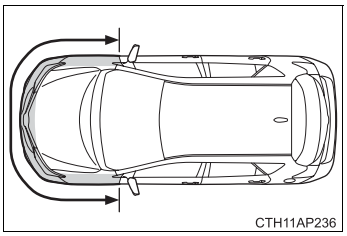
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover


CTH11AP235

■When to contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

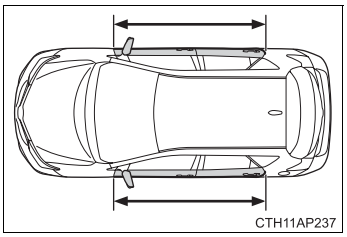
In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.

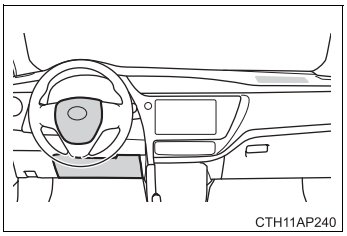

CTH11AP236

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 47 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

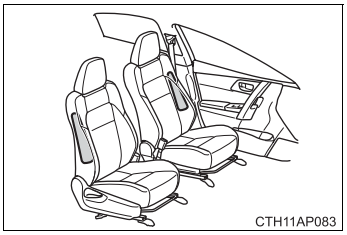
- A portion of a door or its surrounding area is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.


CTH11AP237

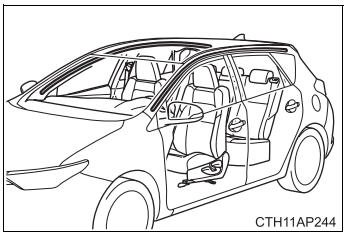
- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.


CTH11AP240

- The surface of the seats with the side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.


CTH11AP083

- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.


CTH11AP244

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 48 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

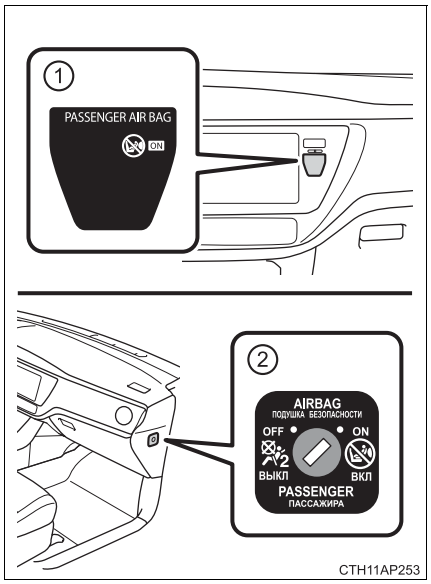
Airbag manual on-off system

This system deactivates the front passenger airbag.
Only deactivate the airbag when using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

① “PASSENGER AIR BAG” indicator

The “PASSENGER AIR BAG” and “ON” indicator light turns on when the airbag system is on, and about after 60 seconds they go off (only when the power switch is in ON mode).

② Airbag manual on-off switch

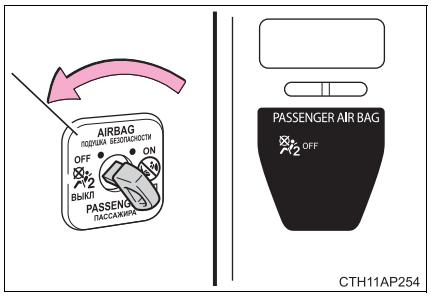


UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 49 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Deactivating the front seat passenger airbag

Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and turn it to the “OFF” position.

The “OFF” indicator light turns on (only when the power switch is in ON mode).



“PASSENGER AIR BAG” indicator information

If any of the following problems occur, it is possible that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Neither “ON” nor “OFF” comes on.
- The indicator light does not change when the airbag manual on-off switch is switched to “ON” or “OFF”.

WARNING

When installing a child restraint system

For safety reasons, always install a child restraint system in a rear seat. In the event that the rear seat cannot be used, the front seat can be used as long as the airbag manual on-off system is set to “OFF”.
If the airbag manual on-off system is left on, the strong impact of the airbag deployment (inflation) may cause serious injury or even death.

When a child restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat

Ensure that the airbag manual on-off system is set to “ON”.
If it is left off, the airbag may not deploy in the event of an accident, which may result in serious injury or even death.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 50 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Safety information for children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle.
Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- Use the rear door child-protector lock or the window lock switch to avoid children opening the door while driving or operating the power window accidentally.
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, back door, seats, etc.

⚠ WARNING

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 51 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Child restraint systems

Toyota strongly urges the use of child restraint systems.

Points to remember

Studies have shown that installing a child restraint on a rear seat is much safer than installing one on the front passenger seat.

- Choose a child restraint system that suits your vehicle and is appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- For installation details, follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system.
  General installation instructions are provided in this manual.
  (→P. 60)
- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for the child restraint system installation.
- Toyota recommends that you use a child restraint system which conforms to the regulation ECE No.44.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 52 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Types of child restraints

Child restraint systems are classified into the following 5 groups according to the regulation ECE No.44:

Group 0: Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)

Group 0^+: Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)

Group I: 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)

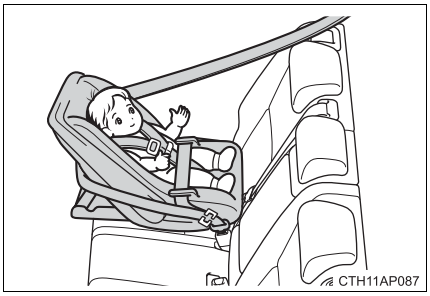
Group II: 15 to 25 kg (34 to 55 lb.) (4 years - 7 years)

Group III: 22 to 36 kg (49 to 79 lb.) (6 years - 12 years)

In this owner's manual, the following 3 types of popular child restraint systems that can be secured with the seat belts are explained:

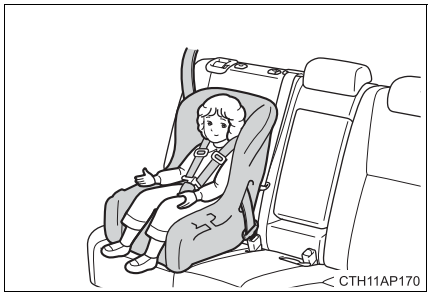
▶ Baby seat

Equal to Group 0 and 0^+ of ECE No.44



▶ Child seat

Equal to Group 0^+ and I of ECE No.44



▶ Junior seat

Equal to Group II and III of ECE No.44



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 53 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions

Information provided in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

Seating position / Mass groups	Front passenger seat		Rear seat	
	Airbag manual on-off switch			
	ON	OFF	Outboard	Center
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)	X Never put	U*1 L1*1	U L1	X
0+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)	X Never put	U*1 L1*1	U L1	X
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)	Rear-facing — X Never put Forward-facing — UF*1	U*1	U*2	X
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.) (4 - 12 years)	UF*1	U*1	U*2 L2*2	X

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 54 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

U: Suitable for “universal” category child restraint system approved for the use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category child restraint system approved for the use in this mass group.

L1: Suitable for “TOYOTA G 0^+, BABY SAFE PLUS with SEAT BELT FIXATION, BASE PLATFORM” (0 to 13 kg [0 to 28 lb.]) approved for the use in this mass group.

L2: Suitable for “TOYOTA KIDFIX” (15 to 36 kg [34 to 79 lb.]) approved for the use in this mass group.

X: Not suitable seat position for children in this mass group.

*1: Adjust the front seatback to the most upright position. Move the front seat cushion to the fully rearward.

Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system.

Vehicles with a vertical height adjustment lever: Adjust the seat cushion to the highest position.

Follow these procedures

- For installing a baby seat with support base
  If the baby seat interferes with the seatback when latching the baby seat into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- For installing a forward-facing child seat
  If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.
- For installing a junior seat
  If the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback to the most comfortable position.
  If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

*2: Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system.

The child restraint system mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

Other child restraint system which is different from the system mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer concerned and the seller of those seats.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 55 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Child restraint system suitability for various seating positions (with ISOFIX rigid anchors)

Information provided in the table shows your child restraint system suitability for various seating positions.

Mass groups	Size class	Fixture	Vehicle ISOFIX positions	Recommended Child Restraint Systems
			Rear outboard	
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	-
	G	ISO/L2	X	-
		(1)	X	-
0 Up to 10 kg (22 lb.) (0 - 9 months)	E	ISO/R1	IL	“TOYOTA MINI”, “TOYOTA MIDI”
		(1)	X	-
0^+ Up to 13 kg (28 lb.) (0 - 2 years)	E	ISO/R1	IL	“TOYOTA MINI”, “TOYOTA MIDI”
	D	ISO/R2	IL	
	C	ISO/R3	IL	
		(1)	X	-
I 9 to 18 kg (20 to 39 lb.) (9 months - 4 years)	D	ISO/R2	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	IL	
	B	ISO/F2	IUF*, IL*	“TOYOTA MIDI”, “TOYOTA DUO+”
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF*, IL*	
	A	ISO/F3	IUF*, IL*	
		(1)	X	-
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.) (4 - 12 years)		(1)	X	-

(1) For the child restraint system which do not carry the ISO/XX size class identification (A to G), for the applicable mass group, the car manufacturer shall indicate the vehicle specific ISOFIX child restraint system(s) recommended for each position.

Key of letters inserted in the above table:

IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward-facing child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

IL: Suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems of the categories for “specific vehicles”, “restricted”, or “semi-universal”, approved for use in this mass group.

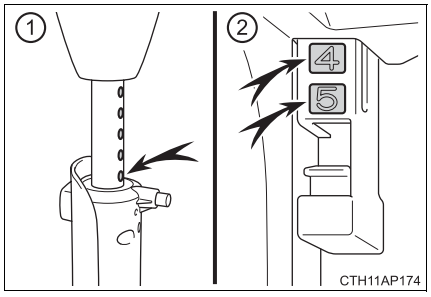
X: ISOFIX position not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems in this mass group and/or this size class.

*: Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system.

When using a “TOYOTA MINI” or “TOYOTA MIDI”, adjust the support leg and the ISOFIX connectors as follows:

① Lock the support leg where 5th hole can be seen.

② Lock the ISOFIX connectors where numbers 4 and 5 can be seen.



When using the right side seat for the child restraint system, do not sit in the center seat.

The child restraint system mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

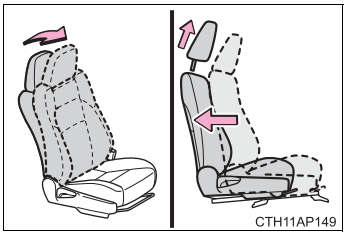
Other child restraint systems different from the systems mentioned in the table can be used, but the suitability of the systems must be carefully checked with the child restraint system manufacturer and retailer.

■ When installing a child restraint system on the front passenger seat

When you have to use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat, adjust the following:

- The seatback to the most upright position.

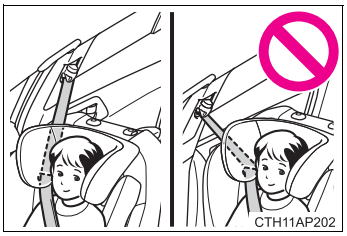
  If the child restraint system interferes with the seatback when latching the child restraint system into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.


CTH11AP149

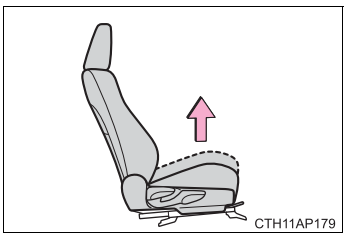
- Remove the head restraint if it interferes with your child restraint system.
- Move the seat as far back as possible.

  If the CRS cannot be installed properly, due to hitting part of the vehicle interior and so forth, adjust the position of the front seat and its seatback angle.

  If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.


CTH11AP202

- Vehicles with a vertical height adjustment lever: Adjust the seat cushion to the highest position.


CTH11AP179

■ Selecting an appropriate child restraint system

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If the child is too large for a child restraint system, sit the child on a rear seat and use the vehicle's seat belt. (→P. 34)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 58 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ Using a child restraint system

The use of a child restraint system not suitable for the vehicle may not properly secure the infant or child. It may result in death or serious injury (in the event of sudden braking or an accident).

■ Child restraint precautions

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system depending on the age and size of the child. Holding a child in your arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield, or between you and the vehicle's interior.
- Toyota strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P. 48)
  In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child.
- A forward-facing child restraint system may be installed on the front passenger seat only when it is unavoidable. A child restraint system that requires a top strap should not be used in the front passenger seat since there is no top strap anchor for the front passenger seat. Adjust the seatback as upright as possible and always move the seat as far back as possible because the front passenger airbag could inflate with considerable speed and force. Otherwise, the child may be killed or seriously injured.
- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front and rear pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.
- Make sure you have complied with all installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer and that the system is properly secured. If it is not secured properly, it may cause death or serious injury to the child in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 59 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ When children are in the vehicle

Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death.
If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

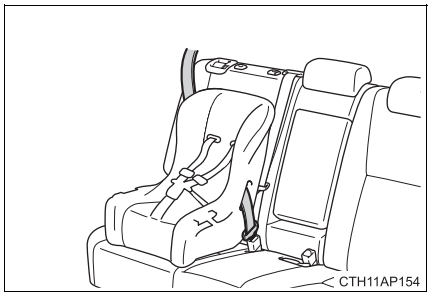
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment. If a head restraint was removed when installing a child restraint system, always install the head restraint before driving. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 60 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Installing child restraints

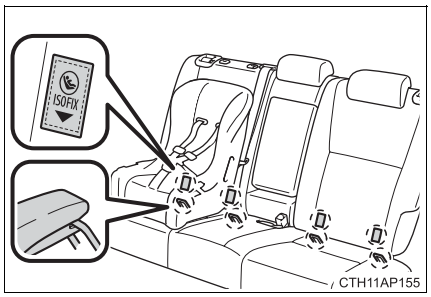
Follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions. Firmly secure child restraints to the seats using a seat belt or ISOFIX rigid anchors. Attach the top strap when installing a child restraint.

Seat belts (An ELR belt requires a locking clip)



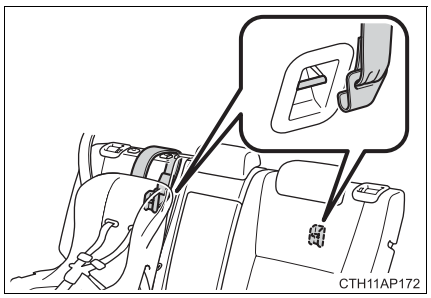
ISOFIX rigid anchors

Lower anchors are provided for the outboard rear seats. (Labels displaying the location of the anchors are attached to the seats.)



Anchor brackets (for top strap)

An anchor bracket is provided for each outer rear seat.

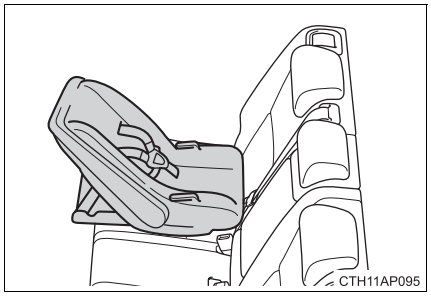


UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 61 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

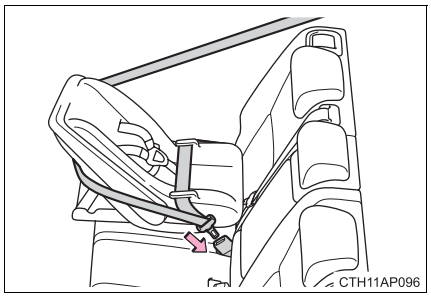
Installing child restraints using a seat belt

■ Rear-facing — Baby seat/child seat

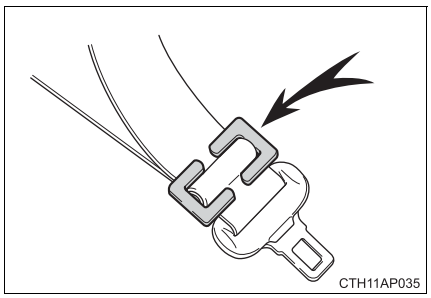
1 Place the child restraint system on the rear seat facing the rear of the vehicle.



2 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



3 Install a locking clip near the tab of the lap and shoulder belt by inserting the lap and shoulder webbing through the recesses of the locking clip. Buckle the belt again. If the belt has any slack, release the buckle and reinstall the locking clip.



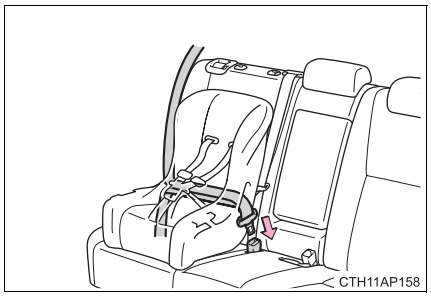
■ Forward-facing — Child seat

1 Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

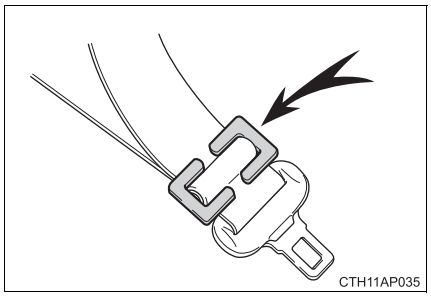
If your child restraint system interferes with a head restraint and cannot be installed properly, install the child restraint system after removing the head restraint. (→P. 161)



2 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



3 Install a locking clip near the tab of the lap and shoulder belt by inserting the lap and shoulder webbing through the recesses of the locking clip. Buckle the belt again. If the belt has any slack, release the buckle and reinstall the locking clip.

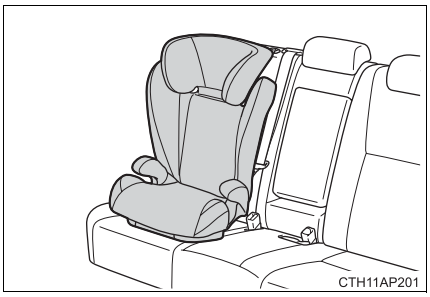


■ Junior seat

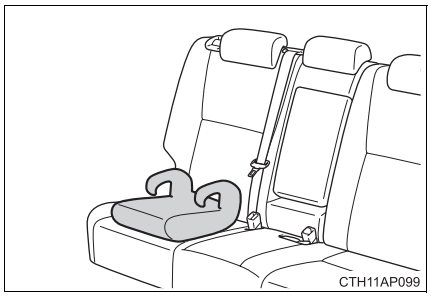
1 Place the child restraint system on the seat facing the front of the vehicle.

If your child restraint system interferes with a head restraint and cannot be installed properly, install the child restraint system after removing the head restraint. (→P. 161)

▶ High back type



▶ Booster type



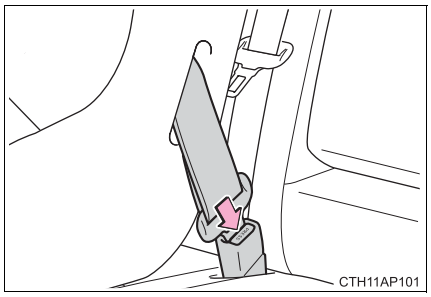
2 Sit the child in the child restraint system. Fit the seat belt to the child restraint system according to the manufacturer's instructions and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.



Check that the shoulder belt is correctly positioned over the child's shoulder and that the lap belt is as low as possible. (→P. 34)

Removing a child restraint installed with a seat belt

Push the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

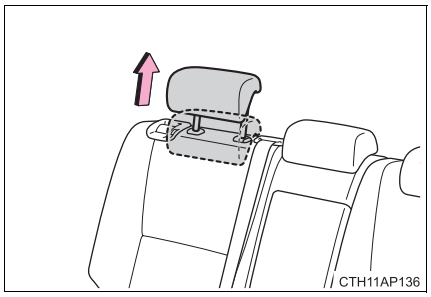


UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 65 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Installation with ISOFIX rigid anchors

1 Adjust the head restraint to the uppermost position.

If your child restraint system interferes with a head restraint and cannot be installed properly, install the child restraint system after removing the head restraint. (→P. 161)

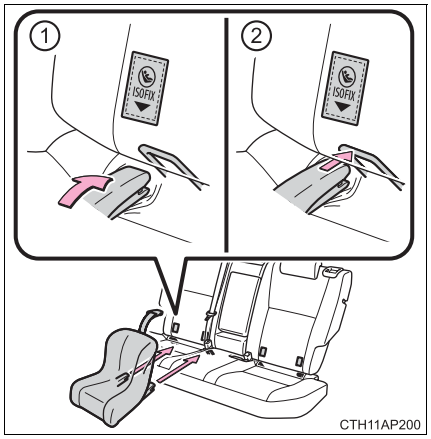


2 If the child restraint has a top strap, remove the luggage cover. (→P. 381)

3 Latch the buckles onto the exclusive fixing bars.

① To align the ISOFIX connectors with the gap between the seat cushion and seatback, temporarily put the connectors on the edge of the seat cushion.

② Insert the ISOFIX connectors into the gap until they latch onto the exclusive fixing bars.



If the child restraint has a top strap, the top strap should be latched onto the anchor bracket.

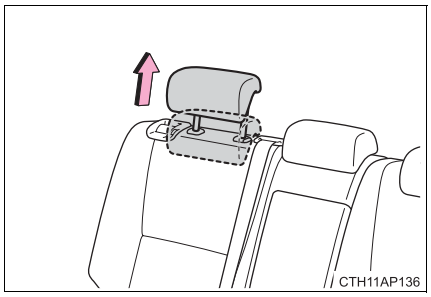
Run the top strap under the head restraint.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 66 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

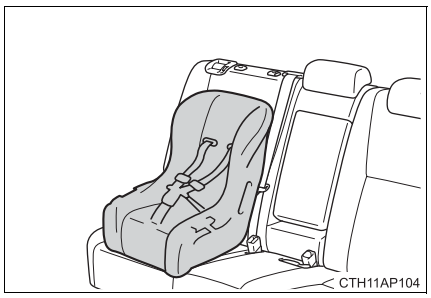
Child restraint systems with a top strap

1 Adjust the head restraint to the uppermost position.

If your child restraint system interferes with a head restraint and cannot be installed properly, install the child restraint system after removing the head restraint. (→P. 161)



2 Secure the child restraint system using the seat belt or ISO-FIX rigid anchors.

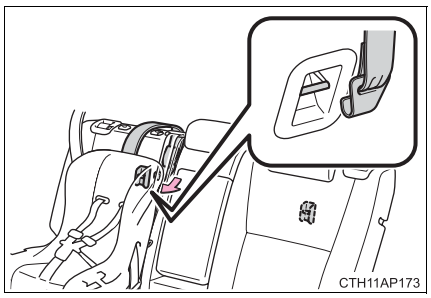


3 Remove the luggage cover. (→P. 381)

4 Latch the hook onto the anchor bracket and tighten the top strap.

Run the top strap under the head restraint.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched.



When installing a child restraint system

You need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional:

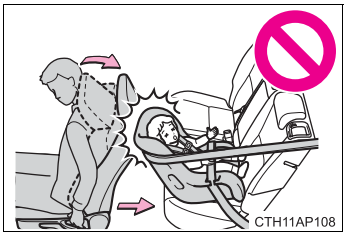
Locking clip for child restraint system
(Part No. 73119-22010)

WARNING

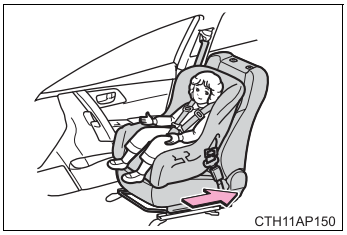
When installing a child restraint system

Follow the directions given in the child restraint system installation manual and fix the child restraint system securely in place.
If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of a sudden braking or an accident.

- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat (left-hand drive vehicles) or the left-hand rear seat (right-hand drive vehicles).
- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.


CTH11AP108

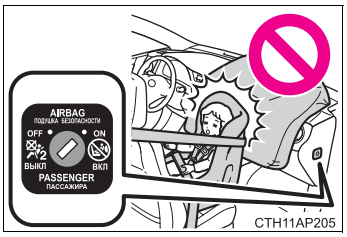
- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable.
- When installing a forward-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible and remove the head restraint.
  Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).


CTH11AP150

WARNING

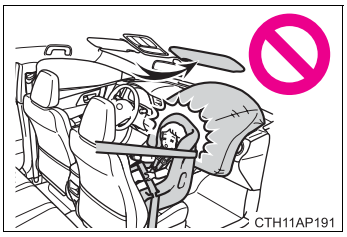
When installing a child restraint system

- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P. 48)
  The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



CTH11AP205

- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat.
  Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.


CTH11AP191



CTN17AG588

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 69 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for the child restraint system installation.
- When a junior seat is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

■ To correctly attach a child restraint system to the anchors

When using the lower anchors, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchors and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system. Make sure the child restraint system is securely attached, or it may cause death or serious injury to the child or other passengers in the event of a sudden braking or an accident.

■ When the child restraint system is not in use

If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment. If a head restraint was removed when installing a child restraint system, always install the head restraint before driving. This will prevent it from injuring passengers in the event of a sudden stop or accident.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 70 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Exhaust gas precautions

Harmful substance to the human body is included in exhaust gases if inhaled.

⚠ WARNING

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Important points while driving

- Keep the back door closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the back door is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ When parking

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the hybrid system.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the hybrid system on for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the hybrid system operating in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the hybrid system is operating, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

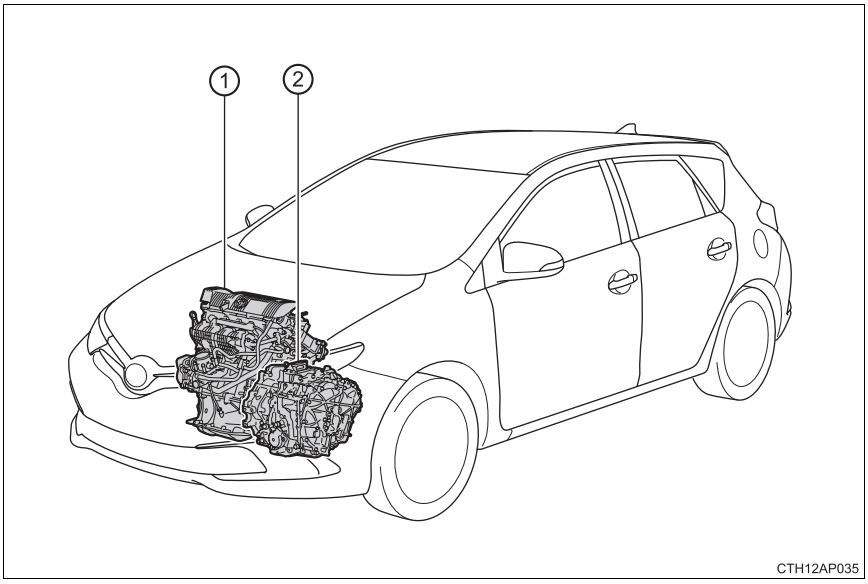
■ Exhaust pipe

The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Hybrid system features

Your vehicle is a hybrid vehicle. It has characteristics different from conventional vehicles. Be sure you are closely familiar with the characteristics of your vehicle, and operate it with care.

The hybrid system combines the use of a gasoline engine and an electric motor (traction motor) according to driving conditions, improving fuel efficiency and reducing exhaust emissions.



The illustration is an example for explanation and may differ from the actual item.

① Gasoline engine

② Electric motor (traction motor)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 72 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

When stopped/during start off

The gasoline engine stops* when the vehicle is stopped. During start off, the electric motor (traction motor) drives the vehicle. At slow speeds or when traveling down a gentle slope, the engine is stopped* and the electric motor (traction motor) is used.

When the shift position is in N, the hybrid battery (traction battery) is not being charged.

*: When the hybrid battery (traction battery) requires charging or the engine is warming up, etc., the gasoline engine will not automatically stop. (→P. 73)

During normal driving

The gasoline engine is predominantly used. The electric motor (traction motor) charges the hybrid battery (traction battery) as necessary.

When accelerating sharply

When the accelerator pedal is depressed heavily, the power of the hybrid battery (traction battery) is added to that of the gasoline engine via the electric motor (traction motor).

When braking (regenerative braking)

The wheels operate the electric motor (traction motor) as a power generator, and the hybrid battery (traction battery) is charged.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 73 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

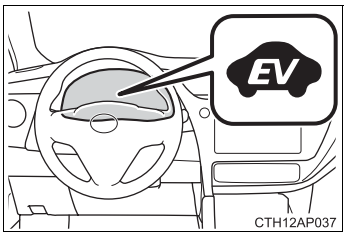
Regenerative braking

In the following situations, kinetic energy is converted to electric energy and deceleration force can be obtained in conjunction with the recharging of the hybrid battery (traction battery).

- The accelerator pedal is released while driving with the shift position in D or B.
- The brake pedal is depressed while driving with the shift position in D or B.

EV indicator

The EV indicator will be displayed on the multi-information display when the vehicle is driven using only the electric motor (traction motor) or the gasoline engine is stopped.



Conditions in which the gasoline engine may not stop

The gasoline engine starts and stops automatically. However, it may not stop automatically in the following conditions:

- During gasoline engine warm-up
- During hybrid battery (traction battery) charging
- When the temperature of the hybrid battery (traction battery) is high or low
- When the heater is switched on

Charging the hybrid battery (traction battery)

As the gasoline engine charges the hybrid battery (traction battery), the battery does not need to be charged from an outside source. However, if the vehicle is left parked for a long time the hybrid battery (traction battery) will slowly discharge. For this reason, be sure to drive the vehicle at least once every few months for at least 30 minutes or 16 km (10 miles). If the hybrid battery (traction battery) becomes fully discharged and you are unable to start the hybrid system, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Charging the 12-volt battery

→P. 515

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 74 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **After the 12-volt battery has discharged or when the terminal has been removed and installed during exchange, etc.**

The gasoline engine may not stop even if the vehicle is being driven by the hybrid battery (traction battery). If this continues for a few days, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Sounds and vibrations specific to a hybrid vehicle**

There may be no engine sound or vibration even though the vehicle is able to move with the “READY” indicator is illuminated. For safety, apply the parking brake and make sure to shift the shift position to P when parked.

The following sounds or vibrations may occur when the hybrid system is operating and are not a malfunction:

- Motor sounds may be heard from the engine compartment.
- Sounds may be heard from the hybrid battery (traction battery) under the rear seats when the hybrid system starts or stops.
- Relay operating sounds such as a snap or soft clank will be emitted from the hybrid battery (traction battery), behind the rear seats, when the hybrid system is started or stopped.
- Sounds from the hybrid system may be heard when the back door is open.
- Sounds may be heard from the transmission when the gasoline engine starts or stops, when driving at low speeds, or during idling.
- Engine sounds may be heard when accelerating sharply.
- Sounds may be heard due to regenerative braking when the brake pedal is depressed or as the accelerator pedal is released.
- Vibration may be felt when the gasoline engine starts or stops.
- Cooling fan sounds may be heard from the air intake vents on the side of the lower part of the rear left seats.

■ **Maintenance, repair, recycling, and disposal**

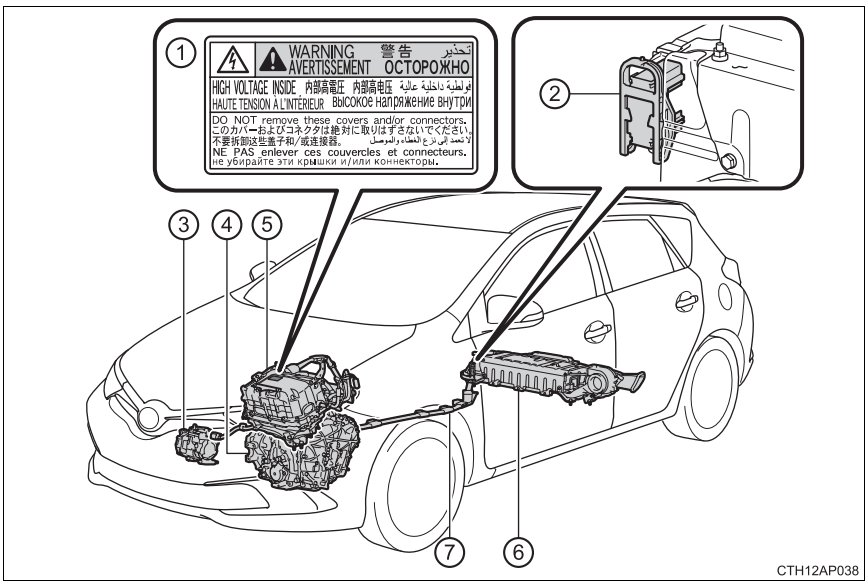
Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional regarding maintenance, repair, recycling and disposal. Do not dispose of the vehicle yourself.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. on/off operation of the EV indicator) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 540)

Hybrid system precautions

Take care when handling the hybrid system, as it is a high voltage system (about 650 V at maximum) as well as contains parts that become extremely hot when the hybrid system is operating. Obey the warning labels attached to the vehicle.



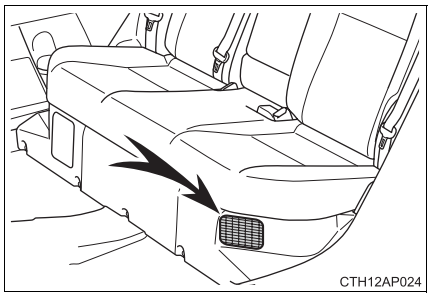
The illustration is an example for explanation and may differ from the actual item.

① Warning label
② Service plug
③ Air conditioning compressor
④ Electric motor (traction motor)
⑤ Power control unit
⑥ Hybrid battery (traction battery)
⑦ High voltage cables (orange)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 76 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Hybrid battery (traction battery) air intake vent

There is an air intake vent on the side of the lower part of the rear left seat for the purpose of cooling the hybrid battery (traction battery). If the vent becomes blocked, the hybrid battery may overheat, leading to a reduction in hybrid battery output.



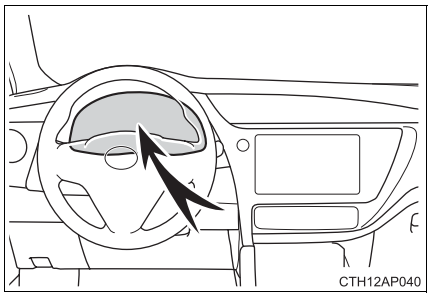
Emergency shut off system

When a certain level of impact is detected by the impact sensor, the emergency shut off system blocks the high voltage current and stops the fuel pump to minimize the risk of electrocution and fuel leakage. If the emergency shut off system activates, your vehicle will not restart. To restart the hybrid system, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Hybrid warning message

A message is automatically displayed when a malfunction occurs in the hybrid system or an improper operation is attempted.

If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions. (→P. 472)



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 77 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If a warning light comes on, a warning message is displayed, or the 12-volt battery is disconnected

The hybrid system may not start. In this case, try to start the system again. If the “READY” indicator does not come on, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Running out of fuel

When the vehicle has run out of fuel and the hybrid system cannot be started, refuel the vehicle with at least enough gasoline to make the low fuel level warning light (→P. 467) go off. If there is only a small amount of fuel, the hybrid system may not be able to start. (The standard amount of fuel is about 8.1 L [2.2 gal., 1.8 Imp. gal.], when the vehicle is on a level surface. This value may vary when the vehicle is on a slope. Add extra fuel when the vehicle is inclined.)

Electromagnetic waves

- High voltage parts and cables on hybrid vehicles incorporate electromagnetic shielding, and therefore emit approximately the same amount of electromagnetic waves as conventional gasoline powered vehicles or home electronic appliances.
- Your vehicle may cause sound interference in some third party-produced radio parts.

Hybrid battery (traction battery)

The hybrid battery (traction battery) has a limited service life. The lifespan of the hybrid battery (traction battery) can change in accordance with driving style and driving conditions.

Declaration of conformity

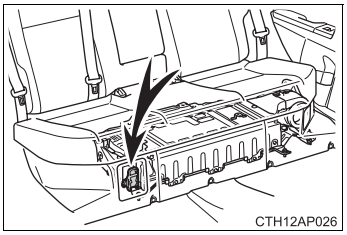
This model conforms to hydrogen emissions according to regulation ECE100 (Battery electric vehicle safety).

WARNING

■High voltage precautions

This vehicle has high voltage DC and AC systems as well as a 12-volt system. DC and AC high voltage is very dangerous and can cause severe burns and electric shock that may result in death or serious injury.

- Never touch, disassemble, remove or replace the high voltage parts, cables or their connectors.
- The hybrid system will become hot after starting as the system uses high voltage. Be careful of both the high voltage and the high temperature, and always obey the warning labels attached to the vehicle.
- Never try to open the service plug access hole located under the rear seat. The service plug is used only when the vehicle is serviced and is subject to high voltage.


CTH12AP026

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 79 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

■Road accident cautions

If your vehicle is involved in an accident, observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of death or serious injury:

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place to prevent subsequent accidents, apply the parking brake, shift the shift position to P, and turn the hybrid system off. (→P. 174)
- Do not touch the high voltage parts, cables and connectors.
- If electric wires are exposed inside or outside your vehicle, an electric shock may occur. Never touch exposed electric wires.
- If a fluid leak occurs, do not touch the fluid as it may be strong alkaline electrolyte from the hybrid battery (traction battery). If it comes into contact with your skin or eyes, wash it off immediately with a large amount of water or, if possible, boric acid solution. Seek immediate medical attention.
- If a fire occurs in the hybrid vehicle, leave the vehicle as soon as possible. Never use a fire extinguisher that is not meant for electric fires. Using even a small amount of water may be dangerous.
- If your vehicle needs to be towed, do so with the front wheels raised. If the wheels connected to the electric motor (traction motor) are on the ground when towing, the motor may continue to generate electricity. This may cause a fire. (→P. 458)
- Carefully inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that liquid has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system may have been damaged. Leave the vehicle as soon as possible.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 80 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

■Hybrid battery (traction battery)

●Never resell, hand over or modify the hybrid battery. To prevent accidents, hybrid batteries that have been removed from a disposed vehicle are collected through any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Do not dispose of the battery yourself.

Unless the battery is properly collected, the following may occur, resulting in death or serious injury:

- The hybrid battery may be illegally disposed of or dumped, and it is hazardous to the environment or someone may touch a high voltage part, resulting in an electric shock.
- The hybrid battery is intended to be used exclusively with your hybrid vehicle. If the hybrid battery is used outside of your vehicle or modified in any way, accidents such as electric shock, heat generation, smoke generation, an explosion and electrolyte leakage may occur.

When reselling or handing over your vehicle, the possibility of an accident is extremely high because the person receiving the vehicle may not be aware of these dangers.

●If your vehicle is disposed of without the hybrid battery having been removed, there is a danger of serious electric shock if high voltage parts, cables and their connectors are touched. In the event that your vehicle must be disposed of, the hybrid battery must be disposed of by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. If the hybrid battery is not disposed of properly, it may cause electric shock that can result in death or serious injury.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 81 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

■Hybrid battery (traction battery) air intake vent

- Do not place objects that will block the air intake vent. The hybrid battery (traction battery) may overheat and be damaged.
- Clean the air intake vent regularly to prevent the hybrid battery (traction battery) from overheating.
- Do not get water or foreign materials in the air intake vent as this may cause a short circuit and damage the hybrid battery (traction battery).
- Do not carry large amounts of water such as water cooler bottles in the vehicle. If water spills onto the hybrid battery (traction battery), the battery may be damaged. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 82 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Immobilizer system

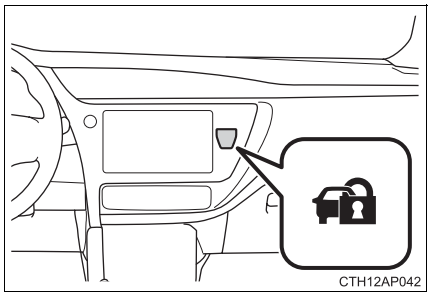
The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the hybrid system from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

The indicator light flashes after the power switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the power switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.



■ **System maintenance**

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type immobilizer system.

■ **Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction**

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 83 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Certification for the immobilizer system

TOYOTA

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571, JAPAN TEL:+81-565-28-2121

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: Immobilizer
Product Model: TMIMB-3
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements:	EN 60950-1
-EMC requirements	EN 301 489-01 & EN 301 489-03
-Effective uses of radio spectrum:	EN 300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: February 25, 2013

Signature: Tetsuya Matsuo

Tetsuya Matsuo

Hereby, Toyota Motor Corporation, declares that this TMIMB-3 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation vakuuttaa täten että TMIMB-3 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Toyota Motor Corporation dat het toestel TMIMB-3 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Toyota Motor Corporation déclare que l'appareil TMIMB-3 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Toyota Motor Corporation att denna TMIMB-3 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMIMB-3 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt Toyota Motor Corporation, dass sich das Gerät TMIMB-3 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Toyota Motor Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ TMIMB-3 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Toyota Motor Corporation dichiara che questo TMIMB-3 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Toyota Motor Corporation declara que el TMIMB-3 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Toyota Motor Corporation declara que este TMIMB-3 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, Toyota Motor Corporation, jiddikjara li dan TMIMB-3 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Toyota Motor Corporation seadme TMIMB-3 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, Toyota Motor Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a TMIMB-3 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

Toyota Motor Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že TMIMB-3 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMIMB-3 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation izjavlja, da je ta TMIMB-3 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Toyota Motor Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis TMIMB-3 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Toyota Motor Corporation deklarē, ka TMIMB-3 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Toyota Motor Corporation oświadcza, że TMIMB-3 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Toyota Motor Corporation yfir því að TMIMB-3 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret TMIMB-3 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, Toyota Motor Corporation, декларира, че TMIMB-3 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, Toyota Motor Corporation, declară că aparatul TMIMB-3 este in conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da ovaj TMIMB-3 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklaroj qe ky TMIMB-3 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da je TMIMB-3 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklariše da je TMIMB-3 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 86 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

■To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 87 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Alarm*

The alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.

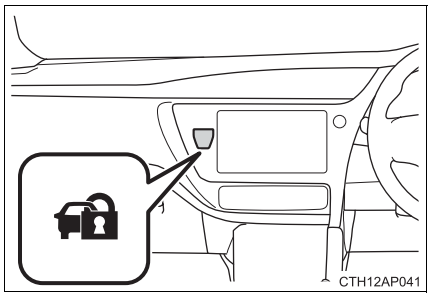
The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (An intruder gets in the vehicle.)
- The back door window is tapped or broken.

Setting the alarm system

Close the doors and hood, and lock all the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.



*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 88 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm:

- Unlock the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control.
- Start the hybrid system. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

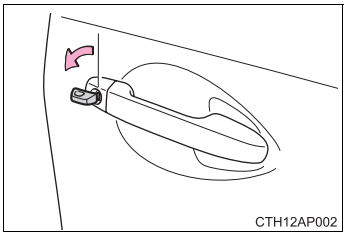
- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 89 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

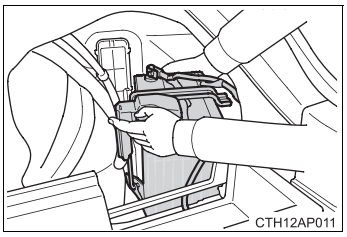
- The doors are unlocked using the key.



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or the hood.



- The 12-volt battery is disconnected.



Alarm-operated door lock

- When the alarm is operating, the doors are locked automatically to prevent intruders.
- Do not leave the key inside the vehicle when the alarm is operating, and make sure the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the 12-volt battery.

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 90 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Intrusion sensor

The intrusion sensor detects intruders or movement in the vehicle. When an intruder or movement is detected, the alarm will be triggered.

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

■ Setting the intrusion sensor

The intrusion sensor will be set automatically when the alarm is set. (→P. 87)

■ Canceling the intrusion sensor

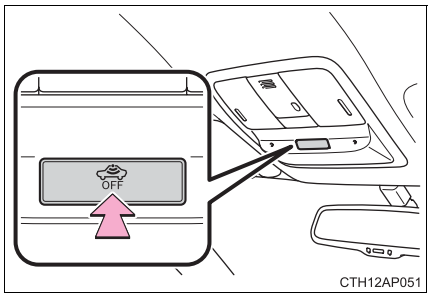
If you are leaving pets or other moving things inside the vehicle, make sure to stop the intrusion sensor before setting the alarm, as they will respond to movement inside the vehicle.

1 Turn the power switch off.

2 Press the intrusion sensor cancel switch.

To set the alarm with the intrusion sensor disabled, the alarm must be set within 5 minutes after canceling the sensor.

The intrusion sensor will revert to on each time the power switch is turned to ON mode.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 91 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

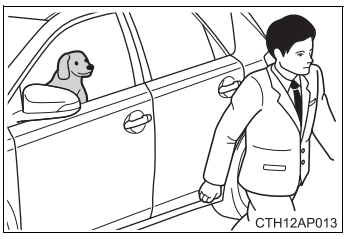
■ Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor is canceled.
- After the intrusion sensor is canceled, pressing the power switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control will re-enable the intrusion sensor.
- The intrusion sensor will automatically be re-enabled when the alarm system is deactivated.
- The intrusion sensor will automatically be re-enabled if the alarm system is not set within 5 minutes after the intrusion sensor is canceled.

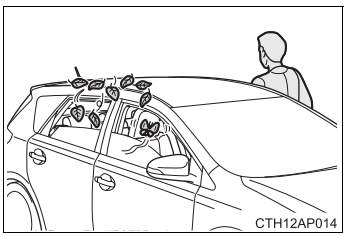
■ Intrusion sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

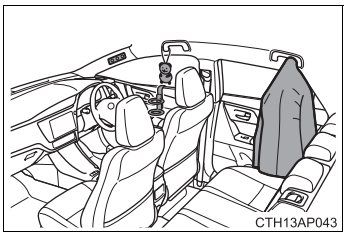
- Persons or pets are in the vehicle.



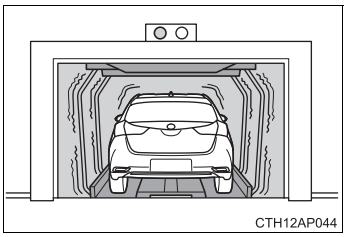
- A window is open.
  In this case, the sensor may detect the following:
  - Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
  - Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
  - The movement of people outside the vehicle



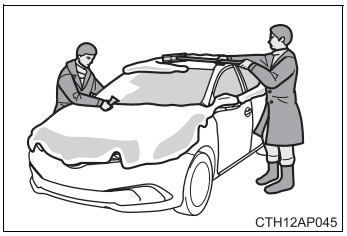
- Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks, are in the vehicle.



- The vehicle is parked in a place where extreme vibrations or noises occur, such as in a parking garage.


CTH12AP044

- Ice or snow is removed from the vehicle, causing the vehicle to receive repeated impacts or vibrations.

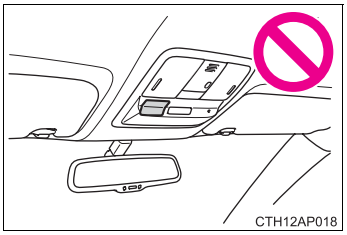

CTH12AP045

- The vehicle is inside an automatic or high-pressure car wash.
- The vehicle experiences impacts, such as hail, lightning strikes, and other kinds of repeated impacts or vibrations.

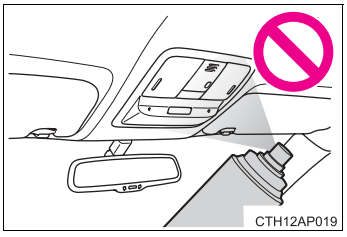
NOTICE

To ensure the intrusion sensor function correctly

- To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.


CTH12AP018

- Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.


CTH12AP019

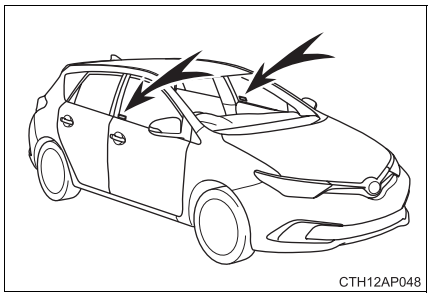
- Installing accessories other than genuine Toyota parts or leaving objects between the driver's seat and front passenger's seat may reduce the detection performance.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 93 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Double locking system (right-hand drive vehicles only)

Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

Vehicles employing this system have labels on the window glass of both front doors.


CTH12AP048

Setting the double locking system

1 Turn the power switch off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that all the doors are closed.

2 Using the entry function:
Touch the sensor area on the outside door handle twice within 5 seconds.
Using the wireless remote control:
Press twice within 5 seconds.

Canceling the double locking system

Using the entry function: Hold the outside door handle.
Using the wireless remote control: Press .

WARNING

■ Double locking system precaution

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle because all the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 94 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Instrument cluster 2

2. Instrument cluster

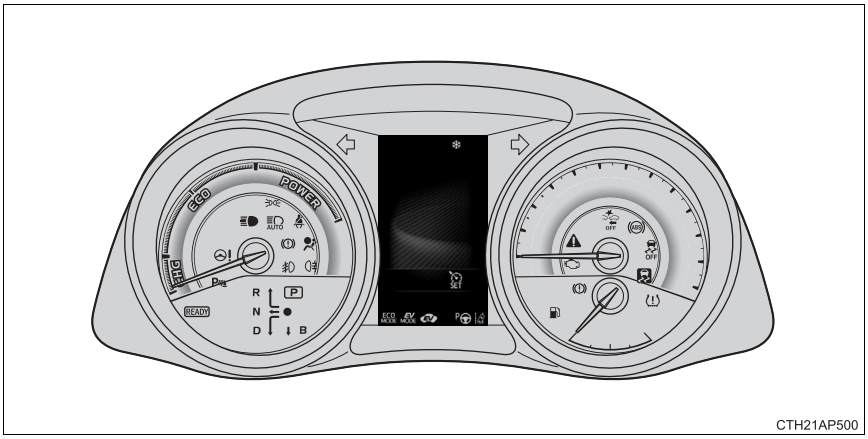
Warning lights and indicators 96
Gauges and meters 101
Multi-information display 104
Energy monitor/ consumption screen 113

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 96 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators on the instrument cluster and center panel inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustration displays all warning lights and indicators illuminated.



The units used on the speedometer and some indicators may differ depending on the target region.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 97 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle's systems.

*1  (Red)
Brake system warning light (→P. 465)

*1  (Yellow)
Brake system warning light (→P. 465)


High engine coolant temperature warning light (→P. 465)

*1 
Malfunction indicator lamp (→P. 466)

*1 
SRS warning light (→P. 466)

*1 
ABS warning light (→P. 466)

*1 
Electric power steering system warning light (→P. 466)

*1 
Slip indicator (→P. 466)

*1, 2  (if equipped)
PCS warning light (→P. 467)


Low fuel level warning light (→P. 467)


Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (→P. 467)

*3 
Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights (→P. 468)

*1  (if equipped)
Tire pressure warning light (→P. 468)

*1 
Master warning light (→P. 468)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 98 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

*1: These lights turn on when the power switch is turned to ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the hybrid system is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*2: The light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

*3: This light illuminates on the center panel.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 99 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.


Turn signal indicator (→P. 211)


Tail light indicator (→P. 213)


Headlight high beam indicator (→P. 213)

*1

(if equipped)
Automatic High Beam indicator (→P. 248)


(if equipped)
Front fog light indicator (→P. 219)


Rear fog light indicator (→P. 219)


(if equipped)
Cruise control indicator (→P. 257)


(if equipped)
Cruise control "SET" indicator (→P. 257)


(if equipped)
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) indicator (→P. 242)


(if equipped)
Toyota parking assist-sensor indicator (→P. 262)


(if equipped)
Simple-IPA indicator (→P. 269)

*1, 2

Slip indicator (→P. 284)

*1

VSC OFF indicator (→P. 284)

*1

(if equipped)
PCS warning light (→P. 235)


EV indicator (→P. 201)

*3

Security indicator (→P. 82, 87)


Power mode indicator (→P. 206)

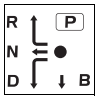

"ECO MODE" indicator (→P. 206)


EV drive mode indicator (→P. 201)


"READY" indicator (→P. 195)

*4 

Low outside temperature indicator (→P. 106)



Shift position indicators (→P. 203)

*1, 3 

"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator (→P. 48)

*1: These lights turn on when the power switch is turned to ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the hybrid system is on, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if a light does not come on, or if the lights do not turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*2: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.

*3: This light illuminates on the center panel.

*4: When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, the indicator will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.

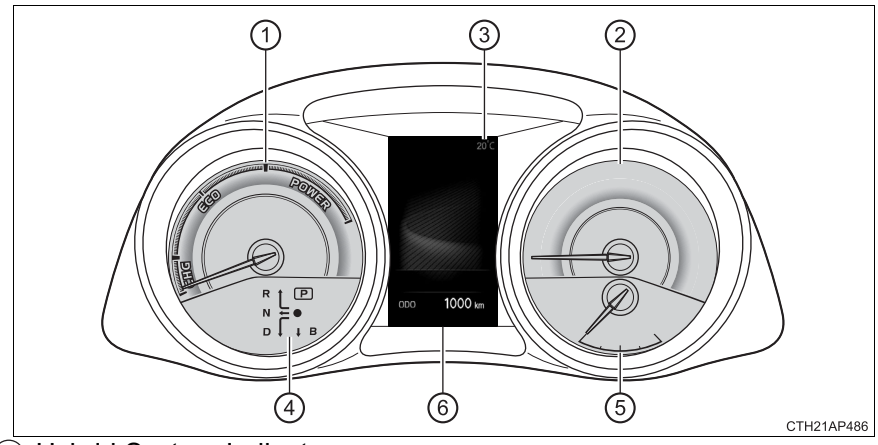
WARNING

■ If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the hybrid system, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately if this occurs.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 101 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Gauges and meters



① Hybrid System Indicator

Displays hybrid system output or regeneration level (→P. 102)

② Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed.

③ Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F). Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower.

④ Shift position indicators

Displays the shift position. (→P. 203)

⑤ Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank.

⑥ Multi-information display

→P. 104

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 102 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **The meters and display illuminate when**

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ **Outside temperature display**

- In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.
  - When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 15 km/h [9 mph])
  - When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)
- If "– –" is displayed continuously, the system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Hybrid System Indicator**

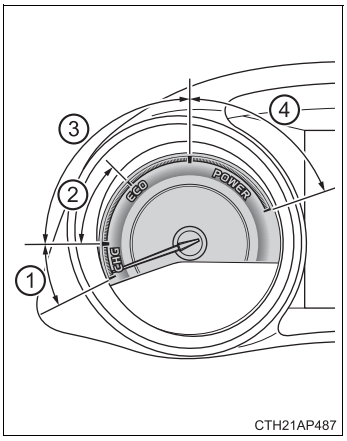
① Charge area
Shows regenerative charging.

② Hybrid Eco area
Shows that gasoline engine power is not being used very often.

The gasoline engine will automatically stop and restart under various conditions.

③ Eco area
Shows that the vehicle is being driven in an Eco-friendly manner.

④ Power area
Shows that an Eco-friendly driving range is being exceeded (during full power driving etc.)



CTH21AP487

- By keeping the indicator needle within Eco area, more Eco-friendly driving can be achieved.
- Charge area indicates regeneration* status. Regenerated energy will be used to charge the hybrid battery (traction battery).

*: When used in this manual, "regeneration" refers to the conversion of energy created by the movement of the vehicle into electrical energy.

■ **Engine speed**

On hybrid vehicles, engine speed is precisely controlled in order to help improve fuel efficiency and reduce exhaust emissions etc.
There are times when the engine speed that is displayed may differ even when vehicle operation and driving conditions are the same.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 103 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

■To prevent damage to the engine and its components

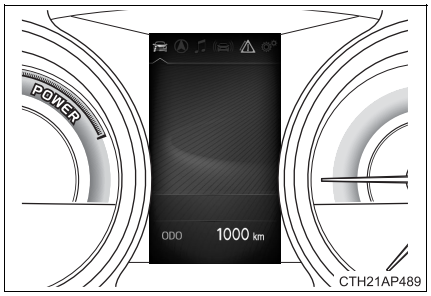
If the high engine coolant temperature warning light is shown, the engine may be overheating. In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the hybrid system after it has cooled completely.
(→P. 518)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 104 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Multi-information display

Display content

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related data, such as the current outside temperature. The multi-information display can also be used to change the display settings and other settings.



- Outside temperature (→P. 101)
- Pop-up display

  In some situations a warning message or the operation status of a system will be temporarily displayed on the multi-information display.

  On some models: Some pop-up displays can be set on/off. (→P. 110)
- Trip information (→P. 106)

  Displays the following items:
  - Odometer
  - Trip meter

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 105 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

● Menu icons (→P. 107)

Select a menu icon to display its content.

To display the menu icons, press the ❮ or ❯ switch on the steering wheel.

 Drive information (→P. 108)

Select to display various drive data.

 Navigation system-linked display (if equipped)

Select to display the following navigation system-linked information.
- Route guidance
- Compass display (north-up display/heading-up display)

 Audio system-linked display (if equipped)

Select to enable selection of an audio source or track on the meter using the meter control switches.

 Driving assist system information (if equipped)

Select to display the operational status of the following systems
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert) (→P. 242)
- RSA (Road Sign Assist) (→P. 252)

 Warning message display (→P. 472)

Select to display warning messages and measures to be taken if a malfunction is detected.

 Settings display (→P. 110)

Select to change the meter display settings and other settings.

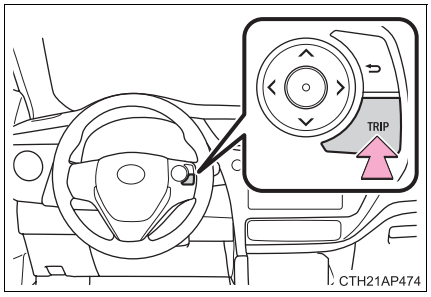
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 106 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Trip information

◆ Changing the display

To change the displayed item, press the “TRIP” switch.

Each time the switch is pressed, the displayed item will be changed.



◆ Display items

■ Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

■ Trip meter A/trip meter B

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

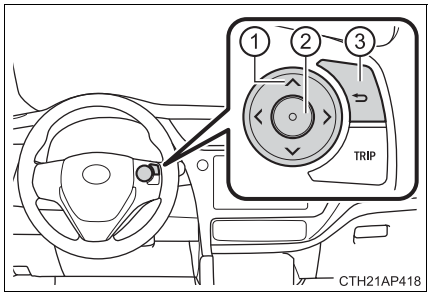
To reset, display the desired trip meter and press and hold the “TRIP” switch.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 107 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Menu icons

◆ Operating the meter control switches

The multi-information display is operated using the meter control switches.



① ‹ › : Display the menu icons/select menu icons

^ v : Change displayed item, scroll up/down the screen and move the cursor up/down

② Press: Enter/Set

Press and hold: Reset

③ Return to the previous screen

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 108 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

◆ Drive information

■ Drive information 1/Drive information 2/Drive information 3

Displays drive information such as the following:

- Drive information 1
  - Current fuel consumption (gauge display)
  - Average fuel economy (after reset)
- Drive information 2
  - Distance (driving range)
  - Average vehicle speed (after reset)
- Drive information 3
  - Average fuel economy (after start)
  - Distance (after start)

Displayed items (listed below) can be changed on the settings display. (→P. 110)

Item		Content
	Current fuel consumption (gauge display)	Displays the current rate of fuel consumption on a gauge display
	Current fuel consumption (numeric display)	Displays the current rate of fuel consumption as a number
	Average fuel economy (after reset)	Displays average fuel consumption since display reset*1, 2
	Average fuel economy (after start)	Displays average fuel consumption since hybrid system start*2
	Average fuel economy (after refuel)	Displays average fuel consumption since refuel*2, 3
	Average vehicle speed (after reset)	Displays average vehicle speed since display reset*1
	Average vehicle speed (after start)	Displays average vehicle speed since hybrid system start
	Elapsed time (after reset)	Displays elapsed time since display reset*1

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 109 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Item		Content
	Elapsed time (after start)	Displays elapsed time since hybrid system start
	Distance (driving range)	Displays driving range with remaining fuel*3, 4
	Distance (after start)	Displays drive distance since vehicle start
	Blank	No item

*1: Values that can be reset will be displayed with a circle (●) in the upper right corner.
To reset, display the desired item and press and hold ⊙ switch. If both displayed items are resettable, a reset selection screen will appear.

*2: Use the displayed fuel consumption as a reference.

*3: When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
When refueling, turn the power switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the power switch off, the display may not be updated.

*4: This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

■ Energy monitor

→P. 113

■ Digital speedometer

Displays vehicle speed as a number.

◆ Settings display

■ **LDA (Lane Departure Alert) warning sensitivity (if equipped)**

LDA warning sensitivity can be set to 2 different levels.

■ **Toyota parking assist-sensor (if equipped)**

Select to activate/deactivate the Toyota parking assist-sensor system.

■ **RSA (Road Sign Assist) (if equipped)**

Select to activate/deactivate the RSA system.

■ **Meter light control**

Select to adjust the brightness of the meters when in night mode*.

*: Night mode: →P. 111

■ **Other settings**

Select to change the following settings:

● RSA (Road Sign Assist) setting (if equipped)

- Notification method (excess speed/other warnings)
  Select to change the notification method of the following warnings to no notification/display only/display and buzzer.
  Excess speed warning:
  Warns the driver if the vehicle exceeds the speed displayed on the speed limit sign on the multi-information display.
  Other warnings:
  Warns the driver if the system determines that the vehicle is overtaking when a no overtaking sign is displayed on the multi-information display.
- Excess speed notification level
  Select to set the speed threshold over which the excess speed warning starts to operate when a speed limit sign is displayed on the multi-information display.

● Units

Select to change the units of measure displayed on the multi-information display.

● EV indicator

Select to set the EV indicator on/off.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 111 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

● Drive information 1/Drive information 2/Drive information 3

Select to select up to 2 items that will be displayed on the Drive information 1 screen, Drive information 2 screen and Drive information 3 screen respectively. (→P. 108)

● Pop-up display

Select to set the following pop-up displays on/off.

- Incoming call display of the hands-free phone system (if equipped)
- Route guidance display of the navigation system-linked system (if equipped)

● Initialization

Select to reset the meter display settings. (→P. 541)

■ **Language**

Select to change the language on the display.

■ **Brightness of the meters (day mode and night mode)**

● The brightness of the meters is changed between day mode and night mode.

▶ Vehicles without automatic light control system

- Day mode: When the tail lights are off
- Night mode: When the tail lights are on

▶ Vehicles with automatic light control system

- Day mode: When the tail lights are off or when the tail lights are on but the surrounding area is bright
- Night mode: When the tail lights are on and the surrounding area is dark

● When in night mode, the brightness will be reduced slightly unless the meters are set to the maximum brightness level.

■ **Suspension of the settings display**

● While driving, the multi-information display cannot be changed to setting mode. Before changing the settings, stop the vehicle in a safe place.

● In the following situations, operation of some of the settings display may be temporarily suspended.

- When a warning message appears on the multi-information display
- When the vehicle begins to move

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 112 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

When disconnecting and reconnecting 12-volt battery terminals

The drive information data will be reset.

Liquid crystal display

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

Ending display

When the power switch is turned off, the following information about the current trip will be temporarily displayed on the multi-information display.

- Elapsed time (after start)
- Distance (after start)
- Average fuel economy (after start)

WARNING

Caution for use while driving

- When operating the multi-information display while driving, pay extra attention to the safety of the area around the vehicle.
- Do not look continuously at the multi-information display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

Cautions during setting up the display

As the hybrid system needs to be operating during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

The multi-information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

While setting up the display

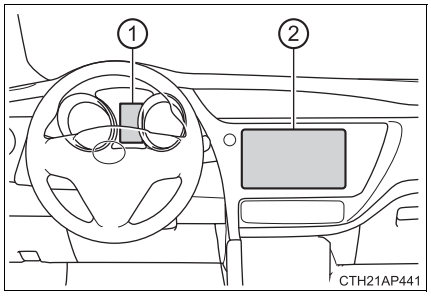
To prevent 12-volt battery discharge, ensure that the hybrid system is operating while setting up the display features.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 113 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Energy monitor/consumption screen*

You can view the status of your hybrid system on the multi-information display and the navigation/multimedia system.

① Multi-information display
② Navigation/multimedia system (if equipped)

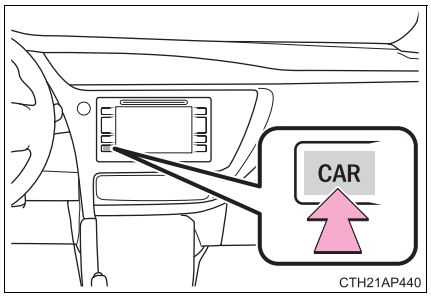


Energy monitor

▶ Navigation/multimedia system

Press the “CAR” button on the navigation/multimedia system.

Select “Energy monitor”.



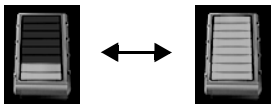
▶ Multi-information display

Press ❮ or ❯ of the meter control switches and select  , and then press ^ or ⌄ to select the energy monitor display.

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 114 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

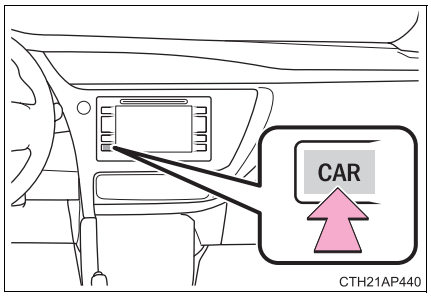
■ Energy monitor screen

	Navigation/multimedia system	Multi-information display
When the vehicle is powered by the electric motor (traction motor)		
When the vehicle is powered by the gasoline engine		
When the vehicle is powered by both the gasoline engine and the electric motor (traction motor)		
When the vehicle is charging the hybrid battery (traction battery)		
When there is no energy flow		
Hybrid battery (traction battery) status	Low Full 	Low Full 

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 115 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Trip information (navigation/multimedia system)

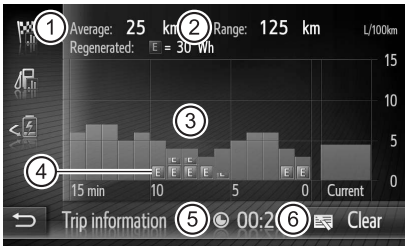
1 Press the “CAR” button on the navigation/multimedia system.



CTH21AP440

2 Select “Trip information”.

■ Trip information screen



CTH21AP412E

① Displays the average vehicle speed since the hybrid system was started.

② Cruising range (→P. 116)

③ Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes

④ Regenerated energy in the past 15 minutes

One symbol indicates 30 Wh. Up to 5 symbols are shown.

⑤ Displays the elapsed time since the hybrid system was started.

⑥ Resetting the consumption data

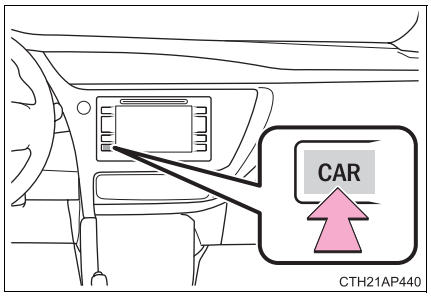
Average fuel consumption for the past 15 minutes is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the power switch was last turned to ON mode. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 116 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

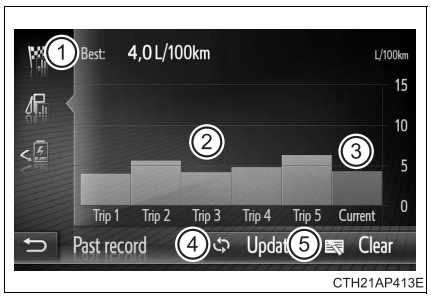
Past record (navigation/multimedia system)

1 Press the “CAR” button on the navigation/multimedia system.



2 Select “Past record”.

■ **Past record screen**



① Best recorded fuel consumption

② Previous fuel consumption record

③ Average fuel consumption

④ Updating the average fuel consumption data

⑤ Resetting the past record data

The average fuel consumption history is divided by color into past averages and the average fuel consumption since the last updated. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only.

■ **Updating the past record data**

Update the average fuel consumption by selecting “Update” to measure the current fuel consumption again.

■ **Resetting the data**

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by selecting “Clear”.

■ **Cruising range**

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption.
As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 117 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Operation of each component 3

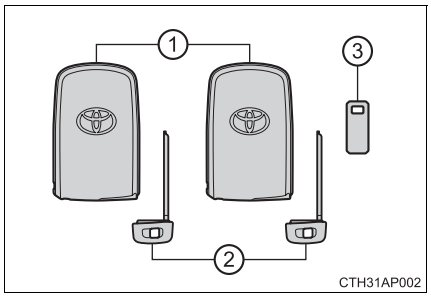
3-1. Key information
Keys....118
3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
Side doors....122
Back door....127
Smart entry & start system....132
Push button start....146
3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats....157
Rear seats....159
Head restraints....161
3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel....163
Inside rear view mirror....165
Outside rear view mirrors....167
3-5. Opening and closing the windows
Power windows....170

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 118 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Keys

The keys

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



① Electronic keys
- Operating the smart entry & start system*1 (→P. 132)
- Operating the push button start*2 (→P. 146)
- Operating the wireless remote control function

② Mechanical keys

③ Key number plate

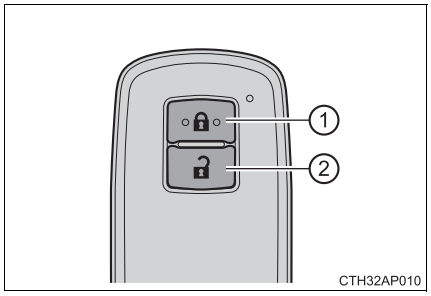
*1: Vehicles with a smart entry & start system

*2: Vehicles with a push button start

Wireless remote control

① Locks all the doors (→P. 122)

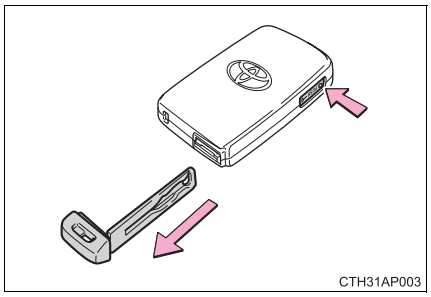
② Unlocks all the doors (→P. 122)



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 119 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.



The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P. 510)

■ If you lose your keys

New genuine keys can be made by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional using the mechanical key and the key number stamped on your key number plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

■ When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag, etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system or push button start

→P. 135, 148

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 120 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years.
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the hybrid system stops.
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P. 433)
  - The smart entry & start system, push button start or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field.
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Table lamps
  - Induction cookers

■ **When the electronic key battery is fully depleted**

→P. 433

■ **Confirmation of the registered key number**

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details.

■ **If a wrong key is used**

The key cylinder rotates freely, isolated from the internal mechanism.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. wireless remote control system) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 540)

■ **Certification for the wireless remote control**

→P. 138, 149

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 121 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

Carrying the electronic key on your person

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

When an electronic key is lost

If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately with all remaining electronic keys that was provided with your vehicle.

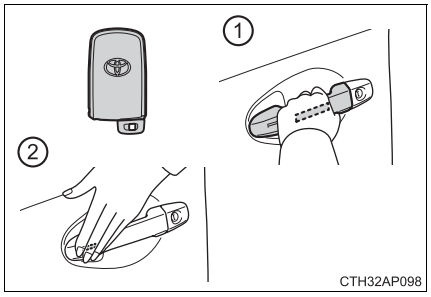
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 122 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Side doors

Unlocking and locking the doors from the outside

◆ Entry function (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



① Grip the front door handle to unlock all the doors.

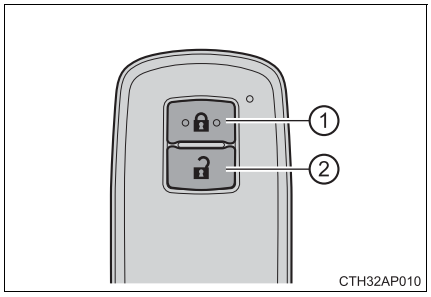
Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

② Touch the lock sensor (the indentation on the side of the door handle) to lock all the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.

◆ Wireless remote control



① Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

② Unlocks all the doors

■ Operation signals

The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

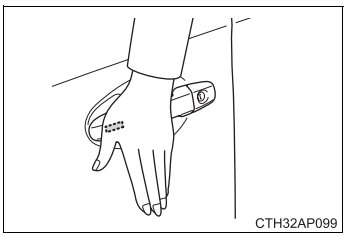
■ Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again. (However, depending on the location of the electronic key, the key may be detected as being in the vehicle. In this case, vehicle may be unlocked.)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 123 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the surface of the front door handle**

Use your palm to touch the lock sensor.



■ **Door lock buzzer**

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer will sound continuously for 5 seconds. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the doors again.

■ **Alarm (if equipped)**

Using the entry function or wireless remote control to lock the doors will set the alarm system. (→P. 87)

■ **If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors. (→P. 510)

Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P. 433)

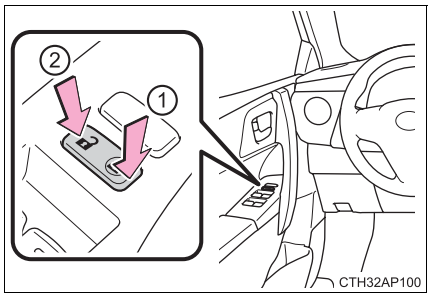
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 124 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Unlocking and locking the doors from the inside

◆ Door lock switch

① Locks all the doors

② Unlocks all the doors

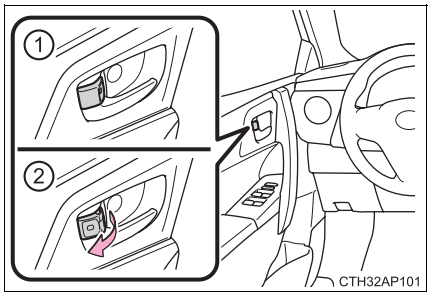


◆ Inside lock buttons

① Locks the door

② Unlocks the door

The front doors can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock buttons are in the lock position.



Locking the front doors from the outside without a key

1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.

2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

The door cannot be locked if the power switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 125 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

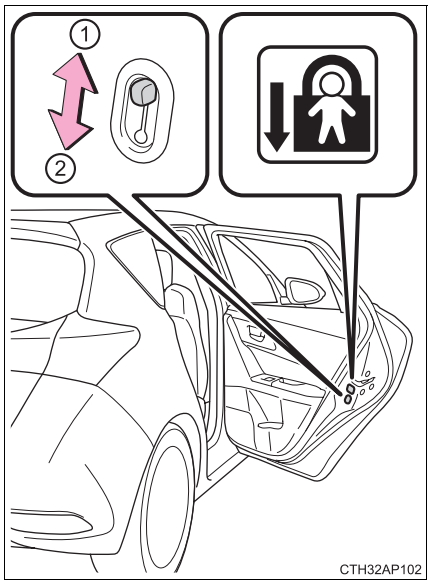
Rear door child-protector lock

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.

① Unlock

② Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.



■ **Using the mechanical key**

The doors can also be locked and unlocked with the mechanical key. (→P. 510)

■ **Open door warning buzzer**

If a door or the back door is not fully closed, a buzzer will sound when the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h (3 mph).
The open door(s) or back door is indicated on the multi-information display.

■ **Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system**

→P. 135

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 126 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

■To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant throwing out of the vehicle, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that all doors are properly closed and locked.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving.
  Be especially careful for the driver's door and passenger's door, as the door may be opened even if the inside lock button is in the locked position.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seats.

Back door

The back door can be locked/unlocked and opened by the following procedures.

Unlocking and locking the back door

■ Door lock switch

→P. 124

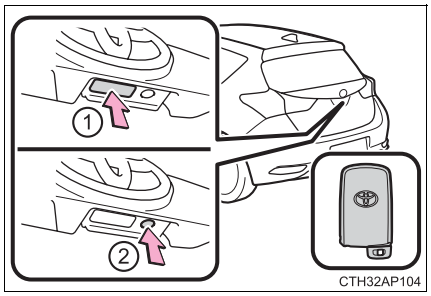
■ Entry function (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

① Press the button to unlock the back door.

The door cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the door is locked.

② Press the button to lock the back door.

Check that the door is securely locked.



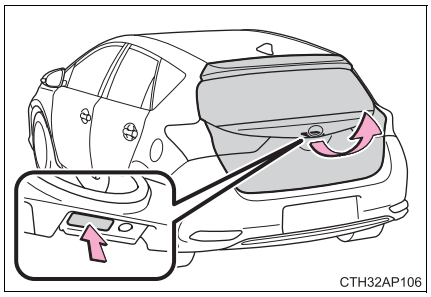
■ Wireless remote control

→P. 122

Opening the back door

Raise the back door while pushing up the back door opener switch.

The back door cannot be closed immediately after the back door opener switch is pushed.



■ Operation signals

The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 128 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

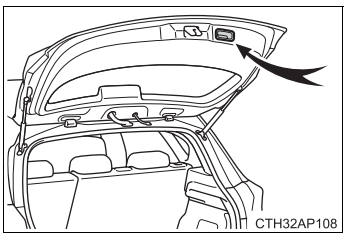
■ Open door warning buzzer

If a door or the back door is not fully closed, a buzzer will sound when the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h (3 mph).
The open door(s) or back door is indicated on the multi-information display.

■ When closing the back door

Lower the back door using the back door handle, and make sure to push the back door down from the outside to close it.

Be careful not to pull the back door sideways when closing the back door with the handle.


CTH32AP108

■ Luggage compartment light

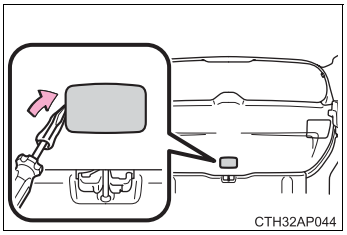
The luggage compartment light turns on when the back door is opened.

■ If the back door opener is inoperative

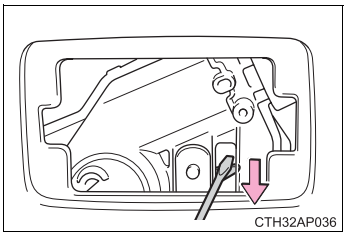
The back door can be operated from the inside.

1 Using a screwdriver, remove the cover.

To protect the cover, place a rag between the flathead screwdriver and the cover as shown in the illustration.


CTH32AP044

2 Move the lever.


CTH32AP036

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 129 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ Caution while driving

- Keep the back door closed while driving.
  If the back door is left open, it may hit near-by objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
  In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the back door before driving.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the back door is fully closed. If the back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

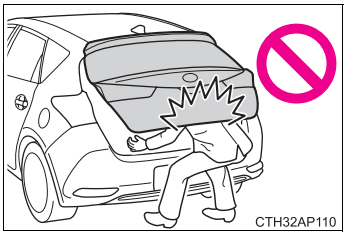
- Do not allow children to play in the luggage compartment.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the back door.
  Doing so may cause the back door to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing back door.

WARNING

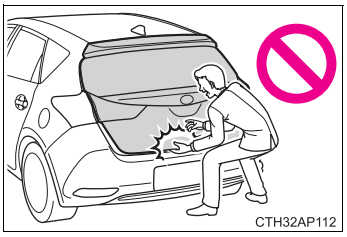
■Operating the back door

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the back door to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- The back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the back door on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the back door unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the back door is fully open and secure before using the luggage compartment.


CTH32AP110

- When closing the back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.
- When closing the back door, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the back door handle is used to fully close the back door, it may result in hands or arms being caught.


CTH32AP112

- Do not pull on the back door damper stay to close the back door, and do not hang on the back door damper stay.
  Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door damper stay to break, causing an accident.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, it may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Toyota part is recommended.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 131 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

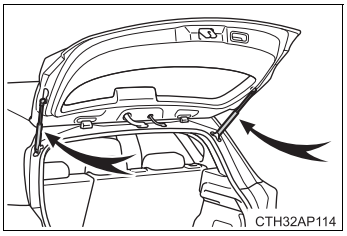
NOTICE

■Back door damper stays

The back door is equipped with damper stays that hold the back door in place.

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door damper stay, resulting in malfunction.

- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Toyota parts to the back door.
- Do not place your hand on the damper stay or apply lateral forces to it.


CTH32AP114

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 132 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Smart entry & start system*

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key on your person, for example in your pocket. The driver should always carry the electronic key.

- Locks and unlocks the doors (→P. 122)
- Locks and unlocks the back door (→P. 127)
- Starts the hybrid system (→P. 195)

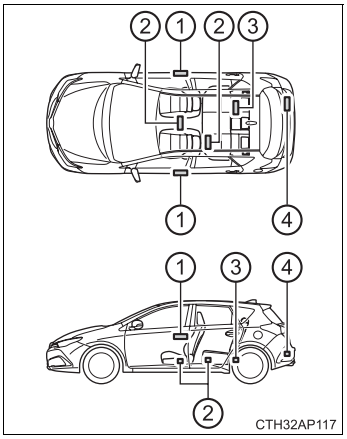
■Antenna location

① Antennas outside the cabin

② Antennas inside the cabin

③ Antenna inside the luggage compartment

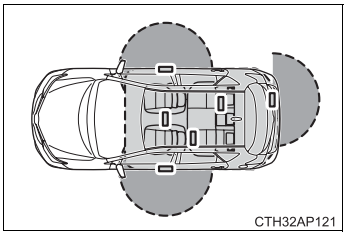
④ Antenna outside the luggage compartment



■Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)

When locking or unlocking the doors

The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside front door handle and the back door. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)



When starting the hybrid system or changing power switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 133 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Alarms and warning messages

A combination of exterior and interior buzzers as well as warning messages shown on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Take appropriate measures based on the displayed message. (→P. 472)

When only an alarm sounds, circumstances and correction procedures are as follows.

Alarm	Situation	Correction procedure
Exterior buzzer sounds once for 5 seconds	An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.
Interior buzzer sounds continuously	The power switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the power switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the power switch off and close the driver's door.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 134 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **When “Check entry & start system.” is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Battery-saving function**

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the vehicle battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not operated for a long time.

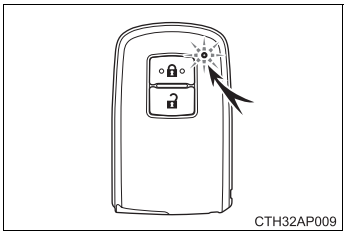
- In the following situations, the smart entry & start system may take some time to unlock the doors.
  - The electronic key has been left within approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
  - The smart entry & start system has not been used for 5 days or longer.
- If the smart entry & start system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked from any door except the driver’s door. In this case, hold the driver’s door handle, or use the wireless remote control or mechanical key to unlock the doors.

■ **Electronic key battery-saving function**

When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press twice while pressing and holding . Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.

While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart entry & start system cannot be used. To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.


CTH32AP009

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 135 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Conditions affecting operation

The smart entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and immobilizer system from operating properly.
(Ways of coping: →P. 510)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window
- When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 136 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Note for the entry function**

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
  - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
  - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the back door is opened.
  - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, luggage cover or floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the hybrid system is started or power switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.
- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the hybrid system if the electronic key is near the window.
- The doors may unlock or lock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
- If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
- Touching the door lock or unlock sensor while wearing gloves may prevent lock or unlock operation.
- When the lock operation is performed using the lock sensor, recognition signals will be shown up to two consecutive times. After this, no recognition signals will be given.
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
  - Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
  - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P. 134)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 137 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

- If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
- The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again.
- A sudden handle operation or a handle operation immediately after entering the effective range may prevent the doors from being unlocked. Touch the door unlock sensor and check that the doors are unlocked before pulling the door handle again.
- If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.

■ When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.
- The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance. (→P. 540)

■ To operate the system properly

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.
Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention function may not operate.)

■ If the smart entry & start system does not operate properly

- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P. 510)
- Starting the hybrid system: →P. 511

■ Customization

Settings (e. g. smart entry & start system) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 540)

■ If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting

- Locking and unlocking the doors:
  Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P. 122, 510)
- Starting the hybrid system and changing power switch modes: →P. 511
- Stopping the hybrid system: →P. 196

■ Certification for the smart entry & start system

Hereby, TRCZ s.r.o., declares that this BA7EQ is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. vakuuttaa täten että BA7EQ tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart TRCZ s.r.o. dat het toestel BA7EQ in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente TRCZ s.r.o. déclare que l'appareil BA7EQ est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar TRCZ s.r.o. att denna BA7EQ står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr BA7EQ overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt TRCZ s.r.o., dass sich das Gerät BA7EQ in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ TRCZ s.r.o. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ BA7EQ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente TRCZ s.r.o. dichiara che questo BA7EQ è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente TRCZ s.r.o. declara que el BA7EQ cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
TRCZ s.r.o. declara que este BA7EQ está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, TRCZ s.r.o., jiddikjara li dan BA7EQ jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab TRCZ s.r.o. seadme BA7EQ vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, TRCZ s.r.o. nyilatkozom, hogy a BA7EQ megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
TRCZ s.r.o. týmto vyhlasuje, že BA7EQ spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
TRCZ s.r.o. tímto prohlašuje, že tento BA7EQ je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 139 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

TRCZ s.r.o. izjavlja, da je ta BA7EQ v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo TRCZ s.r.o. deklaruoja, kad šis BA7EQ atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo TRCZ s.r.o. deklarē, ka BA7EQ atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym TRCZ s.r.o. oświadcza, że BA7EQ jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir TRCZ s.r.o. yfir því að BA7EQ er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved at utstyret BA7EQ er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, TRCZ s.r.o., декларира, че BA7EQ е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, TRCZ s.r.o., declară că aparatul BA7EQ este in conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da ovaj BA7EQ je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, TRCZ s.r.o., deklaroj qe ky BA7EQ eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da je BA7EQ u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., deklariše da je BA7EQ u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:

http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

Hereby, TRCZ s.r.o., declares that this B94UM is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. vakuuttaa täten että B94UM tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart TRCZ s.r.o. dat het toestel B94UM in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente TRCZ s.r.o. déclare que l'appareil B94UM est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar TRCZ s.r.o. att denna B94UM står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr B94UM overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt TRCZ s.r.o., dass sich das Gerät B94UM in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ TRCZ s.r.o. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ B94UM ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente TRCZ s.r.o. dichiara che questo B94UM è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente TRCZ s.r.o. declara que el B94UM cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
TRCZ s.r.o. declara que este B94UM está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, TRCZ s.r.o., jiddikjara li dan B94UM jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab TRCZ s.r.o. seadme B94UM vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, TRCZ s.r.o. nyilatkozom, hogy a B94UM megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
TRCZ s.r.o. týmto vyhlasuje, že B94UM spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
TRCZ s.r.o. tímto prohlašuje, že tento B94UM je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 141 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

TRCZ s.r.o. izjavlja, da je ta B94UM v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo TRCZ s.r.o. deklaruoja, kad šis B94UM atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo TRCZ s.r.o. deklarē, ka B94UM atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym TRCZ s.r.o. oświadcza, że B94UM jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir TRCZ s.r.o. yfir því að B94UM er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved at utstyret B94UM er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, TRCZ s.r.o., декларира, че B94UM е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, TRCZ s.r.o., declară că aparatul B94UM este in conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da ovaj B94UM je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, TRCZ s.r.o., deklaroj qe ky B94UM eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da je B94UM u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., deklariše da je B94UM u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:

http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 142 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

TOYOTA

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571, JAPAN TEL:+81-565-28-2121

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: LF Oscillator
Product Model: TMLF10-54
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements:	EN 60950-1
-EMC requirements	EN 301 489-01 & EN 301 489-03
-Effective uses of radio spectrum:	EN 300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: August 26, 2014

Signature: Hiroki Okada

Hiroki Okada

Hereby, Toyota Motor Corporation, declares that this TMLF10-54 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation vakuuttaa täten että TMLF10-54 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Toyota Motor Corporation dat het toestel TMLF10-54 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Toyota Motor Corporation déclare que l'appareil TMLF10-54 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Toyota Motor Corporation att denna TMLF10-54 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMLF10-54 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt Toyota Motor Corporation, dass sich das Gerät TMLF10-54 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Toyota Motor Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ TMLF10-54 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Toyota Motor Corporation dichiara che questo TMLF10-54 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Toyota Motor Corporation declara que el TMLF10-54 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Toyota Motor Corporation declara que este TMLF10-54 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, Toyota Motor Corporation, jiddikjara li dan TMLF10-54 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab Toyota Motor Corporation seadme TMLF10-54 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, Toyota Motor Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a TMLF10-54 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Toyota Motor Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že TMLF10-54 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMLF10-54 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation izjavlja, da je ta TMLF10-54 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Toyota Motor Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis TMLF10-54 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Toyota Motor Corporation deklarē, ka TMLF10-54 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Toyota Motor Corporation oświadcza, że TMLF10-54 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Toyota Motor Corporation yfir því að TMLF10-54 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret TMLF10-54 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, Toyota Motor Corporation, декларира, че TMLF10-54 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, Toyota Motor Corporation, declară că aparatul TMLF10-54 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da ovaj TMLF10-54 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklaroj qe ky TMLF10-54 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da je TMLF10-54 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklariše da je TMLF10-54 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 145 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P. 132)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details on disabling the entry function.

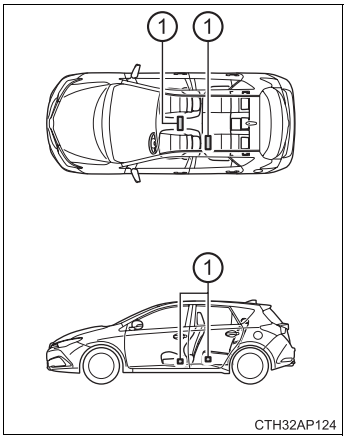
Push button start*

Starting and stopping the hybrid system can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key on your person, for example in your pocket. (→P. 195)
The driver should always carry the electronic key.

■ Antenna location

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles

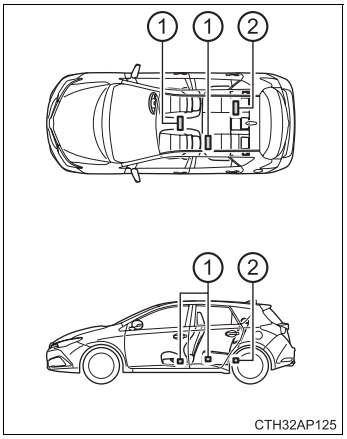
① Antennas inside the cabin



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles

① Antennas inside the cabin

② Antenna inside the luggage compartment



*: If equipped

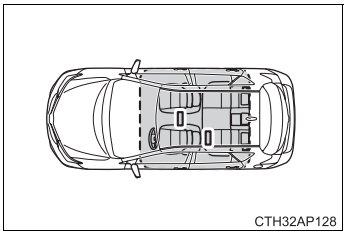
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 147 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)**

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles

When starting the hybrid system or changing power switch modes

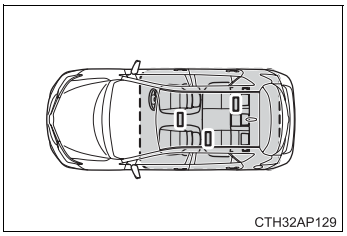
The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.


CTH32AP128

▶ Right-hand drive vehicles

When starting the hybrid system or changing power switch modes

The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.


CTH32AP129

■ **Alarms and warning messages**

→P. 472

■ **When “Check entry & start system.” is displayed on the multi-information display**

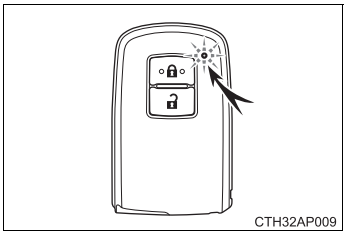
The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Electronic key battery-saving function**

When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press twice while pressing and holding . Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.

While the battery-saving mode is set, the push button start cannot be used. To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.


CTH32AP009

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

The push button start uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the push button start, wireless remote control and immobilizer system from operating properly: (Ways of coping: →P. 510)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
  - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
  - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
  - Metallic wallets or bags
  - Coins
  - Hand warmers made of metal
  - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
  - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
  - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
  - Digital audio players
  - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window
- When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices

■ **To operate the system properly**

Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system.

Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly.

■ **If the push button start does not operate properly**

Starting the hybrid system: →P. 195

■ **Customization**

It is possible to deactivate the push button start.
(Customizable features →P. 540)

■ **If the push button start has been deactivated in a customized setting**

- Starting the hybrid system and changing power switch modes: →P. 511
- Stopping the hybrid system: →P. 196

■ Certification for the push button start

TOYOTA

TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION

1, TOYOTA-CHO, TOYOTA, AICHI, 471-8571, JAPAN TEL:+81-565-28-2121

R&TTE Declaration of Conformity

We,

Manufacturer's Name: TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
Manufacturer's Address: 1, Toyota -cho, Toyota, Aichi, 471-8572, Japan

hereby declare under our sole responsibility that the product:

Product Name: LF Oscillator
Product Model: TMLF10-54
to which this declaration relates is in conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the R&TTE Directive (1999/5/EC). The product is compliant with the following standards and/or other normative documents:

-Health & safety requirements:	EN 60950-1
-EMC requirements	EN 301 489-01 & EN 301 489-03
-Effective uses of radio spectrum:	EN 300 330-2

Supplementary information:

* CE mark	CE
* Member states intended for use	EU and EFTA

Date: August 26, 2014

Signature: Hiroki Okada

Hiroki Okada

3 Operation of each component

Hereby, Toyota Motor Corporation, declares that this TMLF10-54 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation vakuuttaa täten että TMLF10-54 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart Toyota Motor Corporation dat het toestel TMLF10-54 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente Toyota Motor Corporation déclare que l'appareil TMLF10-54 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Toyota Motor Corporation att denna TMLF10-54 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr TMLF10-54 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt Toyota Motor Corporation, dass sich das Gerät TMLF10-54 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Toyota Motor Corporation ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ TMLF10-54 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente Toyota Motor Corporation dichiara che questo TMLF10-54 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente Toyota Motor Corporation declara que el TMLF10-54 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Toyota Motor Corporation declara que este TMLF10-54 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, Toyota Motor Corporation, jiddikjara li dan TMLF10-54 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 151 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Käesolevaga kinnitab Toyota Motor Corporation seadme TMLF10-54 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, Toyota Motor Corporation nyilatkozom, hogy a TMLF10-54 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
Toyota Motor Corporation týmto vyhlasuje, že TMLF10-54 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation tímto prohlašuje, že tento TMLF10-54 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Toyota Motor Corporation izjavlja, da je ta TMLF10-54 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo Toyota Motor Corporation deklaruoja, kad šis TMLF10-54 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo Toyota Motor Corporation deklarē, ka TMLF10-54 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym Toyota Motor Corporation oświadcza, że TMLF10-54 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir Toyota Motor Corporation yfir því að TMLF10-54 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Toyota Motor Corporation erklærer herved at utstyret TMLF10-54 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, Toyota Motor Corporation, декларира, че TMLF10-54 е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Prin prezenta, Toyota Motor Corporation, declară că aparatul TMLF10-54 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da ovaj TMLF10-54 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklaroj qe ky TMLF10-54 eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim Toyota Motor Corporation, izjavljuje da je TMLF10-54 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, Toyota Motor Corporation, deklariše da je TMLF10-54 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 152 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Hereby, TRCZ s.r.o., declares that this BA7EQ is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. vakuuttaa täten että BA7EQ tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart TRCZ s.r.o. dat het toestel BA7EQ in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente TRCZ s.r.o. déclare que l'appareil BA7EQ est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar TRCZ s.r.o. att denna BA7EQ står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr BA7EQ overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt TRCZ s.r.o., dass sich das Gerät BA7EQ in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ TRCZ s.r.o. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ BA7EQ ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente TRCZ s.r.o. dichiara che questo BA7EQ è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente TRCZ s.r.o. declara que el BA7EQ cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
TRCZ s.r.o. declara que este BA7EQ está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, TRCZ s.r.o., jiddikjara li dan BA7EQ jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab TRCZ s.r.o. seadme BA7EQ vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, TRCZ s.r.o. nyilatkozom, hogy a BA7EQ megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.
TRCZ s.r.o. týmto vyhlasuje, že BA7EQ spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
TRCZ s.r.o. tímto prohlašuje, že tento BA7EQ je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 153 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

TRCZ s.r.o. izjavlja, da je ta BA7EQ v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo TRCZ s.r.o. deklaruoja, kad šis BA7EQ atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo TRCZ s.r.o. deklarē, ka BA7EQ atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym TRCZ s.r.o. oświadcza, że BA7EQ jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir TRCZ s.r.o. yfir því að BA7EQ er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved at utstyret BA7EQ er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, TRCZ s.r.o., декларира, че BA7EQ е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, TRCZ s.r.o., declară că aparatul BA7EQ este in conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da ovaj BA7EQ je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, TRCZ s.r.o., deklaroj qe ky BA7EQ eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da je BA7EQ u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., deklariše da je BA7EQ u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:

http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 154 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Hereby, TRCZ s.r.o., declares that this B94UM is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. vakuuttaa täten että B94UM tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Hierbij verklaart TRCZ s.r.o. dat het toestel B94UM in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Par la présente TRCZ s.r.o. déclare que l'appareil B94UM est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar TRCZ s.r.o. att denna B94UM står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Undertegnede TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr B94UM overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hiermit erklärt TRCZ s.r.o., dass sich das Gerät B94UM in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ TRCZ s.r.o. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ B94UM ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Con la presente TRCZ s.r.o. dichiara che questo B94UM è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.
Por medio de la presente TRCZ s.r.o. declara que el B94UM cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
TRCZ s.r.o. declara que este B94UM está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Hawnhekk, TRCZ s.r.o., jiddikjara li dan B94UM jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Käesolevaga kinnitab TRCZ s.r.o. seadme B94UM vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Alulírott, TRCZ s.r.o. nyilatkozom, hogy a B94UM megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.
TRCZ s.r.o. týmto vyhlasuje, že B94UM spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
TRCZ s.r.o. tímto prohlašuje, že tento B94UM je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 155 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

TRCZ s.r.o. izjavlja, da je ta B94UM v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Šiuo TRCZ s.r.o. deklaruoja, kad šis B94UM atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Ar šo TRCZ s.r.o. deklarē, ka B94UM atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Niniejszym TRCZ s.r.o. oświadcza, że B94UM jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Hér með lýsir TRCZ s.r.o. yfir því að B94UM er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
TRCZ s.r.o. erklærer herved at utstyret B94UM er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
С настоящето, TRCZ s.r.o., декларира, че B94UM е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.
Prin prezenta, TRCZ s.r.o., declară că aparatul B94UM este in conformitate cu cerințele esențiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da ovaj B94UM je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Nepermjet kesaj, TRCZ s.r.o., deklaroj qe ky B94UM eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.
Ovim TRCZ s.r.o., izjavljuje da je B94UM u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).
Ovim, TRCZ s.r.o., deklariše da je B94UM u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

The DECLARATION of CONFORMITY (DoC) is available at the following address:

http://www.tokai-rika.co.jp/pc/

CE

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 156 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the push button start antennas. (→P. 146)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the push button start can be disabled. Ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the push button start.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for details on disabling the push button start.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 157 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Front seats

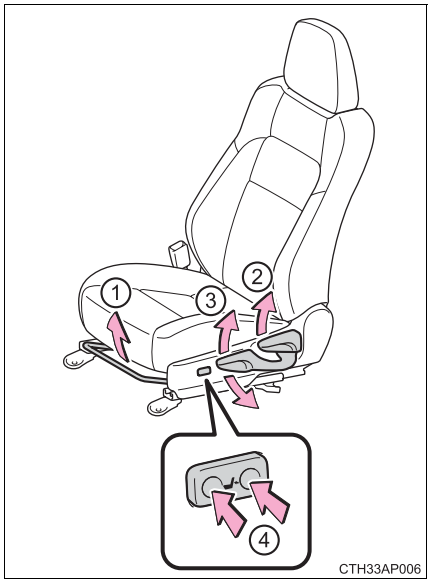
Adjustment procedure

① Seat position adjustment lever

② Seatback angle adjustment lever

③ Vertical height adjustment lever (if equipped)

④ Lumbar support adjustment switch (if equipped)



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 158 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

■When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.
- Make sure to leave enough space around the feet so they do not get stuck.

■Seat adjustment

- Be careful that the seat does not hit passengers or luggage.
- To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
  If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
  Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- After adjusting the seat, make sure that the seat is locked in position.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 159 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Rear seats

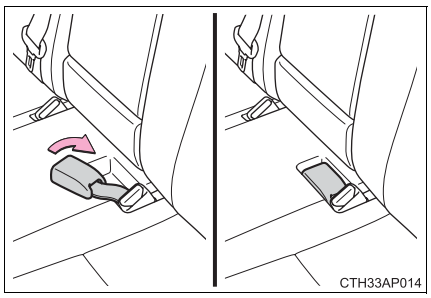
The seatbacks of the rear seats can be folded down.

Folding down the rear seatbacks

1 Move the front seats forward. (→P. 157)

2 Stow the rear armrest. (if equipped) (→P. 386)

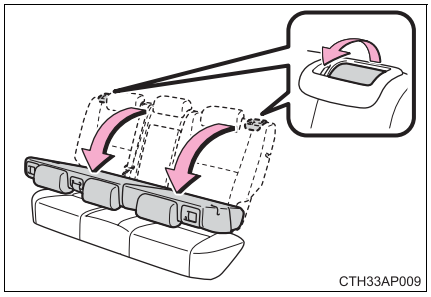
3 Stow the rear center seat belt buckle.



4 Lower the head restraints to the lowest position. (→P. 161)

5 Pull the seatback lock release lever and fold the seatback down.

Each seatback may be folded separately.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 160 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

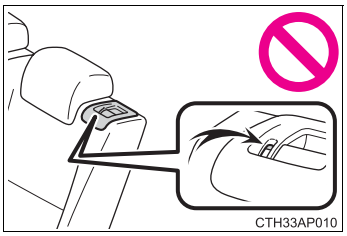
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When folding the rear seatbacks down

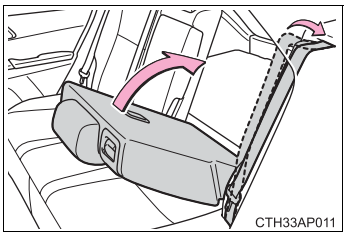
- Do not fold the seatbacks down while driving.
- Stop the vehicle on level ground, set the parking brake and set the shift position to P.
- Do not allow anyone to sit on a folded seatback or in the luggage compartment while driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the luggage compartment.
- Do not allow anyone to sit on the rear center seat if the rear right seat is folded down, as the seat belt buckle for the rear center seat belt is then concealed under the folded seat and cannot be used.
- Be careful not to get your hand caught when folding the rear seatbacks.
- Adjust the position of the front seats before folding down the rear seatbacks so that the front seats do not interfere with the rear seatbacks when folding down the rear seatbacks.

■ After returning the rear seatback to the upright position

- Make sure that the seatback is securely locked in position by lightly pushing it back and forth.
  If the seatback is not securely locked, the red marking will be visible on the seatback lock release lever. Make sure that the red marking is not visible.


CTH33AP010

- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback.
  If the seat belt gets caught between the seatback's securing hook and latch, it may damage the seat belt.


CTH33AP011

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 161 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

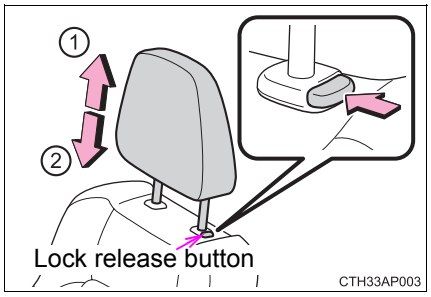
Vertical adjustment

① Up

Pull the head restraints up.

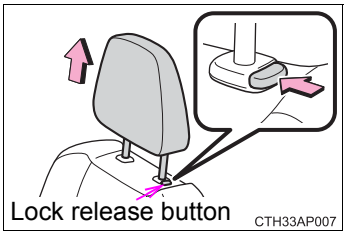
② Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button.



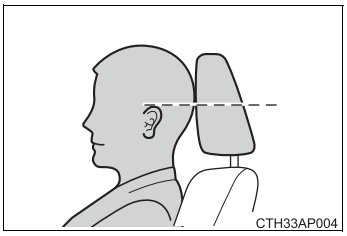
■ Removing the head restraints

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button.



■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints

Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.



■ Adjusting the rear seat head restraint

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

WARNING

■Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

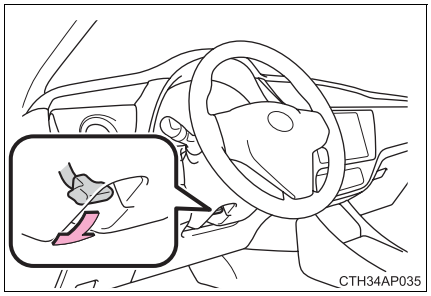
- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 163 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Steering wheel

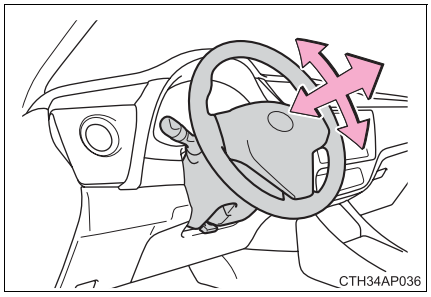
Adjustment procedure

1 Hold the steering wheel and push the lever down.



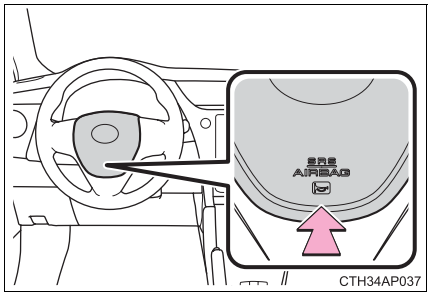
2 Adjust to the ideal position by moving the steering wheel horizontally and vertically.

After adjustment, pull the lever up to secure the steering wheel.



Horn

To sound the horn, press on or close to the mark.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 164 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

■ Caution while driving

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ After adjusting the steering wheel

Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked.
Otherwise, the steering wheel may move suddenly, possibly causing an accident, and resulting in death or serious injury. Also, the horn may not sound if the steering wheel is not securely locked.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 165 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

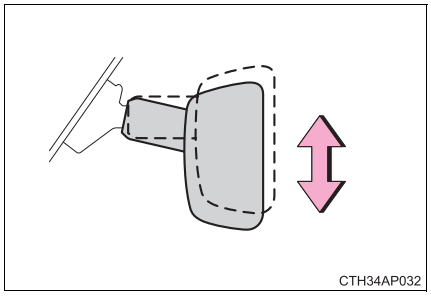
Inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror (auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror only)

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

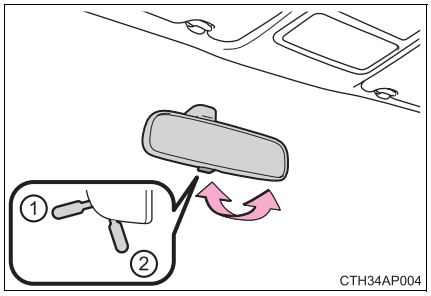


Anti-glare function

▶ Manual anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind can be reduced by operating the lever.

① Normal position
② Anti-glare position



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 166 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

▶ Auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

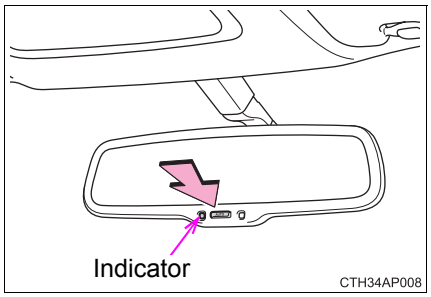
Changing automatic anti-glare function mode

On/off

When the automatic anti-glare function is in on mode, the indicator illuminates.

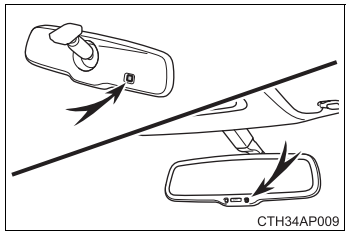
The function will be set to on mode each time the power switch is turned to ON mode.

Pressing the button turns the function to off mode. (The indicator also turns off.)



■ To prevent sensor error (vehicles with an auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror)

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



⚠ WARNING

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 167 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

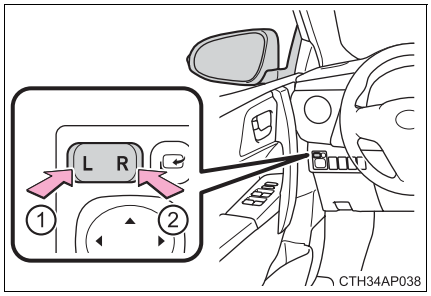
Outside rear view mirrors

Adjustment procedure

1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.

① Left

② Right



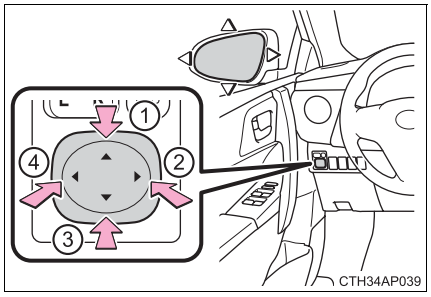
2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.

① Up

② Right

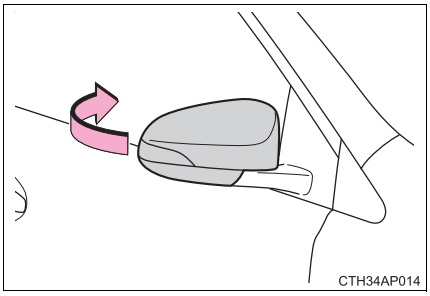
③ Down

④ Left



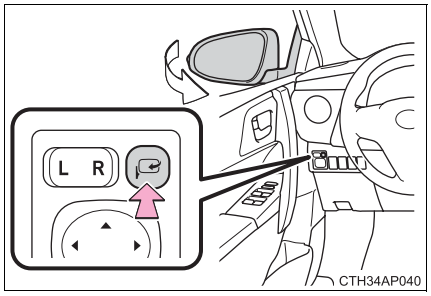
Manually folding the mirrors

▶ Manual type



Push the mirror back in the direction of the rear of the vehicle.

▶ Power type



Press the switch to fold the mirrors.

Press it again to extend them to the original position.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 168 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Automatically folding and extending the mirrors (if equipped)

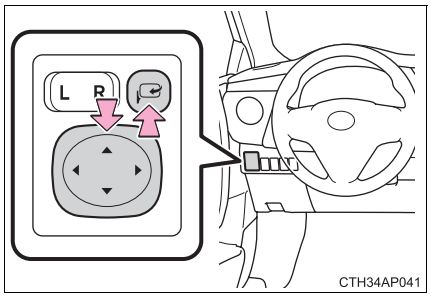
The automatic folding/extending mirror function allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

Automatic operation can be disabled by performing the following.

1 Turn the power switch off.

2 Press and hold the mirror fold switch and ▲ of the mirror angle adjustment switch at the same time for more than 2 seconds.

Performing the above procedure again will enable automatic operation.



■ Mirror angle can be adjusted when

The power switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode.

■ When disconnecting and reconnecting 12-volt battery terminals (vehicles with an automatic folding/extending mirror function)

The automatic folding/extending mirror function will return to on as default. To turn the function off, press the switch again to select off.

■ When the mirrors are fogged up

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P. 362)

■ Using the automatic folding/extending mirror function in cold weather (if equipped)

When the automatic folding/extending mirror function is used in cold weather, the outside rear view mirrors could freeze up and automatic folding and extension may not be possible. In this event, remove any ice and snow from the outside rear view mirror, then operate the mirror manually by using the mirror fold switch or moving the mirror by hand.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 169 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ Important points while driving

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ When a mirror is moving

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Power windows*

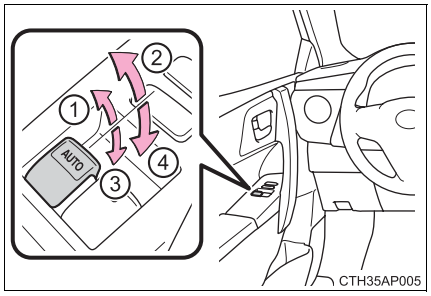
Opening and closing procedures

The power windows can be opened and closed using the switches. Operating the switch moves the windows as follows:

▶ One-touch opening/closing on driver's window only type

① Closing
② One-touch closing (driver's window only)*
③ Opening
④ One-touch opening (driver's window only)*

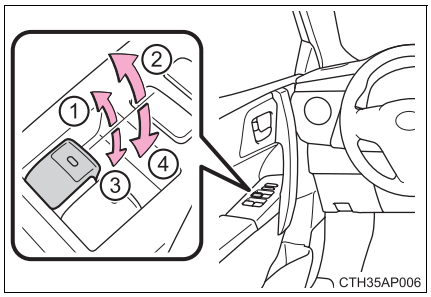
*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.



▶ One-touch opening/closing on all windows type

① Closing
② One-touch closing*
③ Opening
④ One-touch opening*

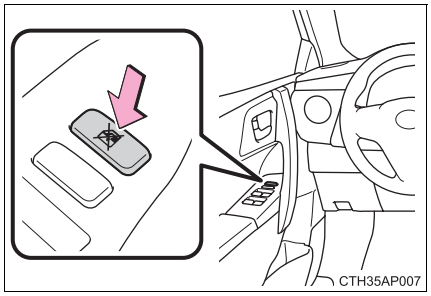
*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.



Window lock switch

Press the switch to lock the passenger window switches.

Use this switch to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.



*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 171 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **The power windows can be operated when**

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ **Operating the power windows after turning the hybrid system off**

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the power switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function (windows with one-touch closing function only)**

If an object becomes caught between the window and the window frame, window travel is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ **When the power window does not close normally (windows with one-touch closing function only)**

If the jam protection function is operating abnormally and a window cannot be closed, perform the following operations using the power window switch on the relevant door.

- After stopping the vehicle, the window can be closed by holding the power window switch in the one-touch closing position while the power switch is turned to ON mode.
- If the window still cannot be closed even by carrying out the operation as explained above, initialize the function by performing the following procedure.

1 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position. Continue holding the switch for a further 6 seconds after the window has closed.

2 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening position. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has opened completely.

3 Hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing position once again. Continue holding the switch for a further 2 seconds after the window has closed.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning.
If the window continues to close but then re-open slightly even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 172 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Closing the windows

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P. 170)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the power switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ Jam protection function (windows with one-touch closing function only)

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window fully closes.

Driving 4

4-1. Before driving
Driving the vehicle 174
Cargo and luggage 184
Trailer towing 185

4-2. Driving procedures
Power (ignition) switch.....195
EV drive mode 201
Hybrid transmission 203
Turn signal lever 211
Parking brake 212

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers
Headlight switch 213
Fog light switch 219
Windshield wipers and washer 221
Rear window wiper and washer 225

4-4. Refueling
Opening the fuel tank cap 227

4-5. Toyota Safety Sense
Toyota Safety Sense 230
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 234
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 242
Automatic High Beam 248
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 252

4-6. Using the driving support systems
Cruise control.....257
Toyota parking assist-sensor 262
Simple-IPA (Simple-Intelligent Parking Assist).....269
Driving assist systems 283

4-7. Driving tips
Hybrid vehicle driving tips 289
Winter driving tips 292

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 174 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Starting the hybrid system

→P. 195

Driving

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift position to D. (→P. 203)

2 Release the parking brake. (→P. 212)

3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

Stopping

1 With the shift position in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift position to P. (→P. 203)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 175 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Parking the vehicle

1 With the shift position in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 Set the parking brake. (→P. 212)

3 Shift the shift position to P. (→P. 205)

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

4 Press the power switch off to stop the hybrid system.

5 Lock the door, making sure that you have the key on your person.

Starting off on a steep uphill

1 Firmly set the parking brake and then shift the shift position to D.

2 Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

3 Release the parking brake.

■ When starting off on an uphill

The hill-start assist control will activate. (→P. 283)

■ For fuel-efficient driving

Keep in mind that hybrid vehicle are similar to conventional vehicles. And it is necessary to refrain from activities such as sudden acceleration. (→P. 289)

■ Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ Breaking in your new Toyota

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 300 km (200 miles):
  Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 800 km (500 miles) (vehicles with towing package):
  Do not tow a trailer.
- For the first 2000 km (1200 miles):
  - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
  - Avoid sudden acceleration.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 176 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Operating your vehicle in a foreign country**

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P. 528)

■ **Brake actuator**

The brake actuator uses brake fluid pressurized by the pump to power-assist the brakes. If the brake actuator fails during driving, the brake system warning light comes on and the buzzer sounds intermittently. In this case, the brakes may not work properly. If they do not work well, depress the brake pedal firmly. If the brake system warning light comes on, immediately stop your vehicle and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

In the following conditions, you may hear a sound in the engine compartment. This is not a malfunction.

- The driver's door is opened with the hybrid system turned off.
- The brake pedal is depressed with the hybrid system turned off.
- After the hybrid system is turned on.
- The brake pedal is depressed repeatedly with the hybrid system turned on.
- After the hybrid system is turned off.

The brake pedal may be hard to depress or the brake pedal stroke may be short before turning the hybrid system on. This is not a malfunction.

■ **When braking the vehicle**

When applying brakes, you may hear a sound coming from the motor generator.

However, this does not indicate any trouble.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 177 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When starting the vehicle

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the “READY” indicator is illuminated. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
  - When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
  - Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
  - Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- The driver should pay attention to pedestrians when the vehicle is powered only by the electric motor (traction motor). As there is no hybrid system sounds, the pedestrians may misjudge the vehicle’s movement.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 178 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When driving the vehicle

- During normal driving, do not turn off the hybrid system. Turning the hybrid system off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
  However, in the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P. 457
- Use engine braking (shift position B) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P. 203)
- Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 179 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

■ When changing the shift position

- Do not let the vehicle roll backwards while a forward driving position is selected, or roll forward while R is selected.
  Doing so result in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- Do not shift the shift position to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift position to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift position to a driving position while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Shifting the shift position to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the hybrid system. Engine braking is not available with the hybrid system disengaged.
- Be careful not to change the shift position with the accelerator pedal depressed.
  Changing the shift position to any position other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

  After changing the shift position, make sure to check the current shift position using the shift position indicator. (→P. 203)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 180 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear indicators)**

Have the brake pads checked and replaced by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.
Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

■ **When the vehicle is stopped**

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily.
  If a shift position other than P or N is selected, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while stopped with the “READY” indicator is illuminated. Apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine.
  Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 181 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun.
  Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift position to P, stop the hybrid system and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the "READY" indicator is illuminated.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the "READY" indicator is illuminated or immediately after turning the hybrid system off.
  Doing so may cause burns.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 182 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the hybrid system off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to hybrid system overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
- If the brake actuator does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking.
  In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- The brake system consists of 2 or more individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other(s) will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain the hybrid system output.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ When parking the vehicle

Always shift the shift position in P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time.
  Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 183 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P. 481, 493)

When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of engine oil, hybrid transmission fluid, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

If the P position control system is damaged by flooding, it may not be possible to shift the shift position to P, or from P to other positions. When the shift position cannot be changed from P to any other position, the front wheels will lock, and you will be unable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground, as the front wheels may be locked. In this case, transport the vehicle with both front wheels or all four wheels lifted.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 184 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

⚠ WARNING

■ Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Do not stack cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the luggage cover
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment.
- When you fold down the rear seats, long items should not be placed directly behind the front seats.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened.

■ Load and distribution

- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly.
  Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 185 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

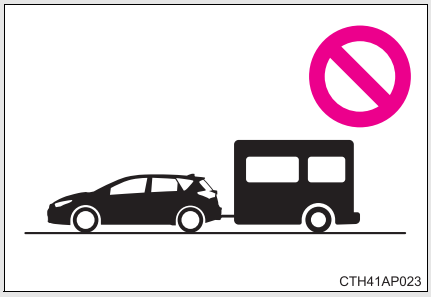
Trailer towing

For this model, only vehicles with a towing package can tow another vehicle. Before towing, check the gross combination vehicle mass and gross vehicle mass described on the information tag (manufacturer's label) to see whether or not your vehicle can tow another vehicle. (→P. 188)

If the gross combination vehicle mass is greater than the gross vehicle mass, your vehicle is equipped with a towing package and can tow another vehicle. On the other hand, if the gross combination vehicle mass is the same as the gross vehicle mass, your vehicle is not equipped with a towing package and cannot tow another vehicle.

▶ Vehicles without a towing package

Toyota does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Toyota also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 186 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

▶ Vehicles with a towing package

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer will have an adverse effect on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. Your safety and satisfaction depend on the proper use of correct equipment and cautious driving habits. For your safety and the safety of others, do not overload the vehicle or trailer.

To tow a trailer safely, use extreme care and drive the vehicle in accordance with the trailer's characteristics and operating conditions.

Toyota warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes.

Ask your local authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details before towing, as there are additional legal requirements in some countries.

◆ Weight limits

Check the allowable towing capacity, GVM (Gross Vehicle Mass), MPAC (Maximum Permissible Axle Capacity), and permissible drawbar load before towing. (→P. 526)

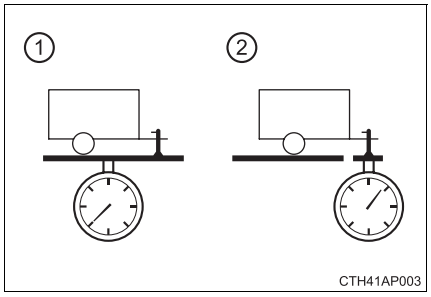
◆ Towing hitch/bracket

Toyota recommends the use of the Toyota hitch/bracket for your vehicle. Other products of a suitable nature and comparable quality may also be used.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 187 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Important points regarding trailer loads

■ Total trailer weight and permissible drawbar load



① Total trailer weight

Weight of the trailer itself plus the trailer load should be within the maximum towing capacity. Exceeding this weight is dangerous. (→P. 526)

When towing a trailer, use a friction coupler or friction stabilizer (sway control device).

② Permissible drawbar load

Allocate the trailer load so that the drawbar load is greater than 25 kg (55.1 lb.) or 4% of the towing capacity. Do not let the drawbar load exceed the indicated weight. (→P. 526)

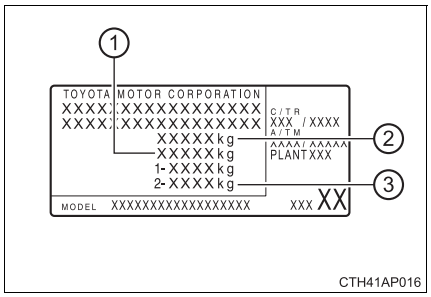
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 188 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Information tag (manufacturer's label)

① Gross combination vehicle mass

② Gross vehicle mass

③ Maximum permissible rear axle capacity



■ Gross combination vehicle mass

The sum of the total vehicle weight and the weight of the trailer being towed can be used to judge whether or not the vehicle can be used to tow another vehicle.

If the gross combination vehicle mass is greater than the gross vehicle mass, your vehicle is equipped with a towing package and can tow another vehicle. On the other hand, if the gross combination vehicle mass is the same as the gross vehicle mass, your vehicle is not equipped with a towing package and cannot tow another vehicle.

■ Gross vehicle mass

The combined weight of the driver, passengers, luggage, towing hitch, total curb mass and drawbar load should not exceed the gross vehicle mass by more than 100 kg (220.5 lb.). Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

■ Maximum permissible rear axle capacity

The weight borne by the rear axle should not exceed the maximum permissible rear axle capacity by 15% or more. Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

The values for towing capacity were derived from testing conducted at sea level. Take note that engine output and towing capacity will be reduced at high altitudes.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 189 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

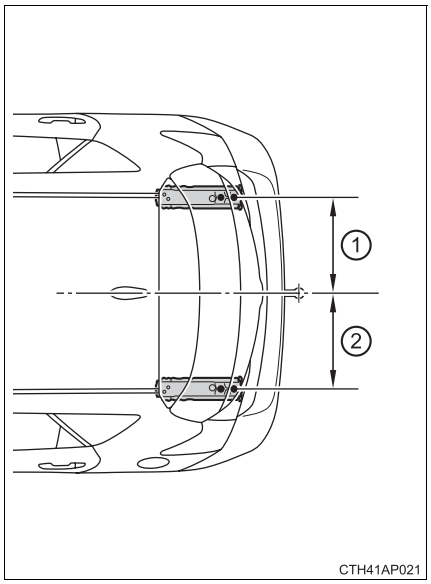
■ **When the gross vehicle mass limit or maximum permissible axle capacity is exceeded**

Do not exceed the established speed limit for towing a trailer in built-up areas or 100 km/h (62 mph), whichever is the lower.

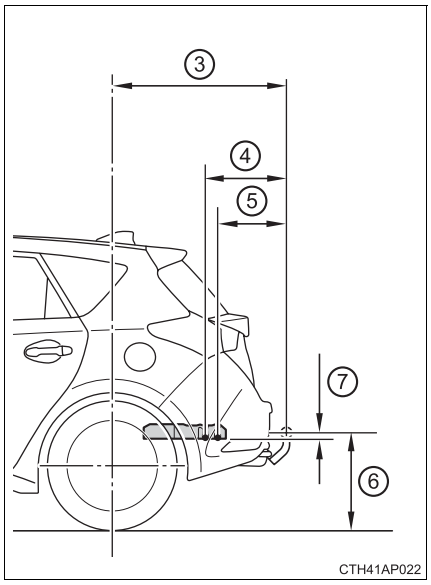
Failing to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

Installation positions for the towing hitch/bracket and hitch ball

① 461 mm (18.1 in.)
② 461 mm (18.1 in.)



③ 838 mm (33.0 in.)
④ 374 mm (14.7 in.)
⑤ 308 mm (12.1 in.)
⑥ 371 mm (14.6 in.)
⑦ 35 mm (1.4 in.)



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 191 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Tire information**

- Increase the tire inflation pressure to 20.0 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 3 psi) greater than the recommended value when towing. (→P. 534)
- Increase the air pressure of the trailer tires in accordance with the total trailer weight and according to the values recommended by the manufacturer of your trailer.

■ **Trailer lights**

Please consult at any authorized dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional when installing trailer lights, as incorrect installation may cause damage to the vehicle's lights. Please take care to comply with your state's laws when installing trailer lights.

■ **Break-in schedule**

Toyota recommends that vehicles fitted with new power train components should not be used for towing trailers for the first 800 km (500 miles).

■ **Safety checks before towing**

- Check that the maximum load limit for the towing hitch/bracket and hitch ball is not exceeded. Bear in mind that the coupling weight of the trailer will add to the load exerted on the vehicle. Also make sure that the total load exerted on the vehicle is within the range of the weight limits. (→P. 187)
- Ensure that the trailer load is secure.
- Supplementary outside rear view mirrors should be added to the vehicle if the traffic behind cannot be clearly seen with standard mirrors. Adjust the extending arms of these mirrors on both sides of the vehicle so that they always provide maximum visibility of the road behind.

■ **Maintenance**

- Maintenance must be performed more frequently when using the vehicle for towing due to the greater weight burden placed on the vehicle compared to normal driving.
- Retighten all bolts securing the hitching ball and bracket after towing for approximately 1000 km (600 miles).

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 192 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

When the rear bumper strengthening material is aluminum

Ensure the steel bracket part does not come directly in contact with that area.
When steel and aluminum come into contact, there is a reaction similar to corrosion, which will weaken the section concerned and may result in damage. Apply a rust inhibitor to parts that will come in contact when attaching a steel bracket.

Guidance

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. In order to avoid accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

Checking connections between trailer and lights

Stop the vehicle and check the operation of the connection between the trailer and lights after driving for a brief period as well as before starting off.

Practicing driving with a coupled trailer

- Get the feel for turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer coupled by practicing in an area with no or light traffic.
- When reversing with a coupled trailer, hold the section of the steering wheel nearest to you and rotate clockwise to turn the trailer left or counterclockwise to turn it right. Always rotate a little at a time to prevent steering error. Have someone guide you when reversing to lessen the risk of an accident.

Increasing vehicle-to-vehicle distance

At a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph), the distance to the vehicle running ahead of you should be equivalent to or greater than the combined length of your vehicle and trailer. Avoid sudden braking that may cause skidding. Otherwise, the vehicle may spin out of control. This is especially true when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 193 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Sudden acceleration/steering input/cornering**

Executing sharp turns when towing may result in the trailer colliding with your vehicle. Decelerate well in advance when approaching turns and take them slowly and carefully to avoid sudden braking.

■ **Important points regarding turning**

The wheels of the trailer will travel closer to the inside of the curve than the wheels of the vehicle. To make allowance for this, take the turns wider than you would normally do.

■ **Important points regarding stability**

Vehicle movement resulting from uneven road surfaces and strong crosswinds will affect handling. The vehicle may also be rocked by passing buses or large trucks. Frequently check behind when moving alongside such vehicles. As soon as such vehicle movement occurs, immediately start to decelerate smoothly by slowly applying the brakes. Always steer the vehicle straight ahead while braking.

■ **Passing other vehicles**

Consider the total combined length of your vehicle and trailer and ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is sufficient before executing lane changes.

■ **Transmission information**

To maintain engine braking efficiency and charging system performance when using engine braking, do not use the transmission in D. Shift the shift position to B.

■ **If the engine overheats**

Towing a loaded trailer up a long, steep incline in temperatures exceeding 30°C (85°F) may result in the engine overheating. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates that the engine is overheating, turn the air conditioning off immediately, leave the road and stop the vehicle in a safe place. (→P. 518)

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Always place wheel chocks under the wheels of both the vehicle and trailer. Firmly set the parking brake and shift the shift position to P.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 194 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

Follow all the instructions described in this section. Failure to do so could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Trailer towing precautions**

When towing, make sure that none of the weight limits are exceeded. (→P. 187)

■ **Vehicle speed in towing**

Observe the legal maximum speeds for trailer towing.

■ **Before descending hills or long declines**

Reduce speed then use the engine braking.

■ **Operation of the brake pedal**

Do not hold the brake pedal depressed often or for long periods of time. Doing so may result in the brake overheating or reduce braking effects.

■ **To avoid accident or injury**

- Vehicles with a cruise control: Do not use cruise control when you are towing.
- Vehicles with a compact spare tire: Do not tow a trailer when the compact spare tire is installed on your vehicle.
- Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit: Do not tow a trailer when the tire installed is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Do not directly splice trailer lights**

Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 195 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Power (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the hybrid system or changes power switch modes.

Starting the hybrid system

1 Check that the parking brake is set.

2 Check that the shift position is in P.

3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

 and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

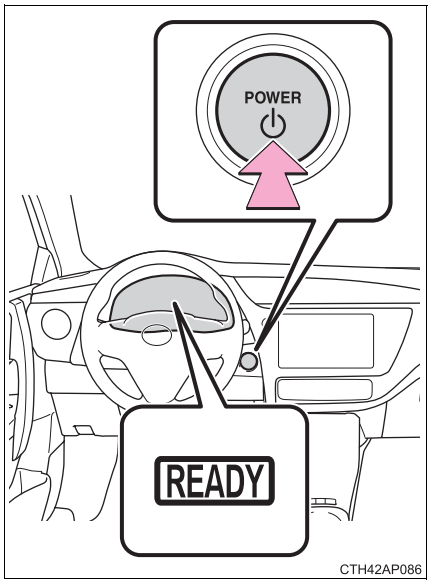
If it is not displayed, the hybrid system cannot be started.

4 Press the power switch.

If the “READY” indicator turns on, the hybrid system will operate normally.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the “READY” indicator is illuminated.

The hybrid system can be started from any power switch mode.



5 Check that the “READY” indicator is illuminated.

The vehicle will not move when the “READY” indicator is off.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 196 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

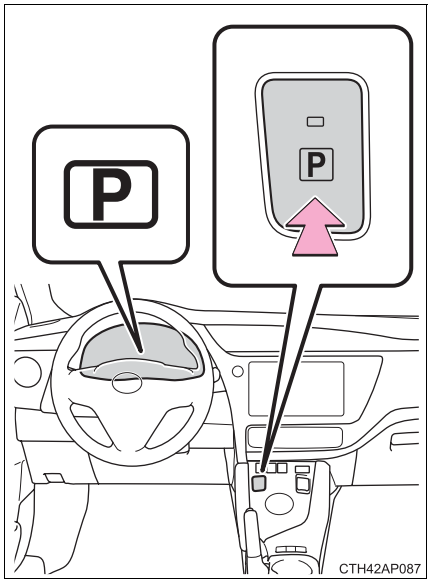
Stopping the hybrid system

1 Stop the vehicle completely.

2 Set the parking brake. (→P. 212)

3 Press the “P” position switch. (→P. 205)

Check that the shift position indicator on the instrument cluster shows P. (→P. 96)



4 Press the power switch.

5 Release the brake pedal and check that “Power ON.” on the multi-information display is off.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 197 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Changing power switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the power switch with brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)

Off

The emergency flashers can be used.

ACCESSORY mode

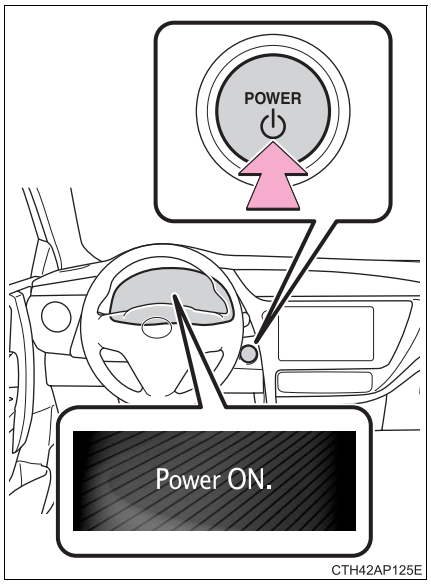
Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

“Power ON.” will be displayed on the multi-information display.

ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

“Power ON.” will be displayed on the multi-information display.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 198 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Auto power off function**

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes or ON mode (the hybrid system is not operating) for more than an hour with the shift position in P, the power switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent 12-volt battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the power switch in ACCESSORY or ON mode for long periods of time when the hybrid system is not operating.

■ **Sounds and vibrations specific to a hybrid vehicle**

→P. 74

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P. 120

■ **When the ambient temperature is low, such as during winter driving conditions**

When starting the hybrid system, the flashing time of the “READY” indicator may be long. Leave the vehicle as it is until the “READY” indicator is steady on, as steady means the vehicle is able to move.

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P. 135, 148

■ **Notes for the entry function**

→P. 136

■ **If the hybrid system does not start**

The immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P. 82)
Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **When “Check entry & start system.” is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **If the “READY” indicator does not come on**

In the event that the “READY” indicator does not come on even after performing the proper procedures for starting the vehicle, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **If the electronic key battery is depleted**

→P. 433

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 199 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Operation of the power switch**

- When operating the power switch, one short, firm press is enough. If the switch is pressed improperly, the hybrid system may not start or the power switch mode may not change. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.
- If attempting to restart the hybrid system immediately after turning the power switch off, the hybrid system may not start in some cases. After turning the power switch off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the hybrid system.

■ **Automatic P position selection function**

- When the shift position is other than P, pressing the power switch with the vehicle stopped completely will cause the shift position to change to P automatically, and then the power switch will turn off.
- When turning the power switch off from a position other than P, firmly depress the brake pedal and confirm that the shift position* has changed to P before slowly releasing the brake pedal.

*: Even after the instrument panel display has been turned off, the shift position indicator will continue to be displayed for several seconds.

■ **When the P position control system malfunctions**

The power switch will not be able to be turned off. In such a case, the switch can be turned off by applying the parking brake.
When the system malfunctions, immediately have your vehicle serviced by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **If the smart entry & start system or push button start has been deactivated in a customized setting**

→P. 510

WARNING

When starting the hybrid system

Always start the hybrid system while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the hybrid system under any circumstances.
Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Stopping the hybrid system in an emergency

If you want to stop the hybrid system in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the power switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P. 457)

However, do not touch the power switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the hybrid system off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, however, power assist to the steering will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer smoothly, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

NOTICE

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

- Do not leave the power switch in ACCESSORY or ON mode for long periods if the hybrid system is not operating.
- If the hybrid system is off, but the indicator on the power switch is illuminated, this indicates that the power switch is still turned on. When exiting the vehicle, always check that the power switch is off.

When starting the hybrid system

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal unnecessarily.
- If the hybrid system becomes difficult to start, have your vehicle checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the power switch

If the power switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 201 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

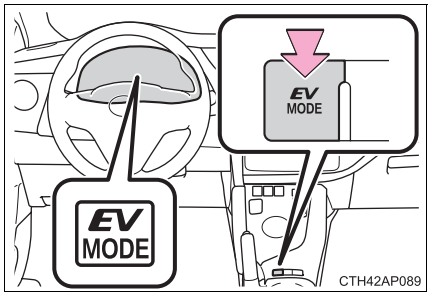
EV drive mode

In EV drive mode, electric power is supplied by the hybrid battery (traction battery), and only the electric motor (traction motor) is used to drive the vehicle.

This mode allows you to drive in residential areas early in the morning and late at night, or in indoor parking lots etc. without concern for noises and gas emissions.

Turns EV drive mode on/off

When EV drive mode is turned on, the EV drive mode indicator will come on. Pressing the switch when in EV drive mode will return the vehicle to normal driving (using the gasoline engine and electric motor [traction motor]).



■ Situations in which EV drive mode cannot be turned on

It may not be possible to turn EV drive mode on in the following situations. If it cannot be turned on, a buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display.

- The temperature of the hybrid system is high.
  The vehicle has been left in the sun, driven on a hill, driven at high speeds, etc.
- The temperature of the hybrid system is low.
  The vehicle has been left in temperatures lower than about 0°C (32°F) for a long period of time etc.
- The gasoline engine is warming up.
- The hybrid battery (traction battery) is low.
  The remaining battery level indicated in the “Energy monitor” display is low. (→P. 113)
- Vehicle speed is high.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed firmly or the vehicle is on a hill etc.
- The windshield defogger is in use.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 202 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Switching to EV drive mode when the gasoline engine is cold

If the hybrid system is started while the gasoline engine is cold, the gasoline engine will start automatically in order to warm up. In this case, you will become unable to switch to EV drive mode.
After the hybrid system has started and the “READY” indicator has illuminated, press the EV drive mode switch before the gasoline engine starts to switch to EV drive mode.

■ Automatic cancelation of EV drive mode

When driving in EV drive mode, the gasoline engine may automatically restart in the following situations. When EV drive mode is canceled, a buzzer will sound, the EV drive mode indicator will flash and then turn off, and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

- The hybrid battery (traction battery) becomes low.
- Vehicle speed is high.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed firmly or the vehicle is on a hill etc.

■ Possible driving distance when driving in EV drive mode

EV drive mode’s possible driving distance ranges from a few hundred meters to approximately 2 km (1.3 miles). However, depending on vehicle conditions, there are situations when EV drive mode cannot be used.
(The distance that is possible depends on the hybrid battery [traction battery] level and driving conditions.)

■ Changing a driving mode when in EV drive mode

EV drive mode can be used in conjunction with Eco drive mode and power mode.
However, EV drive mode may be automatically canceled when used in conjunction with power mode.

■ Fuel economy

The hybrid system is designed to achieve the best possible fuel economy during normal driving (using the gasoline engine and electric motor [traction motor]). Driving in EV drive mode more than necessary may lower fuel economy.

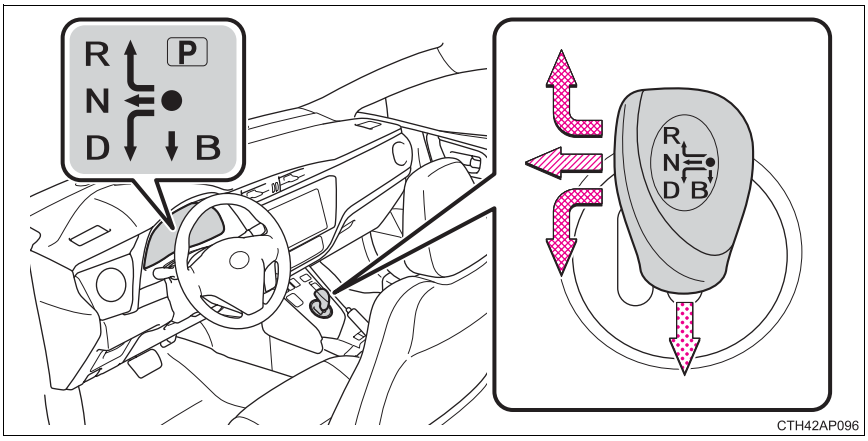
⚠ WARNING

■ Caution while driving

When driving in EV drive mode, pay special attention to the area around the vehicle. Because there is no engine noise, pedestrians, people riding bicycles or other people and vehicles in the area may not be aware of the vehicle starting off or approaching them, so take extra care while driving.

Hybrid transmission

Shifting the shift lever



Operate the shift lever gently and ensure correct shifting operation.

Release the shift lever after each shifting operation to allow it return to the ● position.

When shifting to the D or R positions, move the shift lever along the shift gate.

To shift to the N position, slide the shift lever to the left and hold it. The shift position will change to N.

To shift to the B position, pull the shift lever to the rear along the shift gate. Shifting to B is only possible when the shift position D is selected.

When shifting from P to N, D or R, from D to R, or from R to D, ensure that the brake pedal is being depressed and that the vehicle is stationary.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 204 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

The position of the frame on the shift position indicator changes in accordance with the current shift position.

When selecting a shift position, make sure that the shift position has been changed to the desired position by checking the shift position indicator provided on the instrument panel.

When a shift position other than D or B is selected, the arrow toward B disappears from the shift position indicator.

Shift position purpose

Shift position	Function
P	Parking the vehicle or starting the hybrid system
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving*
B	Applying moderate engine braking when driving down hills or on steep slopes

*: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noises, set the shift position in D for normal driving.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 205 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

P position switch

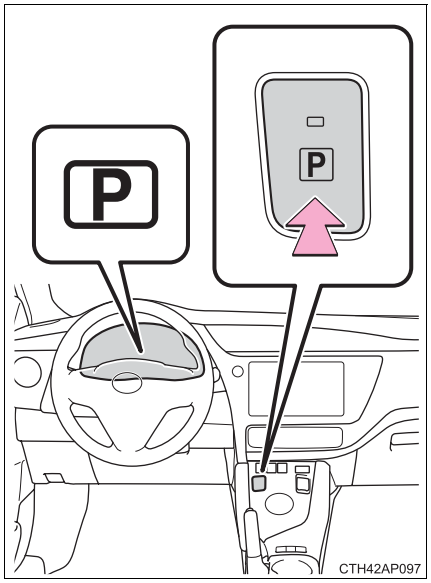
■ When shifting the shift position to P

The shift position can be changed to P through the use of the P position switch.

Fully stop the vehicle and keep depressing the brake pedal, and then press the P position switch.

When the shift position is changed to P, the switch indicator comes on.

Check that the P position indicator is illuminated on the shift position indicator.



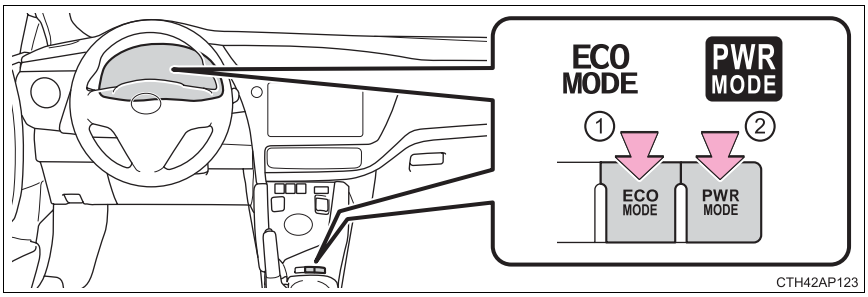
■ Shifting the shift position from P to other positions

- While depressing the brake pedal firmly, operate the shift lever. If the shift lever is operated without depressing the brake pedal, a buzzer will sound and the shifting operation will be disabled.
- When selecting the shift position, make sure to use the shift position indicator for checking that the desired shift position has been attained. (→P. 96)
- The shift position cannot be changed from P to B directly.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 206 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Selecting a driving mode

The following modes can be selected to suit driving conditions.



① Eco drive mode

Use Eco drive mode to help achieve low fuel consumption during trips that involve frequent accelerating and braking. The operation of the air conditioning system will be minimized.

Press the “ECO MODE” switch once more to cancel the Eco drive mode.

Eco drive mode will not be canceled until the “ECO MODE” switch is pressed, even if the power switch is turned off.

Press the “PWR MODE” switch to change the driving mode to power mode.

② Power mode

Use when high levels of response and feeling are desirable, such as when driving in mountainous regions or when overtaking.

Press the “PWR MODE” switch once more to cancel the power mode.

Turning the power switch off will cancel power mode.

Press the “ECO MODE” switch to change the driving mode to Eco drive mode.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 207 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Using engine braking**

To use engine braking, select the B position.

- During high speed driving, you may feel that deceleration by engine braking is less than that of a conventional vehicle.
- Do not continue normal driving with the transmission in B for a long time. This may cause decreased fuel economy. To prevent this, use D for normal driving.

■ **Reverse warning buzzer**

When shifting into R, a buzzer will sound to inform the driver that the shift position is in R.

■ **When the accelerator pedal is depressed while the shift position is in N**

A buzzer will sound to inform the driver that the shift position is in N.

■ **Eco drive mode**

When the accelerator pedal is depressed in Eco drive mode, it may take more time to accelerate than usual. This is normal operation.

■ **For the shift positions**

- When the power switch is off, the shift position cannot be changed.
- When the power switch is in ON mode (the hybrid system is not operating), the shift position can only be changed to N. The shift position will be changed to N even if the shift position is shifted to D or R and held in that position.
- When the “READY” indicator is on, the shift position can be changed from P to D, N or R.
- When the “READY” indicator is flashing, the shift position cannot be changed from P to other position even if the shift lever is operated. Wait until the “READY” indicator changes from a flashing to a solid light, and then operate the shift lever again.
- The shift position can only be changed to B directly from D.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 208 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Alarms**

If an attempt is made to change the shift position by moving the shift lever or by pressing the P position switch in any of the following situations, a buzzer will sound and the shifting operation will be disabled or the shift position will automatically change to N. When this happens, select an appropriate shift position.

● Situations where the shifting operation will be disabled:

- When an attempt is made to change the shift position from P to another position by moving the shift lever without depressing the brake pedal.
- When an attempt is made to change the shift position from P or N to B by moving the shift lever.

● Situations where the shift position will automatically change to N:

- When the P position switch is pressed while the vehicle is running.*1
- When an attempt is made to select the R position by moving the shift lever when the vehicle is moving forward.*2
- When an attempt is made to select the D position by moving the shift lever when the vehicle is moving in reverse.*3
- When an attempt is made to change the shift position from R to B by moving the shift lever.

*1: Shift position may be changed to P when driving at extremely low speeds.

*2: Shift position may be changed to R when driving at low speeds.

*3: Shift position may be changed to D when driving at low speeds.

■ **When driving with cruise control activated (if equipped)**

Even if switching the driving mode to power mode with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because cruise control will not be canceled. (→P. 257)

■ **Customization**

Settings (e. g. Reverse warning buzzer) can be changed.
(Customizable feature →P. 540)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 209 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

When driving on slippery road surfaces

Do not accelerate or shift the shift position suddenly.
Sudden changes in engine braking may cause the vehicle to spin or skid, resulting in an accident.

For the shift lever

Do not remove the shift lever knob or use anything but a genuine Toyota shift lever knob. Also, do not hang anything on the shift lever.
Doing so could prevent the shift lever from returning to position, causing unexpected accidents to occur when the vehicle is in motion.

P position switch

Do not press the P position switch while the vehicle is moving.
If the P position switch is pressed when driving at very low speeds (for example, directly before stopping the vehicle), the vehicle may stop suddenly when the shift position switches to P, which could lead to an accident.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 210 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

Situations where P position control system malfunctions are possible

If any of the following situations occurs, P position control system malfunctions are possible.
Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place on level ground, apply the parking brake, and then contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- When a warning message indicating malfunction appears on the multi-information display. (→P. 472)
- When the shift position indicator remains off.

Hybrid battery (traction battery) charge

If shift position N is selected, the hybrid battery (traction battery) will not be charged. To help prevent the battery from discharging, avoid leaving the N position selected for an extended period of time.

If the vehicle cannot be shifted out of P

There is a possibility that the 12-volt battery is discharged. Check the 12-volt battery in this situation.

Notes regarding shift lever and P position switch operation

Avoid repeatedly operating the shift lever and P position switch in quick succession.
The system protection function may activate and it will not be temporarily possible to shift the shift position other than P. If this happens, please wait for a while before attempting to change the shift position again.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 211 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Turn signal lever

Operating instructions

① Right turn

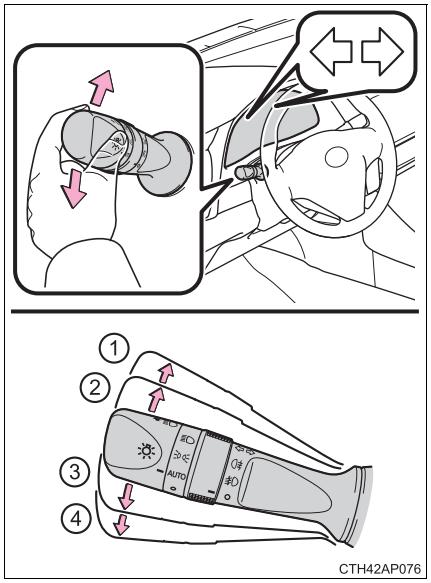
② Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

③ Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

④ Left turn



■ Turn signals can be operated when

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ If the indicator flashes faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ Customization

The number of times the turn signals flash during a lane change can be changed. (Customizable feature →P. 540)

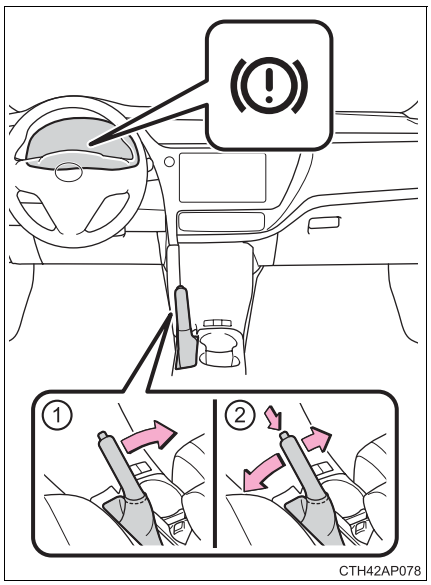
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 212 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Parking brake

Operating instructions

① To set the parking brake, fully pull the parking brake lever while depressing the brake pedal.

② To release the parking brake, slightly raise the lever and lower it completely while pressing the button.



■ Parking brake engaged warning buzzer

If the vehicle is driven at a speed of approximately 5 km/h (3 mph) or more with the parking brake engaged, a buzzer will sound.
“Release parking brake.” will be displayed on the multi-information display.

■ Usage in winter time

→P. 292

⚠ NOTICE

■ Before driving

Fully release the parking brake.
Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 213 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Operating instructions

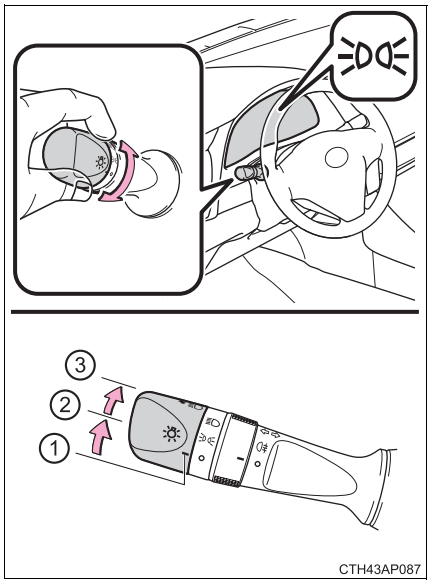
Turning the end of the lever turns on the lights as follows:

▶ Type A

① The daytime running lights turn on. (→P. 217)

② The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

③ The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 214 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

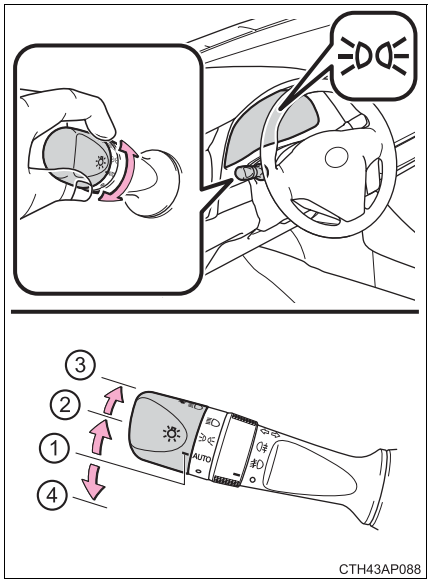
▶ Type B

① **AUTO** The headlights, daytime running lights (→P. 217) and all the lights listed below turn on and off automatically.
(When the power switch is in ON mode)

② The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

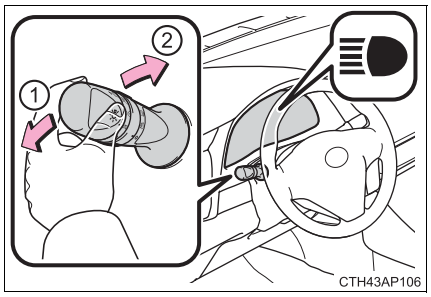
③ The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.

④ The daytime running lights turn on.
(→P. 217)



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 215 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Turning on the high beam headlights



① With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

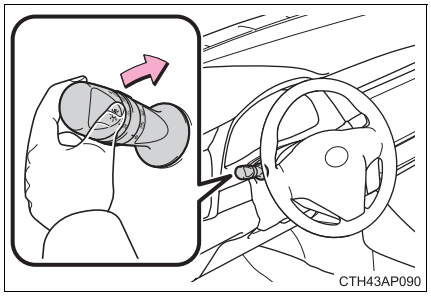
Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

② Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

Follow me home system

This system allows the headlights to be turned on for 30 seconds when the power switch is off.



Pull the lever toward you and release it with the light switch in AUTO (if equipped) or O after turning the power switch off.

The lights are turned off in the following situations.

- The power switch is turned to ON mode.
- The light switch is turned on.
- The light switch is pulled toward you and then released.

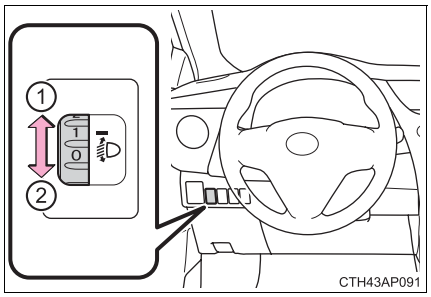
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 216 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Manual headlight leveling dial (vehicles with halogen headlights)

The level of the headlights can be adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle.

① Raises the level of the headlights

② Lowers the level of the headlights



■ Guide to dial settings

Occupancy and luggage load conditions		Dial position
Occupants	Luggage load	
Driver	None	0
Driver and front passenger	None	0
All seats occupied	None	1.5
All seats occupied	Full luggage loading	2.5
Driver	Full luggage loading	3.5

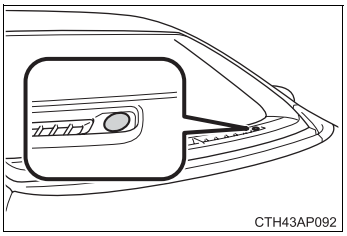
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 217 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Daytime running light system**

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime running lights turn on automatically whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch off or in the AUTO position. (Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

■ **Headlight control sensor (if equipped)**

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.
Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.


CTH43AP092

■ **Automatic light off system**

When the light switch is in or : The headlights and front fog lights turn off automatically if the power switch is turned off.

When the light switch is in AUTO : All lights turn off automatically if the power switch is turned off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the power switch to ON mode, or turn the light switch off once and then back to or .

■ **Light reminder buzzer**

A buzzer sounds when the power switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 218 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system (vehicles with LED headlights)**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ **Battery-saving function**

In the following conditions, the remaining lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes in order to prevent the vehicle battery from being discharged:

- The headlights and/or tail lights are on.
- The power switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.
- The light switch is in or AUTO.

This function will be canceled in any of the following situations:

- When the power switch is turned to ON mode.
- When the light switch is operated.
- When a door is opened or closed.

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P. 540)

NOTICE

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 219 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Fog light switch

The fog lights secure excellent visibility in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog.

▶ Rear fog light switch

① O Turns the rear fog light off

② Turns the rear fog light on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to O.

Operating the switch ring again turns the rear fog light off.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 220 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

▶ Front and rear fog light switch

① Turns the front and rear fog lights off

② Turns the front fog lights on

③ Turns both front and rear fog lights on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to .

Operating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog light off.



■ **Fog lights can be used when**

▶ Vehicles with a rear fog light switch

The headlights are turned on.

▶ Vehicles with a front and rear fog light switch

Front fog lights: The headlights or the front position lights are turned on.
Rear fog light: The front fog lights are turned on.

Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the wiper lever

▶ Intermittent windshield wipers with interval adjuster

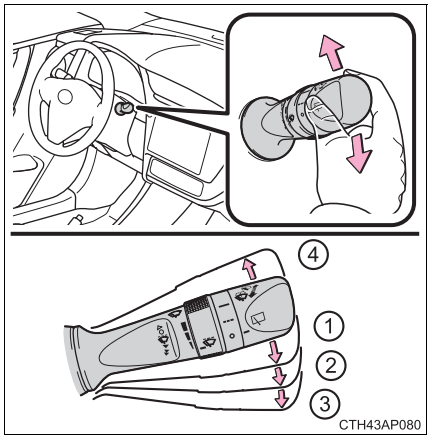
The wiper operation is selected by moving the lever as follows. When intermittent windshield wiper operation is selected, the wiper interval can be also adjusted.

① Intermittent windshield wiper operation

② ▼ Low speed windshield wiper operation

③ ▼▼ High speed windshield wiper operation

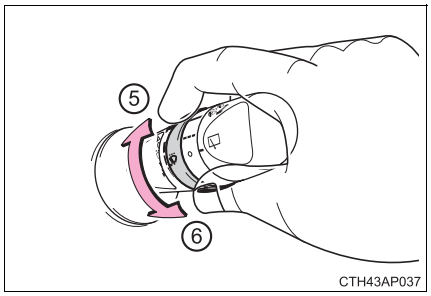
④ △ Temporary operation



Wiper intervals can be adjusted when intermittent operation is selected.

⑤ Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency

⑥ Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency

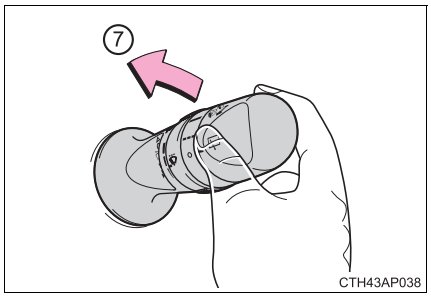


UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 222 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⑦ Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

Vehicles with headlight cleaners: When the headlights are on and the lever is pulled and held, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.



▶ Rain-sensing windshield wipers

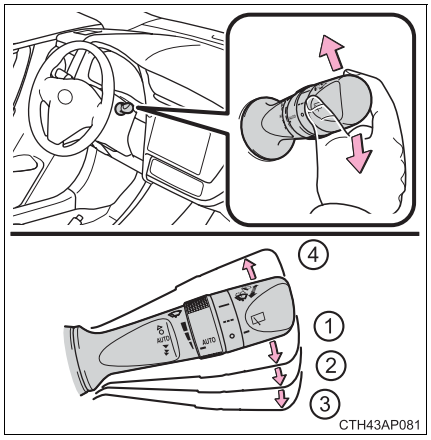
When “AUTO” is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.

① AUTO Rain-sensing windshield wiper operation

② ▼ Low speed windshield wiper operation

③ ▼▼ High speed windshield wiper operation

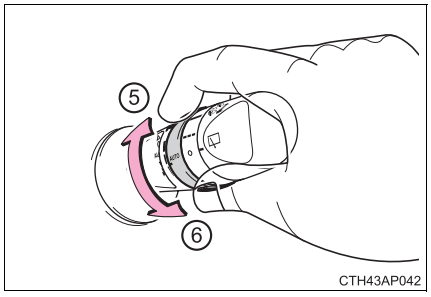
④ △ Temporary operation



When “AUTO” is selected, the sensor sensitivity can be adjusted as follows by turning the switch ring.

⑤ Increases the rain-sensing windshield wiper sensitivity

⑥ Decreases the rain-sensing windshield wiper sensitivity

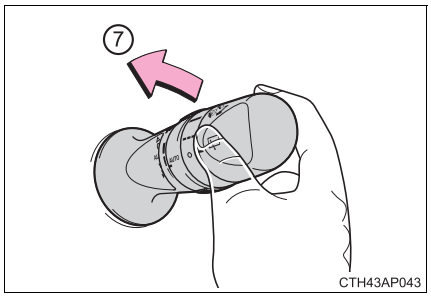


UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 223 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⑦ Washer/wiper dual operation

Wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

Vehicles with headlight cleaners: When the headlights are on and the lever is pulled and held, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.



■ **The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when**

The power switch is in ON mode.

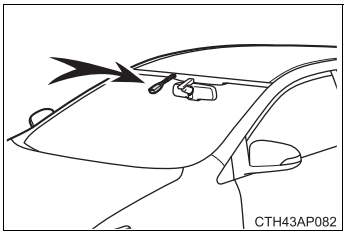
■ **Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

Even when the wipers are not in “AUTO” mode, wiper operation varies depending on vehicle speed when the washer is being used (delay until drip prevention wiper sweep occurs).

■ **Raindrop sensor (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.

  An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.



- If the wiper switch is turned to the “AUTO” position while the power switch is in ON mode, the wiper will operate once to show that “AUTO” mode is activated.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 90°C (194°F) or higher, or -15°C (5°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than “AUTO”.

■ **If no windshield washer fluid sprays**

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

⚠ WARNING

■ Caution regarding the use of washer fluid

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in “AUTO” mode (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in “AUTO” mode. Take care that your fingers etc. do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

■ When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

■ When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 225 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

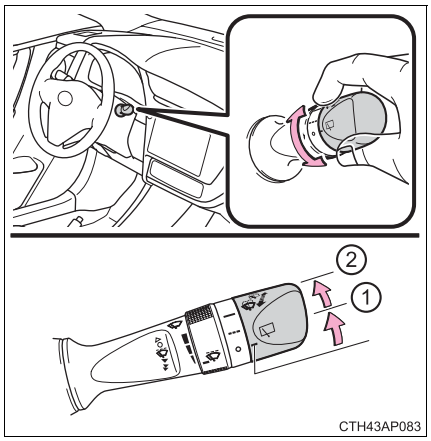
Rear window wiper and washer

Operating instructions

The wiper operation is selected by moving the lever as follows:

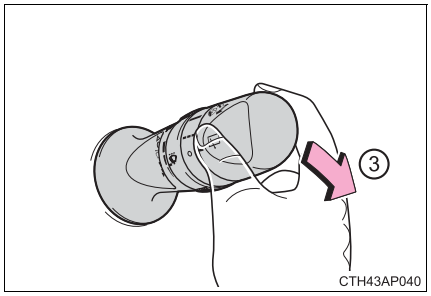
① ▬▬ Intermittent window wiper operation

② ▬ Normal window wiper operation



③ Washer/wiper dual operation

The wiper will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.



■ **The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when**

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ **If no windshield washer fluid sprays**

Check that the washer nozzle is not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 226 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

When the rear window is dry

Do not use the wiper, as it may damage the rear window.

When the washer fluid tank is empty

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 227 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Opening the fuel tank cap

Perform the following steps to open the fuel tank cap:

Before refueling the vehicle

- Close all the doors and windows, and turn the power switch off.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

Fuel types

EU area:
Unleaded gasoline confirming to European standard EN228, Research Octane Number of 95 or higher
Except EU area:
Unleaded gasoline, Research Octane Number of 95 or higher

Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine

Toyota allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 228 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel.
  Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged.
  This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

■When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

⚠ NOTICE

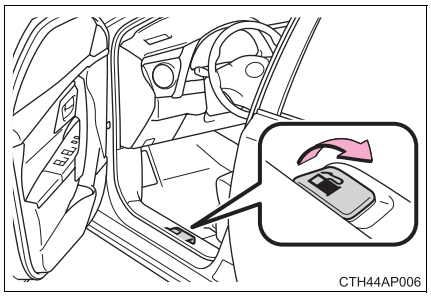
■Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

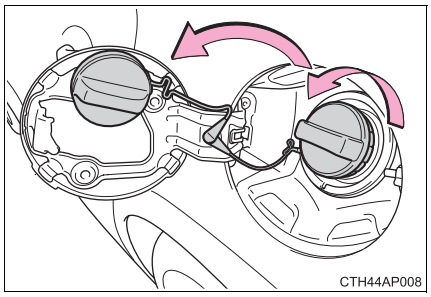
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 229 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Opening the fuel tank cap

1 Pull up the opener to open the fuel filler door.

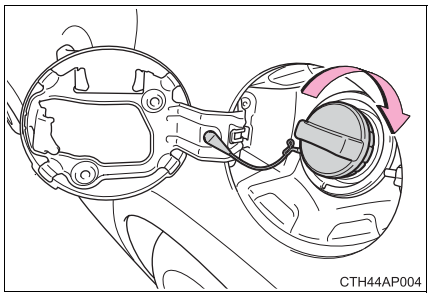


2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to remove it and hang it on the back of the fuel filler door.



Closing the fuel tank cap

After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



WARNING

■ When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Toyota fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 230 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Toyota Safety Sense*

The Toyota Safety Sense system consists of the following drive assist systems and contributes to a safe and comfortable driving experience.

◆ PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)

→P. 234

◆ LDA (Lane Departure Alert)

→P. 242

◆ Automatic High Beam

→P. 248

◆ RSA (Road Sign Assist)

→P. 252

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 231 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Vehicle data recordings

The pre-crash safety system is equipped with a sophisticated computer that will record certain data, such as:

- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal
- Vehicle speed
- Operation status of the pre-crash safety system functions
- Information (such as the distance and relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead or another object)

The pre-crash safety system does not record conversations, sounds or pictures.

● Data usage

Toyota may use the data recorded in these computers to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Toyota will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

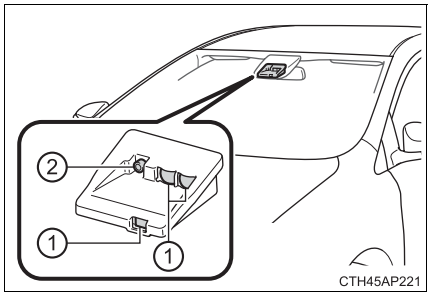
- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Toyota in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Front sensor

The front sensor is located on the upper side of the windshield. It consists of 2 types of sensors, each of which detects information necessary to operate the drive assist systems.

① Laser sensors

② Monocular camera sensor



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 232 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ **Front sensor**

→P. 567

⚠ NOTICE

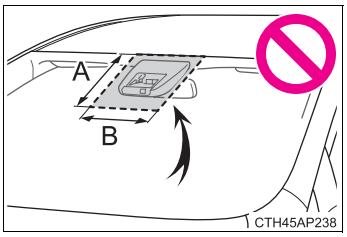
■ **Front sensor**

Observe the following to ensure that the sensor operates correctly:

- Do not attach stickers, including transparent stickers, or other items to the outer side of the windshield in front of the front sensor (shaded area in the illustration).

  A: From the top of the windshield to approximately 10 cm (4.0 in.) below the bottom of the front sensor

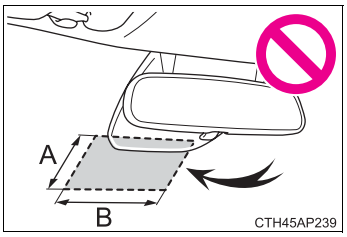
  B: Approximately 20 cm (7.9 in.) (Approximately 10 cm (4.0 in.) to the right and left from the center of the front sensor)



- Do not install or attach anything to the inner side of the windshield under the front sensor (shaded area in the illustration).

  A: Approximately 10 cm (4.0 in.) (Starting from the bottom of the front sensor)

  B: Approximately 20 cm (7.9 in.) (Approximately 10 cm (4.0 in.) to the right and left from the center of the front sensor)



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 233 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

- Do not attach window tinting to the windshield.
- If the part of the windshield in front of the front sensor is fogged up or covered with condensation or ice, use the windshield defogger to remove the fog, condensation or ice.
- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  The pre-crash safety system may not function properly if the windshield is dirty or covered with an oily film, water droplets, snow, etc.
  If the inner side of the windshield where the front sensor is installed is dirty, do not attempt to remove the front sensor. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- If the windshield needs to be replaced, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not install an antenna in front of the sensor.
- Do not spill liquid onto the sensor.
- Do not allow bright lights to shine into the sensor.
- Do not damage or let the lenses of the front sensor get dirty.
  When cleaning the inner side of the windshield, do not let glass cleaner contact the lenses. Also, do not touch the lenses.
  For proper care of the lenses of the front sensor, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not change the installation position or direction of the sensor or remove it. The direction of the sensor is precisely adjusted.
- Do not subject the sensor to strong impact or disassemble it.
- Do not install an electronic device or device that emits strong electric waves near the front sensor.
- Do not place reflective objects on top of the instrument panel.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 234 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)*

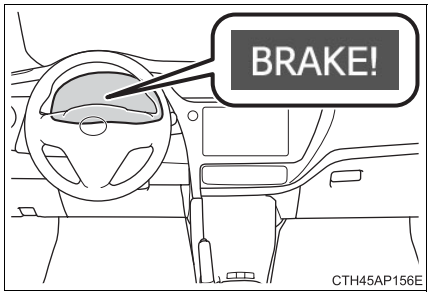
The pre-crash safety system uses the front sensor to detect vehicles in front of your vehicle. When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is high, pre-crash warning urges the driver to take evasive action and the potential brake pressure will be increased to help the driver avoid the collision.

If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact to the vehicle occupants and the vehicle in the collision.

The pre-crash warning timing can be changed or the system can be enabled/disabled, as necessary, by operating the switch. (→P. 235)

◆ Pre-crash warning

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is high, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display to urge the driver to take evasive action.



◆ Pre-crash brake assist

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is high, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 235 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

◆ Pre-crash braking

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle is high, the system warns the driver. If the system determines that the possibility of a collision is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or reduce the collision speed.

Changing the pre-crash safety system

■ Changing the pre-crash warning timing

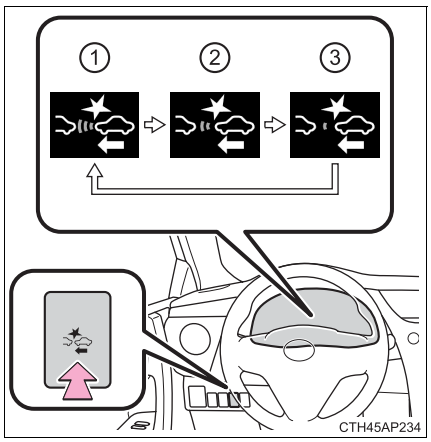
Each time the PCS switch is pressed, the warning timing changes as follows:

① Far (operation starts earlier)

② Middle (default setting)

③ Near (operation starts later)

When the PCS switch is pressed to turn the system on, the current warning timing will be displayed on the multi-information display.



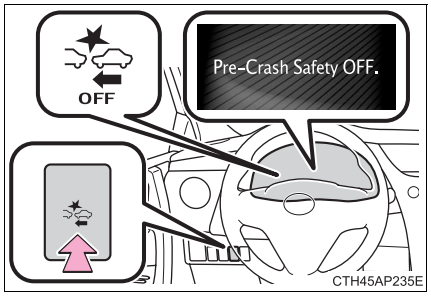
■ Disabling the pre-crash safety system

Press the PCS switch for 3 seconds or more.

The PCS warning light will turn on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

To enable the system, press the PCS switch again.

The system is enabled each time the power switch is turned to ON mode.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 236 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Operational conditions**

The pre-crash safety system is enabled and determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a vehicle (except motorcycles and bicycles) is high.

● Pre-crash warning:

- Vehicle speed is approximately 15 to 140 km/h (10 to 86 mph).
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is greater than approximately 15 km/h (10 mph).

● Pre-crash brake assist:

- Vehicle speed is approximately 30 to 80 km/h (19 to 49 mph).
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is greater than approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).

● Pre-crash braking:

- Vehicle speed is approximately 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 49 mph).
- The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is greater than approximately 10 km/h (7 mph).

The system may not operate in the following situations:

● If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time

● If VSC is disabled (only the pre-crash warning function will be operational)

● If the PCS warning light is flashing or illuminated

■ **Cancelation of the pre-crash braking**

● If either of the following situations occur while the pre-crash braking function is operating, it will be canceled:

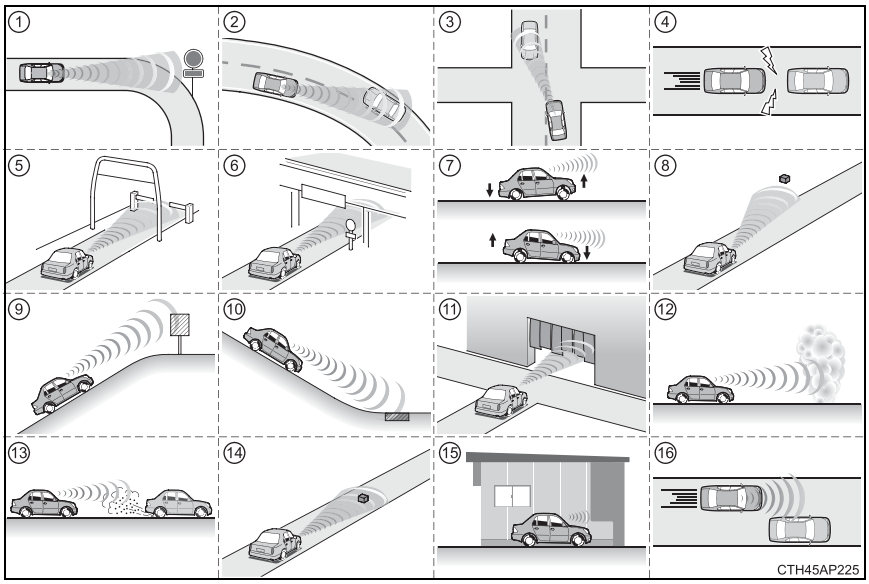
- The accelerator pedal is depressed strongly.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply or abruptly.

● If the vehicle is stopped by the operation of the pre-crash braking function, the operation of the pre-crash braking function will be canceled after the vehicle has been stopped for approximately 2 seconds.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 237 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

In the following situations the sensor may detect an object, causing the system to determine that there is a possibility of a frontal collision and operate.



① When there is an object (traffic sign, guard rail, etc.) by the roadside at the entrance of a curve

② When passing an oncoming vehicle on a curve

③ When passing an oncoming vehicle while making a left or right turn

④ When rapidly closing on a preceding vehicle

⑤ When rapidly closing on an electric toll gate barrier, parking area barrier, or other barrier that opens and closes

⑥ When approaching an overpass, traffic sign, billboard, etc.

⑦ When the front part of the vehicle is raised or lowered

⑧ When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact being applied to the sensor, etc.

⑨ When there is a structural object (billboard, street light, etc.) at the top of an uphill road

⑩ When there is a metal object (manhole cover, steel plate, etc.) at the bottom of a downhill road

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 238 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⑪ When approaching a low hanging object that may contact the vehicle, such as a banner or tree branches

⑫ When driving through dense fog or smoke

⑬ When the vehicle is hit by water or snow from a preceding vehicle, etc.

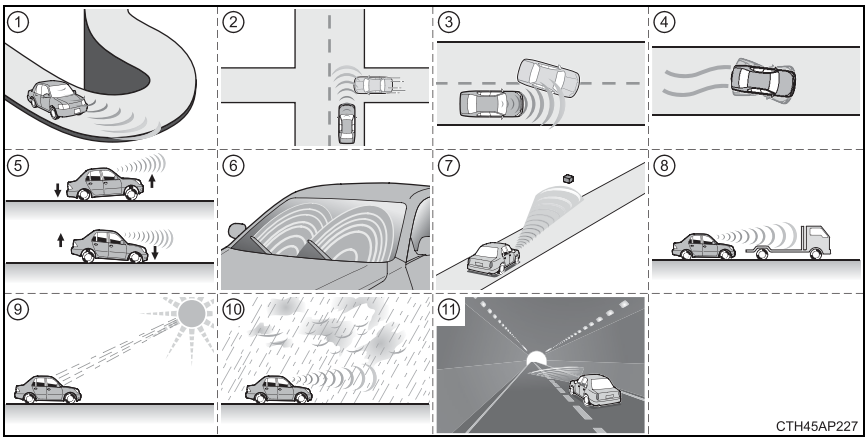
⑭ When there is a reflective object, bump, protrusion, etc. on the road surface

⑮ When the vehicle is being parked in a place where there is a low hanging object at the height of the front sensor

⑯ When passing extremely close to an object (stopped vehicle, guardrail, etc.)

■ Situations in which the pre-crash safety system may not function properly

The system may not function properly in the following situations:



① When driving on roads with sharp bends or uneven surfaces

② If a vehicle suddenly moves in front of your vehicle, such as at an intersection

③ If a vehicle suddenly cuts in front of your vehicle

④ If your vehicle is skidding

⑤ When the front part of the vehicle is raised or lowered

⑥ When the windshield is dirty or covered with raindrops, condensation, ice, snow, etc.

⑦ When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact being applied to the sensor, etc.

⑧ When a preceding vehicle is a poor reflector of laser (the rear part of the vehicle lowered, very dirty, etc.)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 239 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⑨ When a very bright light, such as the sun or the headlights of oncoming traffic, shines directly into the front sensor

⑩ When driving in inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or a sand storm

⑪ When the surrounding area is dark, such as while in a tunnel or during nighttime

■ **If the PCS warning light flashes and a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display**

The pre-crash safety system may be temporarily unavailable or there may be a malfunction in the system.

- In the following situations, the warning light and message will be cleared and the system will become operational when normal operating conditions return:
  - When the area around the front sensor is hot, such as after the vehicle has been parked in the sun
  - When the windshield is fogged up or covered with condensation or ice
  - If the area in front of the front sensor is obstructed, such as when the hood is open
- If the PCS warning light continues to flash or the warning message is not cleared, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **If TRC and VSC are disabled**

- If TRC and VSC are disabled (→P. 285), the pre-crash brake assist and pre-crash braking functions are also disabled. However, the pre-crash warning function will still operate.
- The PCS warning light illuminates and “Pre-Crash Brake is disabled due to VSC OFF.” is displayed on the multi-information display.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 240 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■Limitations of the pre-crash safety system

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

  Do not use the pre-crash safety system instead of normal braking operations under any circumstances. This system will not prevent collisions or lessen damage or injuries in every situation. Do not overly rely on this system. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

  Although this system is designed to help avoid and reduce the impact of a collision, its effectiveness may change according to various conditions (→P. 236). As a result, the system may not always provide the same level of performance.

- The pre-crash braking function may not operate if certain operations are performed by the driver. If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly or the steering wheel is being turned, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly prevent the pre-crash braking function from operating.
- In some situations, while the pre-crash braking function is operating, operation of the function may be canceled if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly or the steering wheel is turned and the system determines that the driver is taking evasive action.
- A large amount of braking force is applied while the pre-crash braking function is operating. Additionally, as the vehicle may creep after the pre-crash braking function has operated, the driver should depress the brake pedal as necessary.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 241 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the assist functions of the system

By means of warnings and brake control, the pre-crash safety system is intended to assist the driver in avoiding collisions through the process of LOOK-JUDGE-ACT. There are limits to the degree of assistance the system can provide, so keep in mind the following important points.

- Assisting the driver in watching the road
  The pre-crash safety system is only able to detect vehicles directly in front of your vehicle, and only within a limited range. It does not allow for careless or inattentive driving, and is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for the driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.
- Assisting the driver in making correct judgement
  When attempting to estimate the possibility of a collision, the only data available to the pre-crash safety system is that from vehicles it has detected directly in front of your vehicle. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of collision in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver in taking action
  The pre-crash brake assist and pre-crash braking functions are designed to help avoid a collision or reduce the severity of a collision, as such they only operate when the system has determined that the possibility of a collision is high. This system is not capable of automatically avoiding a collision or bringing the vehicle to a stop safely, without appropriate operations being performed by the driver. For this reason, when encountering a dangerous situation the driver must take direct and immediate action in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To avoid malfunction of the system

In the following situations, disable the pre-crash safety system. The system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision.

- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester such as a chassis dynamometer or speedometer tester, or when using an on vehicle wheel balancer
- When transporting the vehicle via boat, truck, or similar means of transportation
- When the front part of the vehicle is raised or lowered, such as if tires of a different size than specified are used or if the suspension components are modified
- When the vehicle is being towed

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 242 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

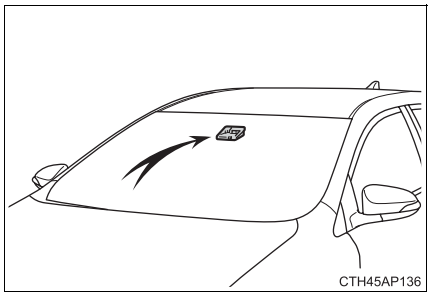
LDA (Lane Departure Alert)*

Summary of function

While driving on a road that has lane markers, this system recognizes the lane markers using a camera as a sensor to alert the driver when the vehicle deviates from its lane.

If the system judges that the vehicle has deviated from its lane, it alerts the driver using a buzzer and indications on the multi-information display.

Front sensor


CTH45AP136

Lane departure alert function

When the system judges that the vehicle is deviating from the current lane, an alert buzzer will sound and the lane line on the side the vehicle is deviating from will flash on the multi-information display.

When the alert buzzer sounds, check the surrounding conditions and operate the steering wheel to safely center the vehicle between the white (yellow) lane markers.


CTH45AP203

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 243 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

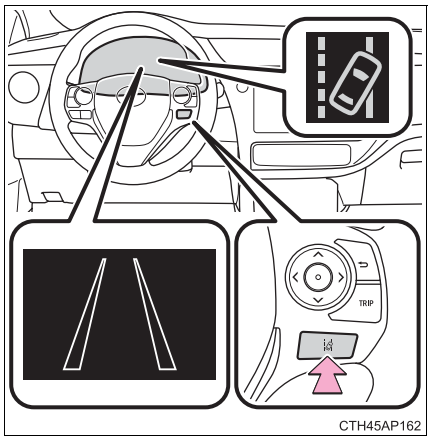
Turning the LDA system on

Press the LDA switch to activate the system.

The LDA indicator will come on.

Press the switch again to turn the LDA system off.

The LDA system will remain on or off even if the power switch is turned to ON mode.



Operating conditions

- When the vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more
- When the lane width is more than approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.)
- When driving on a straight road or through a curve with a radius of more than approximately 150 m (492 ft.)

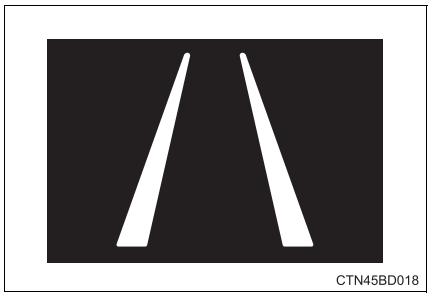
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 244 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Indication on the multi-information display

When the inside of both lane lines turn white:

Indicates that both right and left lane markers are recognized.

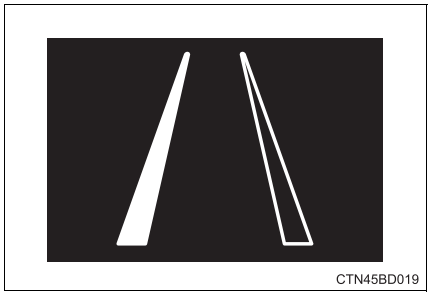
If the vehicle deviates from the lane, the lane line on the side the vehicle has deviated from will flash in yellow.


CTN45BD018

When the inside of either lane line turns white:

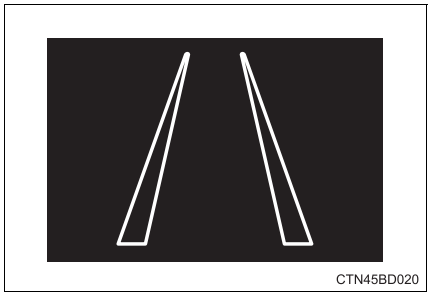
Indicates that the lane marker on the white-marked side is recognized.

If the vehicle deviates from the side of a lane with recognized lane markers, the lane line will flash in yellow.


CTN45BD019

When the inside of both lane lines are black:

Indicates that no lane markers are recognized or the LDA system is temporarily canceled.


CTN45BD020

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 245 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **If "Check LDA system." is displayed on the multi-information display**

If the LDA indicator does not come on when the LDA switch is pressed to turn the system on, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Temporary cancelation of the LDA system functions**

If any of the following occurs, the LDA system functions will be temporarily canceled. The functions will resume after the necessary operating conditions have returned.

- The turn signal lever is operated.
- The vehicle speed deviates from the operating range of the LDA system functions.
- When the lane lines cannot be recognized while driving.
- When the lane departure warning sounds.
  The lane departure warning function will not operate again for a several seconds after it has been activated, even if the vehicle leaves the lane again.

■ **The lane departure warning**

Depending on the audio system sound level or air conditioning fan noise while the audio system or air conditioning system is in use, it may be difficult to hear the warning sound.

■ **After the vehicle has been parked in the sun**

The LDA system may not be available and a warning message may be displayed for a while after starting off. When the temperature in the cabin decreases and the temperature around the front sensor (→P. 242) becomes suitable for its operation, the system will begin to operate.

■ **If there are lane markers on only one side of the vehicle**

The lane departure warning will not operate for the side on which lane markers could not be recognized.

■ **Conditions in which the function may not operate correctly**

In the following situations, the front sensor may be unable to recognize lane markers causing the lane departure warning function to operate incorrectly. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- When driving through an area, such as a tollbooth, a crossing or before a ticket checkpoint
- When driving on a sharp curve
- When lane markers are extremely narrow or extremely wide
- When the vehicle leans to one side an unusual amount due to a heavy load or improper tire inflation pressure
- When the following distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is extremely short
- When the lane markers are yellow (These may be more difficult for the system to recognize compared to white markers.)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 246 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

- When the lane markers are broken, Botts' dots (raised pavement markers) or stones
- When the lane markers are on a curb etc.
- When lane markers are obscured or partially obscured by sand, dirt, etc.
- When there are shadows on the road running parallel with lane markers, or if a shadow covers the lane markers
- When driving on a particularly bright road surface, such as concrete
- When driving on a road surface that is bright due to reflected light
- When driving in a location where the light level changes rapidly, such as the entrance to or exit from a tunnel
- When sunlight or the headlights of oncoming vehicles are shining directly into the front sensor
- When driving on roads that are branching or merging
- When driving on a road surface that is wet due to rain, previous rainfall, standing water, etc.
- When the vehicle experiences strong up-and-down motion such as when driving on an extremely rough road or on a seam in the pavement
- When headlight brightness at nighttime is reduced due to dirt on the lenses, or when the headlights are misaligned
- When driving on winding roads or roads that are uneven
- When driving on rough or unpaved roads

■ **When changing the tires**

Depending on the tires used, sufficient performance may not be maintainable.

■ **Warning messages for the LDA system**

Warning messages are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 247 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ Before using the LDA system

Do not rely solely on the LDA system. The LDA system does not drive the vehicle automatically, nor does it reduce the amount of care you need to take. As such, the driver must always assume full responsibility for understanding his/her surroundings, for operating the steering wheel to correct the driving line, and for driving safely.

Inappropriate or negligent driving could lead to an accident.

■ To avoid operating the LDA by mistake

Switch the LDA system off using the LDA switch when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for LDA system

Do not use the LDA system in any of the following situations.

Otherwise, the system may not function correctly and could result in an accident.

- When driving with tire chains, a spare tire, or similar equipment
- When there are objects or structures along the roadside that might be misinterpreted as lane markers (such as guardrails, a curb, reflector posts, etc.)
- When driving on snowy roads
- When pavement lane markers are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, sand, dirt, etc.
- When there are visible lines on the pavement from road repairs, or if the remains of old lane markers are still visible on the road
- When driving on a road with lane closures due to maintenance, or when driving in a temporary lane

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to or incorrect operation of the LDA system

- Do not modify the headlights or attach stickers to the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension. If your suspension needs repairs, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or the grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar etc.).

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 248 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

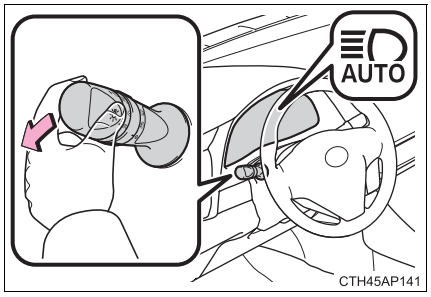
Automatic High Beam*

The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle front sensor to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles, etc., and automatically turns high beam on or off as necessary.

Activating the Automatic High Beam system

Push the lever away from you with the headlight switch in AUTO position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the headlights are turned on automatically to indicate that the system is active.



High beam automatic turning on or off conditions

When all of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned on:

- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no oncoming or preceding vehicles with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are few streetlights on the road ahead.

If any of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned off:

- Vehicle speed drops below approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- Oncoming or preceding vehicles have headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are many streetlights on the road ahead.

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 249 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

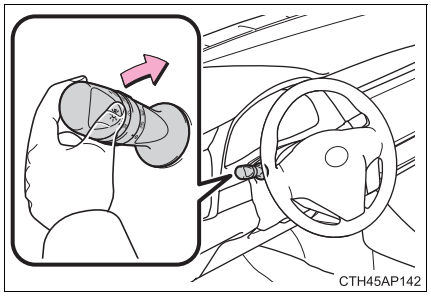
Turning the high beam on/off manually

■ Switching to low beam

Pull the lever to original position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off.

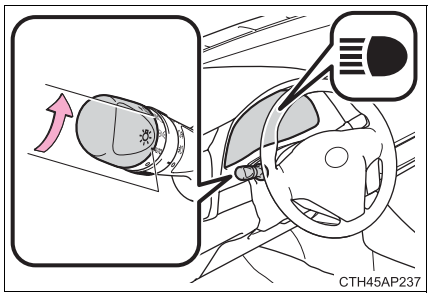
Push the lever away from you to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.



■ Switching to high beam

Turn the light switch to position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.



■ The Automatic High Beam can be operated when

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ Front sensor detection information

- High beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
  - When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve
  - When the vehicle is cut in front of by another
  - When oncoming or preceding vehicles are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- High beam may be turned off if an oncoming vehicle that is using fog lights without using the headlights is detected.
- House lights, street lights, red traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to turn off.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 250 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

● The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn high beam on or off:

- The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles
- The movement and direction of oncoming and preceding vehicles
- When a oncoming or preceding vehicle only has operational lights on one side
- When a oncoming or preceding vehicle is a two-wheeled vehicle
- The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface, etc.)
- The number of passengers and amount of luggage

● High beam may be turned on or off when unexpected by the driver.

● In the situations below, the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness levels, and may flash or expose nearby pedestrians to the high beam. Therefore, you should consider turning the high beams on or off manually rather than relying on the Automatic High Beam system.

- In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms, etc.)
- The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt, etc.
- The windshield is cracked or damaged.
- The front sensor is deformed or dirty.
- The front sensor temperature is extremely high.
- Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights.
- Vehicles ahead have headlights or tail lights that are either switched off, dirty, are changing color, or are not aimed properly.
- When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness.
- When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel tracks, etc.).
- When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road.
- There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror.
- The back of a vehicle ahead is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck.
- The vehicle’s headlights are damaged or dirty.
- The vehicle is listing or titling, due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed, etc.
- The driver believes that the high beam may be causing problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 251 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning high beam on or off manually if necessary.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Notes when using the Automatic High Beam system

Observe the following to ensure that the Automatic High Beam functions correctly.

- Do not overload the vehicle.
- Do not modify the vehicle.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 252 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

RSA (Road Sign Assist)*

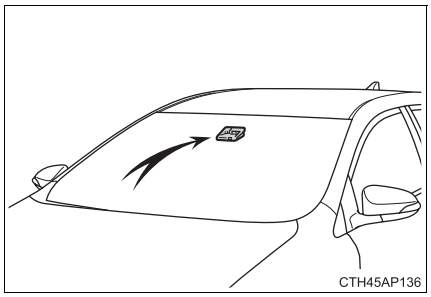
Summary of function

RSA recognizes specific road signs using the front sensor and provides information to the driver via the multi-information display.

If the system judges that the vehicle is being driven over the speed limit, performing prohibited actions, etc., in relation to the recognized road signs, it alerts the driver using a warning display and warning buzzer*.

*: This setting needs to be customized.

Front sensor



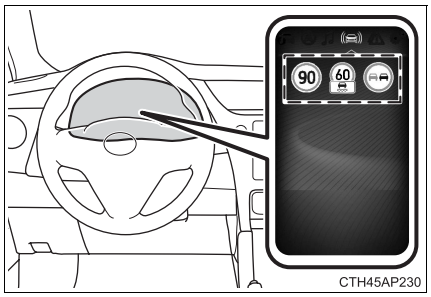
*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 253 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Indication on the multi-information display

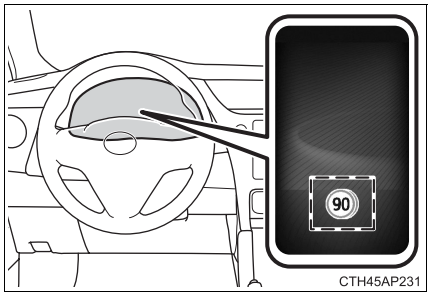
After the front sensor recognizes a sign, it is displayed on the multi-information display when the vehicle passes the sign.

- When the driving assist system information is selected, a maximum of 3 signs can be displayed. (→P. 104)



- When other than the driving assist system information is selected, a speed limit sign or an all canceled sign can be displayed. (→P. 104)

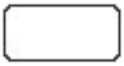
  A no overtaking sign and a speed limit sign with supplemental mark are not displayed. However, if signs other than speed limit signs are recognized, they are mentioned in a stack under the current speed limit sign.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 254 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Types of recognized road signs

The following types of road signs, including electronic signs and blinking signs, are recognized.

Type		Multi-information display
Speed limit begins/ends		
Speed limit with supplemental mark (Displayed simultaneously with speed limit)  (Display example)	Rain	
	Ice	
	On/off ramp*	
	Supplemental mark exists (Contents not recognized)	
No overtaking begins/ends		
All canceled (All restrictions canceled. Returns to default road regulation.)		

*: If the turn signal indicator is not operated when changing lanes, the mark does not display.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 255 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Warning display

In the following situations, the RSA system alerts the driver using a warning display.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds the speed warning threshold applied to the speed limit of the sign displayed on the multi-information display, the sign color becomes inverted.
- If it is detected that your vehicle is overtaking when a no overtaking sign is displayed on the multi-information display, the sign flashes.

Automatic turn-off of RSA sign display

One or more signs automatically turn off in the following situations.

- A new sign is not recognized for a certain distance.
- The road changes due to a left or right turn, etc.

Conditions in which the function may not operate or detect correctly

In the following situations, RSA does not operate normally and may not recognize signs, display the incorrect sign, etc. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- The front sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact being applied to the sensor, etc.
- Dirt, snow, stickers, etc., are on the windshield near the front sensor.
- In inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or sand storms
- Light from an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc., enters the front sensor.
- The sign is small, dirty, faded, tilted or bent, and if an electronic sign, the contrast is poor.
- All or part of the sign is hidden by the leaves of a tree, a pole, etc.
- The sign is only visible to the front sensor for a short amount of time.
- The driving scene (turning, lane change, etc.) is judged incorrectly.
- Even if it is a sign not appropriate for the currently traveled lane, such a sign exists directly after a freeway branches, or in an adjacent lane just before merging.
- Stickers are attached to the rear of the preceding vehicle.
- A sign resembling a system compatible sign is recognized.
- The vehicle is driven in a country with a different direction of traffic.
- Side road speed signs may be detected and displayed (if positioned in sight of the front sensor) while the vehicle is traveling on the main road.
- Roundabout exit road speed signs may be detected and displayed (if positioned in sight of the front sensor) while traveling on a roundabout.
- The speed information displayed on the meter and that displayed on the Navigation system (if equipped) may be different due to the Navigation system using map data.

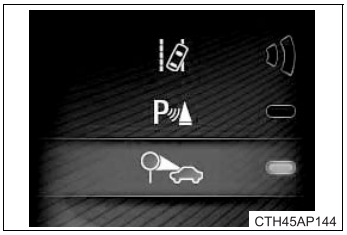
■ **When driving vehicle in country with different speed unit**

Since RSA recognizes signs based on the set unit of the meter, it is necessary to change the set unit of the meter. Adjust the set unit of the meter to the speed unit of signs in the current location. (→P. 540)

■ **Turning the system on/off**

1 Select on the settings display (→P. 110)

2 Press the enter/set switch on the meter control switches.



■ **Speed limit sign display**

If the power switch was last turned off while a speed limit sign was displayed on the multi-information display, the same sign displays again when the power switch is turned to ON mode.

■ **When "Check RSA system." is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

■ **Customization**

The settings for warning display, warning buzzer*, speeding warning threshold, etc., can be changed. (Customizable feature: →P. 540)

*: If a speed limit with supplemental mark is exceeded, the warning buzzer does not operate.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Before using the RSA**

Do not rely solely upon the RSA system. RSA is a system which supports the driver by providing information, but it is not a replacement for a driver's own vision and awareness. Drive safely by always paying careful attention to the traffic rules.

Inappropriate or negligent driving could lead to an unexpected accident.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 257 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

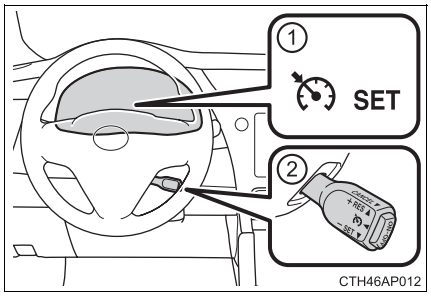
Cruise control*

Summary of functions

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without operating the accelerator pedal.

① Indicators

② Cruise control switch



*: If equipped

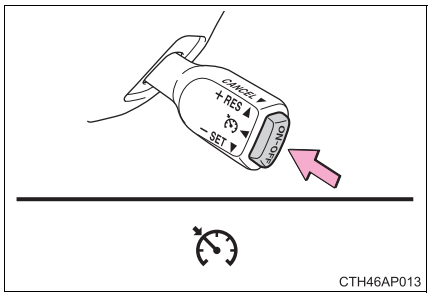
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 258 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Setting the vehicle speed

1 Press the “ON-OFF” button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on.

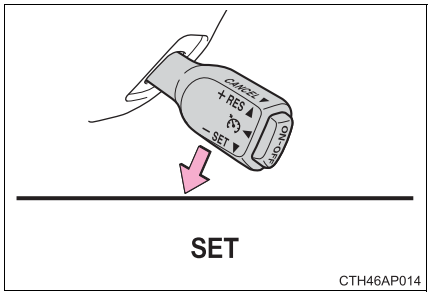
Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



CTH46AP013

2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (above approximately 40 km/h [25 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control “SET” indicator will come on.
The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.



CTH46AP014

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 259 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Adjusting the set speed

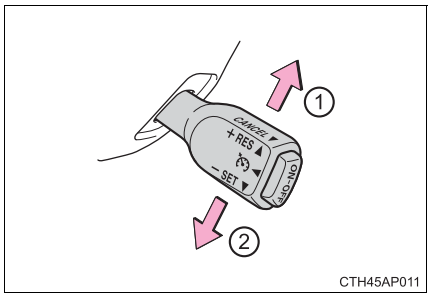
To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.

① Increases the speed

② Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.



CTH45AP011

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

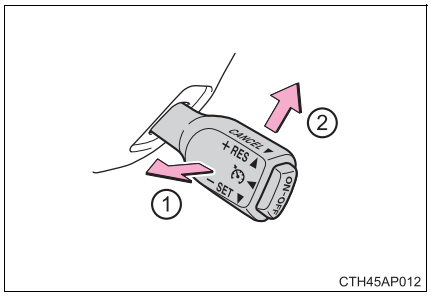
Canceling and resuming the constant speed control

① Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

② Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

However, resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).



CTH45AP012

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 260 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Cruise control can be set when**

- The shift position is in D.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

- The vehicle can be accelerated by operating accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

■ **Automatic cruise control cancelation**

Cruise control is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set speed.
  At this time, the memorized set speed is not retained.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- VSC+ is activated.

■ **If “Check cruise control system.” is displayed on the multi-information display**

Press the “ON-OFF” button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 261 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ **To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake**

Switch the cruise control off using the “ON-OFF” button when not in use.

■ **Situations unsuitable for cruise control**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep hills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer (vehicles with a towing package) or during emergency towing

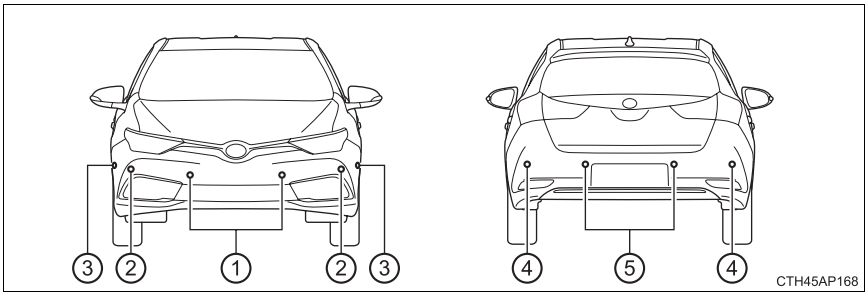
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 262 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Toyota parking assist-sensor*

Vehicles without a navigation/multimedia system:
The distance from your vehicle to nearby obstacles when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the multi-information display and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

Vehicles with a navigation/multimedia system:
Refer to the “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

■ Types of sensors



① Front center sensors
② Front corner sensors
③ Front side sensors
④ Rear corner sensors
⑤ Rear center sensors

*: If equipped

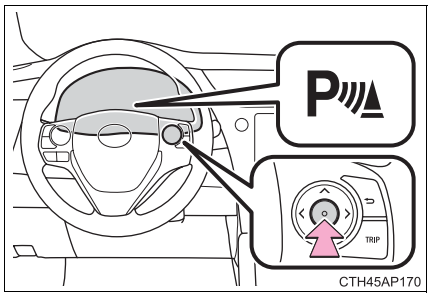
■ **Enabling/disabling the Toyota parking assist-sensor system**

This system can be enabled/disabled on the multi-information display.

1 Display the settings display (→P. 104), and then press ∧ / ∨ on the meter control switch to select P .

2 Press ⊙ on the meter control switch to enable/disable the system.

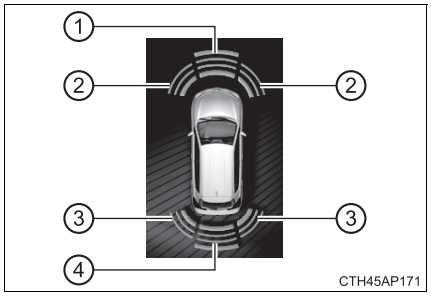
When enabled, the Toyota parking assist-sensor indicator will illuminate.



Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, a graphic is shown on the multi information display depending on the position and distance to the obstacle.

① Front center sensor operation
② Front corner sensor and front side sensor operation
③ Rear corner sensor operation
④ Rear center sensor operation



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 264 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

The distance display and buzzer

When a sensor detects an obstacle, the direction of and the approximate distance to the obstacle are displayed and the buzzer sounds.

■ Corner sensors

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Buzzer
50 to 37.5 cm (1.6 to 1.2 ft.)		Medium
37.5 to 25 cm (1.2 to 0.8 ft.)		Fast
Less than 25 cm (0.8 ft.)		Continuous

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 265 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Front side sensors

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Buzzer
Less than 25 cm (0.8 ft.)		Continuous

■ Center sensors

Approximate distance to obstacle	Multi-information display	Buzzer
Front: 100 to 55 cm (3.3 to 1.8 ft.) Rear: 150 to 55 cm (4.9 to 1.8 ft.)		Slow
55 to 42.5 cm (1.8 to 1.4 ft.)		Medium
42.5 to 30 cm (1.4 to 1.0 ft.)		Fast
Less than 30 cm (1.0 ft.)		Continuous

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 266 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Detection range of the sensors

① Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

② Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

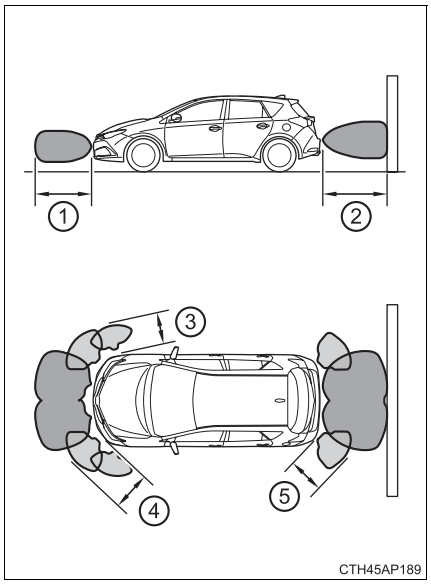
③ Approximately 25 cm (0.8 ft.)

④ Approximately 50 cm (1.6 ft.)

⑤ Approximately 50 cm (1.6 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 267 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **The Toyota parking assist-sensor can be operated when**

The power switch is in ON mode.

● Front sensors:

- The shift position is shifted to a position other than P.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph). (At any speed when the shift position is in R)

● Rear sensors:

The shift position is in R.

■ **Sensor detection information**

● Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of the sensor to correctly detect obstacles. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensor.
- A sensor is frozen.
- A sensor is covered in any way.
- The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
- The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or wireless antenna.
- Towing eyelet is installed.
- A bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
- A non-genuine Toyota suspension (lowered suspension etc.) is installed.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shapes, signs and other objects may be judged by the sensor to be closer than they are.

● The shape of the obstacle may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:

- Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
- Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
- Sharply-angled objects
- Low obstacles
- Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 268 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If “Clean sonar.” is displayed on the multi-information display

A sensor may be dirty or covered with snow or ice. In this case, clean the sensor and the system should return to normal.
If a sensor is frozen due to low temperatures, a warning message may be displayed or an obstacle may not be detected. When the sensor thaws out, the system should return to normal.

If “Check sonar system.” is displayed on the multi-information display

The system may not operate due to the malfunction of a sensor.
Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

Caution when using the Toyota parking assist-sensor

Observe the following precautions.
Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 10 km/h (6 mph).
- Do not attach any accessories within the sensor range.

NOTICE

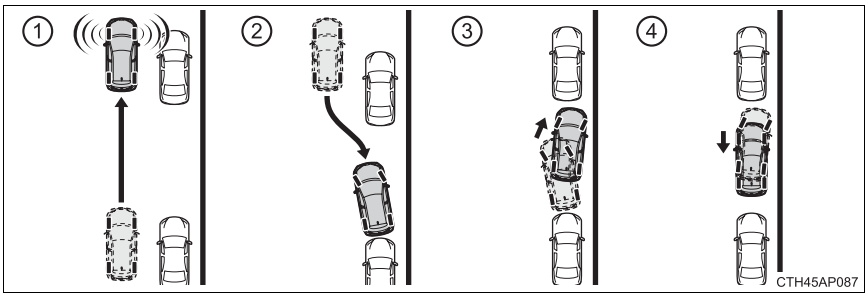
Notes on the Toyota parking assist-sensor

- Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.
  Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.
- If your vehicle is involved in an accident, it will affect the sensors and may result in a system failure.
  Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 269 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Simple-IPA (Simple-Intelligent Parking Assist)*

Simple-IPA is a system that assists parallel parking operations. When parking between two parked vehicles or in the space behind one parked vehicle, the sensors installed on the sides of the front bumper are utilized and a space which the vehicle can be parked in is detected. Parking operations are then assisted by automatic operation of the steering wheel.

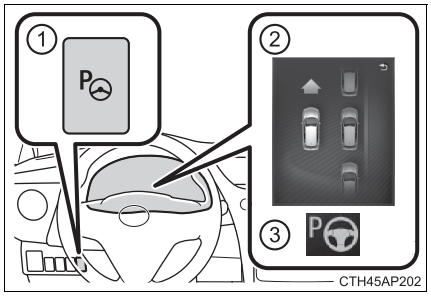


① Detecting allowable parking space
② Parking the vehicle in a detected parking space*
③ Turning the steering wheel to park in the target parking space*
④ Parking in the target parking space is complete*

*: The steering wheel is operated automatically.

Simple-IPA switch and multi-information display

① Simple-IPA switch
② Display
③ Indicator



*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 270 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

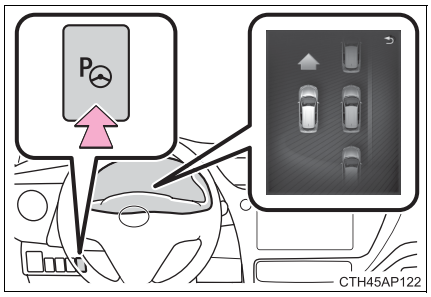
Operating Simple-IPA

Operate Simple-IPA according to the multi-information display and the buzzer.

The system detects parking spaces on the front passenger's side of the vehicle and assists with parking in a detected space.
When parking in a space on the driver's side of the vehicle, move the turn signal lever to indicate turning on the driver's seat side. Leave the turn signal lever in that position until automatic steering begins.

1 Turn the Simple-IPA switch on with the vehicle driving at 30 km/h (18 mph) or less.

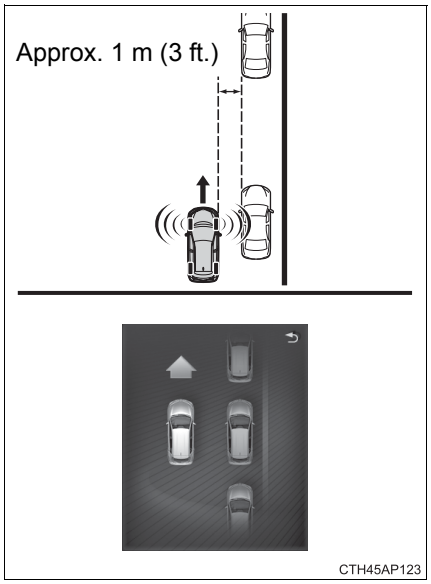
The multi-information display changes to the parking space detection screen when the system is operating.



2 Drive the vehicle while maintaining a distance of approximately 1 m (3 ft.) from the parked vehicles.

Drive the vehicle as parallel to the parked vehicles and curb as possible.
Lower vehicle speeds allow the system to assist in parking the vehicle more parallel to the parked vehicles and curb, and in a more proper position between vehicles at the front and rear of a parking space.

The required length for a parking space to be detected is the total vehicle length plus approximately 1 m (3 ft.).

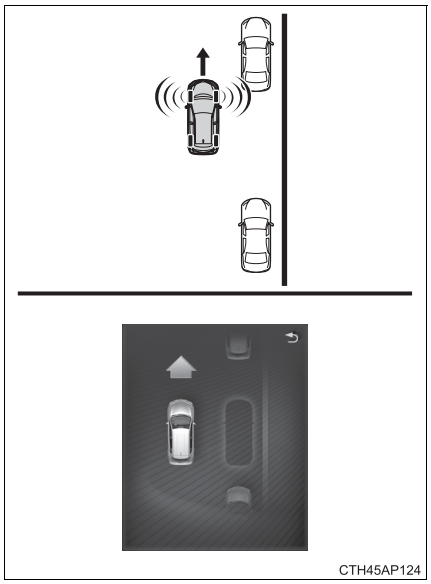


Maintain a vehicle speed of 30 km/h (18 mph) or less.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 271 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

3 When the multi-information display changes, reduce the vehicle speed.

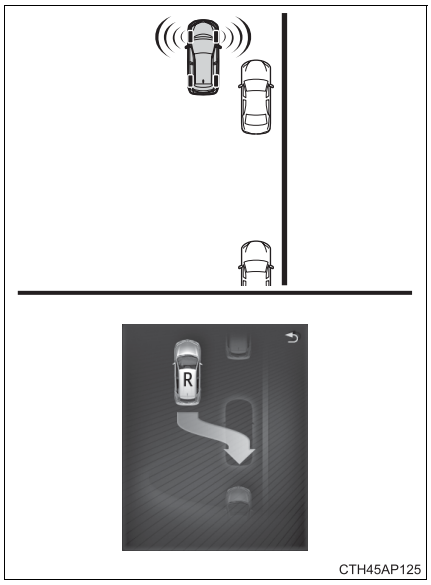
Move the vehicle forward slowly until the buzzer sounds.


CTH45AP124

4 Stop the vehicle when the buzzer sounds.

The multi-information display will change.
Visually check that the detected space is safe for parking.

If the vehicle moves 10 m (32 ft.) or more after the buzzer sounds, detection of a new parking space will begin.



CTH45AP125

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 272 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

5 Shift the shift position to R.

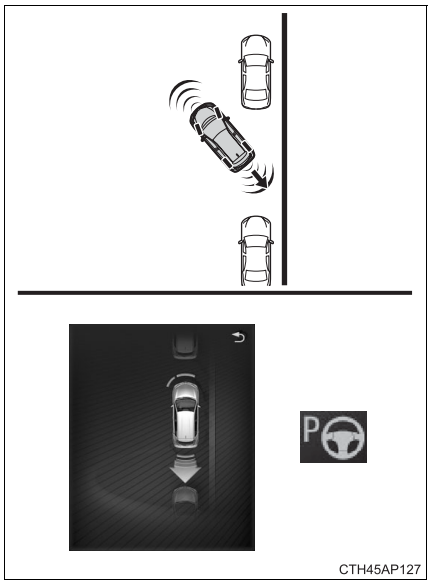
The multi-information display will change, Simple-IPA indicator will come on and automatic steering will begin. While taking care not to catch your hands on the steering wheel and checking the safety of the surrounding area, reverse the vehicle slowly by operating the accelerator and brake pedals. During automatic steering, maintain a vehicle speed of 6 km/h (3 mph) or less.



CTH45AP232E

6 When the multi-information display changes, reduce the vehicle speed.

While checking the safety of the area behind the vehicle, reverse the vehicle slowly.

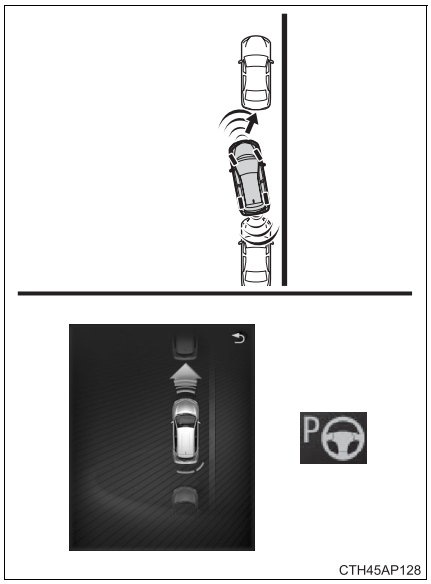


CTH45AP127

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 273 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

7 When the rear Toyota parking assist-sensor's warning buzzer sounds continuously, completely stop the vehicle immediately.

The multi-information display will change when the warning buzzer starts sounding continuously.



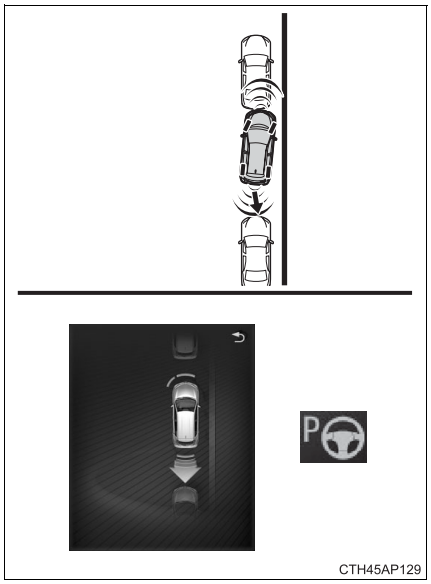
CTH45AP128

8 Shift the shift position to D.

While the steering wheel is turning, keep the vehicle at a complete stop. When the steering wheel stops turning, move the vehicle forward slowly while checking the safety of the area in front of the vehicle.

9 When the front Toyota parking assist-sensor's warning buzzer sounds continuously, completely stop the vehicle immediately.

The multi-information display will change when the warning buzzer starts sounding continuously.



CTH45AP129

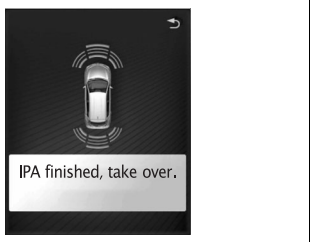
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 274 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

10 Shift the shift position to R.

While the steering wheel is turning, keep the vehicle at a complete stop. When the steering wheel stops turning, reverse the vehicle slowly while checking the safety of the area behind the vehicle.

11 Repeat steps 7 through 10 until the parking assist operation has completed.

When the parking assist operation has completed, the buzzer sounds, the Simple-IPA indicator turns off and the multi-information display changes.
Adjust the vehicle position and/or angle as necessary to complete parking the vehicle.



CTH45AP233E

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 275 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

When a message is shown on the multi-information display

Message	Cause	What to do
“IPA slot not detected, speed too high.”	The vehicle speed exceeded 30 km/h (18 mph).	Reduce vehicle speed to 30 km/h (18 mph) or less.
“IPA cancelled, take over.”	The Simple-IPA switch was turned off.	Turn the Simple-IPA switch on.
	The Simple-IPA switch was turned on while reversing.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
	The shift position was shifted to R during detection of a parking space.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
	The shift position was shifted to a position other than R after the automatic steering began and before the vehicle enters a parking space.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 276 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Message	Cause	What to do
“IPA cancelled, take over.”	The steering wheel could not be turned sufficiently due to reasons such as low tire pressure, tire wear, the influence of road conditions, being on a slope, etc., therefore the vehicle could not be parked in the desired space.	• Check tires for wear and pressure. • If this message is displayed when the vehicle is parked in other spaces, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
	The power steering temporarily overheated.	Attempt to use Simple-IPA after waiting a little while.
	Possible system malfunction.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
“IPA cancelled, take over, driver intervened.”	The steering wheel was manually operated during automatic steering.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
“IPA cancelled, take over, speed too high.”	The vehicle speed exceeded 50 km/h (31 mph) during detection of a parking space.	Reduce vehicle speed to 30 km/h (18 mph) or less and turn the Simple-IPA switch on.
	The vehicle speed exceeded 6 km/h (3 mph) during automatic steering.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 277 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Message	Cause	What to do
“IPA cancelled, take over, TRC/ABS/VSC activated.”	The TRC, VSC, VSC+ or ABS operated.	• If the operation was canceled during detection of a parking space, turn the Simple-IPA switch on again. • If the operation was canceled during automatic steering, park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
“IPA cancelled, take over, TRC/VSC is off.”	The switch was turned off.	Turn the switch on.
“IPA cancelled, take over, timeout.”	More than 6 minutes have elapsed since the Simple-IPA switch was turned on and the shift position was shifted to R, before automatic steering could begin.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
	More than 6 minutes have elapsed since the shift position was shifted to R and automatic steering began, before the parking assist operation could complete.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
	The total stop time during automatic steering exceeded 2 minutes.	Park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.
“IPA cancelled, take over, check IPA system.”	System malfunction.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 278 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Message	Cause	What to do
“IPA not available.”	The power steering is temporarily overheating.	Attempt to use Simple-IPA after waiting a little while.
	The hybrid system has not been started.	Start the hybrid system.
	Possible system malfunction.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
“IPA not available, speed too high.”	Excessive vehicle speed (over 50 km/h [31 mph])	Reduce vehicle speed to 30 km/h (18 mph) or less and turn the Simple-IPA switch on.
“IPA not available, TRC/VSC is off.”	The switch is off.	After turning the switch on, turn the Simple-IPA switch on.
“IPA not available, stop the vehicle, turn wheel from left end to right end.”	System initialization has not been performed since the 12-volt battery was disconnected/reconnected.	Perform initialization. →P. 280
“Check IPA system.”	System malfunction.	Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 279 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Operation conditions of Simple-IPA**

- The hybrid system is started.
- The switch is on.
- The vehicle speed is 30 km/h (18 mph) or less. (During automatic steering, the vehicle speed is 6 km/h [3 mph] or less.)

■ **Canceling of the Simple-IPA operation**

Simple-IPA operation will be canceled when:

- The Simple-IPA switch is turned off.
- The ABS, VSC, VSC+ or TRC is operating.
- The shift position is shifted to R during detection of a parking space.
- The shift position is shifted to R and the vehicle is reversed 1 m (3 ft.) or more after a parking space has been detected and before the buzzer sounds.
- The steering wheel is operated manually during automatic steering.
- It takes more than 6 minutes for automatic steering to begin after the Simple-IPA switch is turned on and the shift position is shifted to R.
- The shift position is moved to a position other than R after the automatic steering began and before the vehicle enters a parking space.
- It takes more than 6 minutes to complete parking after the shift position was shifted to R and automatic steering began.
- The total stop time during automatic steering exceeds 2 minutes.

■ **Resume function of Simple-IPA**

If Simple-IPA is canceled due to one of the following operations, Simple-IPA operation may be able to be resumed by pressing the Simple-IPA switch depending on conditions such as the vehicle stopped position and steering wheel angle.

- The steering wheel is operated manually during automatic steering.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 6 km/h (3 mph) during automatic steering.
- The shift position is moved to a position other than R after the automatic steering began and before the vehicle enters a parking space.

If operation is not resumed, park the vehicle manually or detect another parking space.

■ **When using Simple-IPA repeatedly**

When Simple-IPA is used repeatedly, the power steering may overheat temporarily. It may deactivate or cancel Simple-IPA operation. In this case, wait a few minutes before using Simple-IPA again.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 280 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Toyota parking assist-sensor operation during Simple-IPA operation**

Even if the Toyota parking assist-sensor is turned off while Simple-IPA is activated, the Toyota parking assist-sensor will keep operating. In this case, when Simple-IPA operation is complete or canceled, the Toyota parking assist-sensor will be deactivated.

■ **When the cabin temperature is high**

The sensors may not work properly when the cabin temperature is high due to parking the vehicle in the sun. Use Simple-IPA after the cabin cools down.

■ **Sensors used by Simple-IPA**

→P. 262

■ **Initializing Simple-IPA**

Within 15 seconds of turning the Simple-IPA switch on, turn the steering wheel all the way to the left or right and then to the opposite side.

When the parking space detection screen is displayed, the initialization is complete.

If pressing the Simple-IPA switch again still shows “IPA not available, stop the vehicle, turn wheel from left end to right end.” on the multi-information display, the initialization has failed. Have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Cautions regarding the use of Simple-IPA**

- Never depend on the Simple-IPA entirely when parking. The driver is responsible for safety. Use caution, just as you would when parking any vehicle.
- Back up slowly, using the brake pedal to control the vehicle's speed.
- If it seems likely to hit nearby vehicles, obstacles, or people, depress the brake pedal to stop the vehicle, and the disable the system.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 281 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

■Conditions in which the use of Simple-IPA is prohibited

Do not use Simple-IPA under the following conditions.
Doing so may cause improper operation and lead to an unexpected accident.

- On sharp bends or slopes.
- On slippery or icy roads, or in snow.
- On uneven road surfaces such as gravel.
- During bad weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow, or a sandstorm.
- When the tires are extremely worn or tire pressure is low.
- When the vehicle has improper wheel alignment due to tires having received a strong impact such as bumping against a curb.
- When the compact spare tire (if equipped) or snow chains are installed.
- When the tires slid while attempting to park.
- When fallen leaves or snow is in a parking space.
- Models that can tow a trailer: When items such as a towing bracket, trailer, bicycle carrier, etc. are installed on the rear of the vehicle.
- When a vehicle of which the front/rear end is above the detection area, such as a truck, bus or vehicle with a towing bracket, trailer, bicycle carrier, etc., is parked at the front or rear of the parking space.
- If the front bumper has been damaged.
- If the sensor is covered by the front bumper cover, etc.
- If a vehicle or obstacle is not in a suitable position at the front or rear of the parking space.

■Automatic steering precautions

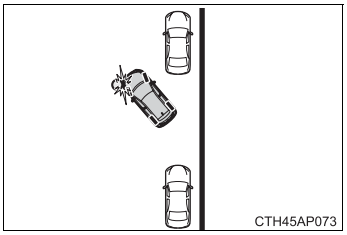
As the steering wheel moves automatically in the parking assist function, be aware of the following point.

- Keep clothing such as neckties, scarves and long sleeves away from the steering wheel, as they may become entangled. Also, keep children away from the steering wheel.
- If you have long fingernails, be careful not to injure yourself when the steering wheel moves.

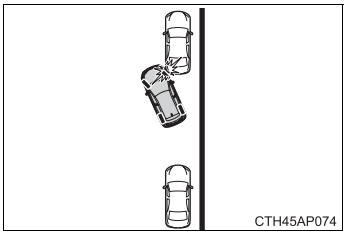
NOTICE

When using the Simple-IPA

- Check that the parking space is suitable. (Width of the space, if there are any obstacles, road surface condition, etc.)
- Simple-IPA will not operate properly if the vehicle at the front or back of the parking space moves, or if an obstacle enters the parking space after the sensors have detected the parking space. Always check the surrounding area during parking assist operation.
- The sensors may not be able to detect curbs. The vehicle may drive onto the curb depending on the situation, such as if a vehicle at the front or back of the parking space has driven on the curb.
  Check the surrounding area to prevent the tires and wheels from being damaged.
- When reversing, reverse the vehicle slowly to prevent the front end of the vehicle from hitting an obstacle in the front of the vehicle.


CTH45AP073

- When reversing, reverse the vehicle slowly to prevent the front end of the vehicle from hitting the vehicle parked in front of the parking space.


CTH45AP074

- The vehicle may not be able to be parked at a target parking space if the vehicle moves forward when the shift position is in R or reverses when the shift position is in a position other than R, such as when parking on a slope.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 283 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Driving assist systems

To help enhance driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

◆ ECB (Electronically Controlled Brake System)

The electronically controlled system generates braking force corresponding to the brake operation

◆ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

◆ Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

◆ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces

◆ VSC+ (Vehicle Stability Control+)

Provides cooperative control of the ABS, TRC, VSC and EPS.
Helps to maintain directional stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling steering performance.

◆ TRC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

◆ Hill-start assist control

Helps to prevent the vehicle from rolling backward when starting on an incline

◆ EPS (Electric Power Steering)

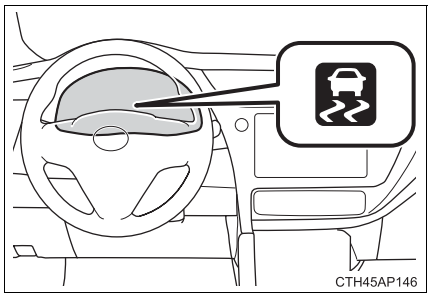
Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

◆ Emergency brake signal

When the brakes are applied suddenly, the emergency flashers automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind.

When the TRC/VSC/ABS systems are operating

The slip indicator light will flash while the TRC/VSC/ABS systems are operating.


CTH45AP146

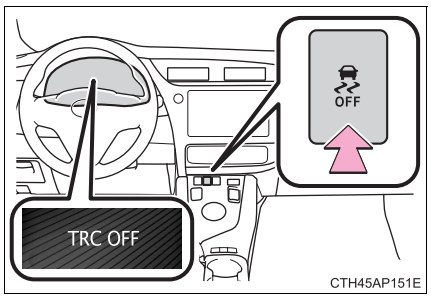
Disabling the TRC system

If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the TRC system may reduce power from the hybrid system to the wheels. Pressing  to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release  .

The “TRC OFF” will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press  again to turn the system back on.



CTH45AP151E

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 285 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Turning off both TRC and VSC systems**

To turn the TRC and VSC systems off, press and hold [VSC OFF] for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF indicator light will come on and the “TRC OFF” will be shown on the multi-information display*.

Press [VSC OFF] again to turn the systems back on.

*: On vehicles with a PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system), the pre-crash brake assist and pre-crash braking functions will also be disabled. (→P. 239)

■ **When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled even if [VSC OFF] has not been pressed**

TRC and hill-start assist control cannot be operated. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, TRC and VSC systems**

Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.

- Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
- A motor sound may be heard after the vehicle comes to a stop.
- The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
- The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ **ECB operating sound**

ECB operating sound may be heard in the following cases, but it does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred.

- Operating sound heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is operated.
- Motor sound of the brake system heard from the front part of the vehicle when the driver’s door is opened.
- Operating sound heard from the engine compartment when one or two minutes passed after the stop of the hybrid system.

■ **EPS operation sound**

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 286 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Automatic reactivation of TRC and VSC systems**

After turning the TRC and VSC systems off, the systems will be automatically re-enabled in the following situations:

- When the power switch is turned off
- If only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC will turn on when vehicle speed increases

  If both the TRC and VSC systems are turned off, automatic re-enabling will not occur when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system**

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result. Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the hybrid system off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

■ **Operating conditions of hill-start assist control**

When the following four conditions are met, the hill-start assist control will operate:

- The shift position is in other than P or N (when starting off forward/backward on an upward incline).
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- The parking brake is not engaged.

■ **Automatic system cancelation of hill-start assist control**

The hill-start assist control will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The shift position is moved to P or N.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The parking brake is engaged.
- Approximately 2 seconds elapse after the brake pedal is released.

■ **Operating conditions of emergency brake signal**

When the following three conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operate:

- The emergency flashers are off.
- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (35 mph).
- The brake pedal is depressed in a manner that cause the system to judge from the vehicle deceleration that this is a sudden braking operation.

■ **Automatic system cancelation of emergency brake signal**

The emergency brake signal will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on.
- The brake pedal is released.
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that is not a sudden braking operation.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 287 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

■The ABS does not operate effectively when

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

■TRC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC system is operating.
Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■Hill- start assist control does not operate effectively when

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline, as doing so may lead to an accident.

■When the VSC is activated

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

■When the TRC/VSC systems are turned off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 288 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS, TRC and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.

Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ Handling of tires and the suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 289 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Hybrid vehicle driving tips

For economical and ecological driving, pay attention to the following points:

◆ Using Eco drive mode

When using Eco drive mode, the torque corresponding to the accelerator pedal depression amount can be generated more smoothly than it is in normal conditions. In addition, the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling) will be minimized, improving the fuel economy. (→P. 206)

◆ Use of Hybrid System Indicator

The Eco-friendly driving is possible by keeping the indicate of Hybrid System Indicator within Eco area. (→P. 102)

◆ Shift lever operation

Shift the shift position to D when stopped at a traffic light, or driving in heavy traffic etc. Shift the shift position to P when parking. When using the N, there is no positive effect on fuel consumption. In the N, the gasoline engine operates but electricity cannot be generated. Also, when using the air conditioning system, etc., the hybrid battery (traction battery) power is consumed.

◆ Accelerator pedal/brake pedal operation

- Drive your vehicle smoothly. Avoid abrupt acceleration and deceleration. Gradual acceleration and deceleration will make more effective use of the electric motor (traction motor) without having to use gasoline engine power.
- Avoid repeated acceleration. Repeated acceleration consumes hybrid battery (traction battery) power, resulting in poor fuel consumption. Battery power can be restored by driving with the accelerator pedal slightly released.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 290 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

◆ When braking

Make sure to operate the brakes gently and in a timely manner. A greater amount of electrical energy can be regenerated when slowing down.

◆ Delays

Repeated acceleration and deceleration, as well as long waits at traffic lights, will lead to bad fuel economy. Check traffic reports before leaving and avoid delays as much as possible. When driving in a traffic jam, gently release the brake pedal to allow the vehicle to move forward slightly while avoiding overuse of the accelerator pedal. Doing so can help control excessive gasoline consumption.

◆ Highway driving

Control and maintain the vehicle at a constant speed. Before stopping at a toll booth or similar, allow plenty of time to release the accelerator and gently apply the brakes. A greater amount of electrical energy can be regenerated when slowing down.

◆ Air conditioning

Use the air conditioning only when necessary. Doing so can help reduce excessive gasoline consumption.
In summer: When the ambient temperature is high, use the recirculated air mode. Doing so will help to reduce the burden on the air conditioning system and reduce fuel consumption as well.
In winter: Because the gasoline engine will not automatically cut out until it and the interior of the vehicle are warm, it will consume fuel. Also, fuel consumption can be improved by avoiding overuse of the heater.

◆ Checking tire inflation pressure

Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure frequently. Improper tire inflation pressure can cause poor fuel economy.
Also, as snow tires can cause large amounts of friction, their use on dry roads can lead to poor fuel economy. Use tires that are appropriate for the season.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 291 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

◆ Luggage

Carrying heavy luggage will lead to poor fuel economy. Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage. Installing a large roof rack will also cause poor fuel economy.

◆ Warming up before driving

Since the gasoline engine starts up and cuts out automatically when cold, warming up the engine is unnecessary. Moreover, frequently driving short distances will cause the engine to repeatedly warm up, which can lead to excess fuel consumption.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 292 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Preparation for winter

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine/power control unit coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the 12-volt battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the front tires.

  Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle’s roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 293 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

Park the vehicle and shift the shift position to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If necessary, block the wheels to prevent inadvertent sliding or creeping.

Selecting tire chains (15-and 16-inch tires)

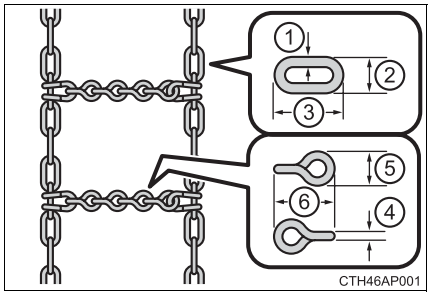
Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.
Chain size is regulated for each tire size.

Side chain:

① 3 mm (0.12 in.) in diameter
② 10 mm (0.39 in.) in width
③ 30 mm (1.18 in.) in length

Cross chain:

④ 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter
⑤ 14 mm (0.55 in.) in width
⑥ 25 mm (0.98 in.) in length



Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

■ 17-inch tires

Tire chains cannot be installed on 225/45R17 tires.

■ Tire chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the front tires. Do not install tire chains on the rear tires.
- Install tire chains on front tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 0.5 — 1.0 km (1/4 — 1/2 mile).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 294 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

■ Driving with tire chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.
- Vehicles with LDA (Lane Departure Alert): Do not use the LDA system.

NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Toyota dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

■ Fitting tire chains (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

Audio system 5

5-1. Basic Operations
Audio system types 296
Steering wheel audio switches.....297
AUX port/USB port 298

5-2. Using the audio system
Optimal use of the audio system 299

5-3. Using the radio
Radio operation 301

5-4. Playing audio CDs and MP3/WMA discs
CD player operation.....304

5-5. Using an external device
Listening to an iPod 312
Listening to a USB memory device 320
Using the AUX port.....327

5-6. Using Bluetooth® devices
Bluetooth® audio/phone.....328
Using the steering wheel switches 333
Registering a Bluetooth® device 334

5-7. “SET UP” menu
Using the “SET UP” menu (“Bluetooth” menu).....335
Using the “SET UP” menu (“Phone” menu) 340

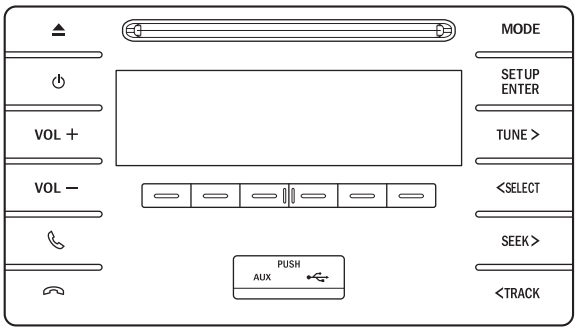
5-8. Bluetooth® Audio
Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player.....345

5-9. Bluetooth® Phone
Making a phone call.....348
Receiving a phone call.....350
Speaking on the phone.....351

5-10. Bluetooth®
Bluetooth® 353

Audio system types*

▶ Vehicles with an audio system



CTH52AP110

▶ Vehicles with a navigation/multimedia system

Owners of models equipped with a navigation/multimedia system should refer to the “Navigation and multimedia system Owner's manual”.

■ Using cellular phones

Interference may be heard through the audio system's speakers if a cellular phone is being used inside or close to the vehicle while the audio system is operating.

■ About Bluetooth®

The Bluetooth wordmark and logo are owned by Bluetooth SIG. and permission has been granted to use the trademark of the licensee Panasonic Corporation. Other trademarks and trade names are owned by various different owners.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not leave the audio system on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

■ To avoid damaging the audio system

Take care not to spill drinks or other fluids on the audio system.

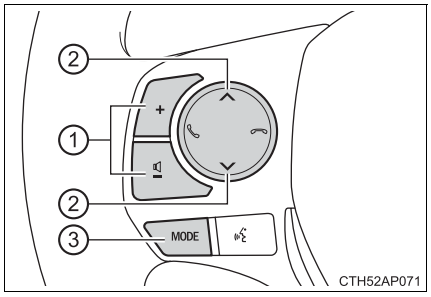
*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 297 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Steering wheel audio switches

Some audio features can be controlled using the switches on the steering wheel.
Operation may differ depending on the type of audio system or navigation system. For details, refer to the manual provided with the audio system or navigation system.

Operating the audio system using the steering wheel switches



① Volume switch:
- Press: Increases/decreases volume
- Press and hold: Continuously increases/decreases volume

② Radio mode:
- Press: Selects a radio station
- Press and hold: Seeks up/down

CD, MP3/WMA disc, Bluetooth®, iPod or USB mode:
- Press: Selects a track/file/song
- Press and hold: Selects a folder or album (MP3/WMA disc, Bluetooth®, iPod or USB)

③ “MODE” switch:
- Press: Turns the power on, selects an audio source
- Press and hold: Mutes or pauses the current operation. To cancel the mute or pause, press and hold again.

WARNING

■ To reduce the risk of an accident
Exercise care when operating the audio switches on the steering wheel.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 298 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

AUX port/USB port

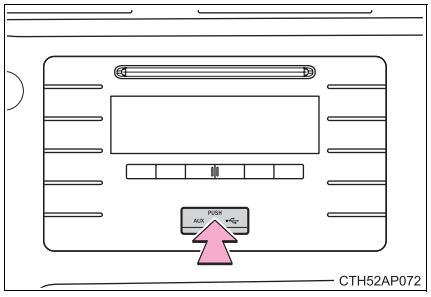
Connect an iPod, USB memory device or portable audio player to the AUX port/USB port as indicated below. Press the “MODE” button to select “iPod”, “USB” or “AUX”.

Connecting using the AUX port/USB port

■ iPod

Push the cover to open and connect an iPod using an iPod cable.

Turn on the power of the iPod if it is not turned on.



■ USB memory

Push the cover to open and connect a USB memory device.

Turn on the power of the USB memory device if it is not turned on.

■ Portable audio player

Push the cover to open and connect a portable audio player.

Turn on the power of the portable audio player if it is not turned on.

⚠ WARNING

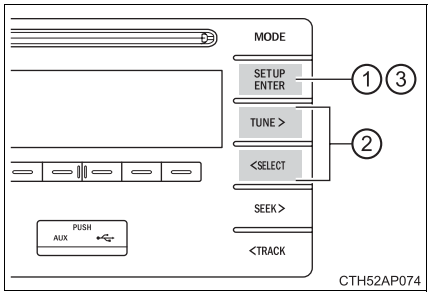
■ While driving

Do not connect a device or operate the device controls.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 299 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Optimal use of the audio system

Sound quality (treble/bass) and volume balance can be adjusted.



① Displays the current mode

② Changes the following settings
- Sound quality and volume balance (→P. 299)
- The sound quality and volume balance settings can be changed to produce the best sound.
- Automatic Sound Levelizer on/off (→P. 300)

③ Selects a mode

Using the audio control function

■ Changing sound quality modes

1 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select “Sound settings”.

3 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

4 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select the desired mode.

“Bass”, “Treble”, “Fader”, “Balance”, or “ASL”

5 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 300 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Adjusting sound quality

Pressing the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button adjusts the level.

Sound quality mode	Mode displayed	Level	Press the “<SELECT” button	Press the “TUNE>” button
Bass*	“Bass”	-5 to 5	Low	High
Treble*	“Treble”	-5 to 5		
Front/rear volume balance	“Fader”	F7 to R7	Shifts to rear	Shifts to front
Left/right volume balance	“Balance”	L7 to R7	Shifts to left	Shifts to right

*: The sound quality level is adjusted individually in each audio mode.

■ Adjusting the Automatic Sound Levelizer (ASL)

When ASL is selected, pressing the “TUNE>” button changes the amount of ASL in the order of “Low”, “Mid” and “High”.

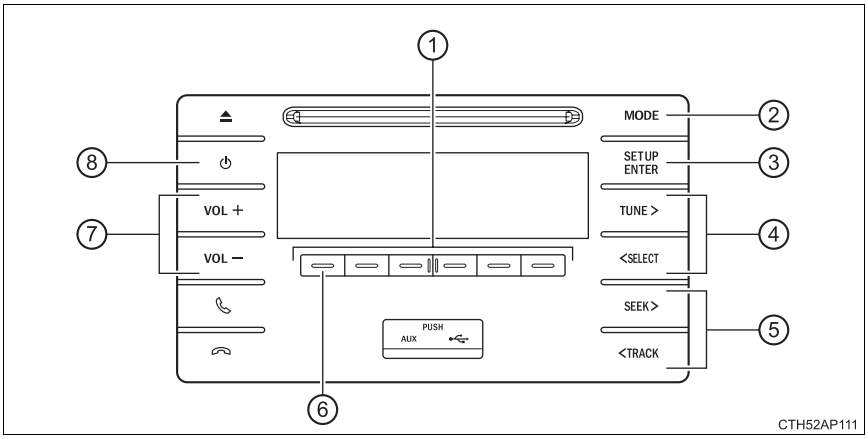
Pressing the “<SELECT” button turns ASL off.

ASL automatically adjusts the volume and tone quality according to the vehicle speed.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 301 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Radio operation

Select “AM” or “FM” to begin listening to the radio.



① Station selectors
② Mode select button
③ Select an item or AF/region code/TA mode setup
④ Adjust frequency
⑤ Seek a frequency
⑥ Display a station list
⑦ Volume
⑧ Power

Setting station presets

1 Search for a desired station by pressing the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button.

2 Press and hold a desired station selector button until you hear a beep.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 302 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Using the station list

■ Updating the station list

1 Press [ ] “List”.

The station list will be displayed.

2 Press [ ] “Update” to update the list.

“Updating” is displayed while the searching is in process, and then available stations will be listed on the display.

To cancel the updating process, press [ ] “Back”.

■ Selecting a station from the station list

1 Press [ ] “List”.

The station list will be displayed.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select a station.

3 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to tune in the station.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Back”.

RDS (Radio Data System)

This feature allows your radio to receive RDS data.

■ Listening to stations of the same network

1 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select “Radio” and press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

3 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select the desired mode: “FM AF” or “Region code”.

4 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to select “On” or “Off”.

FM AF ON mode:	The station among those of the same network with strong reception is selected.
Region code ON mode:	The station among those of the same network with strong reception and broadcasting the same program is selected.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 303 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Traffic information**

1 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select “Radio” and press the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

3 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select “FM TA” mode.

4 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to select “On” or “Off”.

TA mode: The system automatically switches to traffic information when a broadcast with a traffic information signal is received.

The station returns to the previous one when the traffic information ends.

■ **EON (Enhanced Other Network) system (for traffic announcement function)**

If the RDS station (with EON data) you are listening to is not broadcasting a traffic information program and the audio system is in the TA (traffic announcement) mode, the radio will be switched automatically to a station broadcasting a traffic information program in the EON AF list when traffic information begins.

■ **When the 12-volt battery is disconnected**

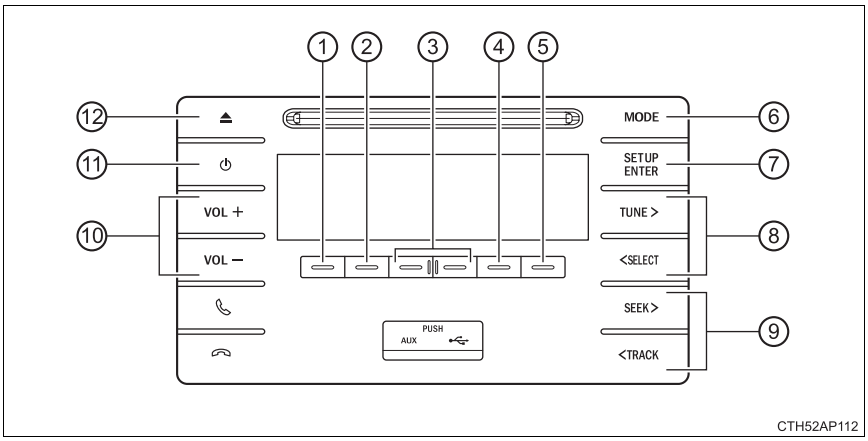
Station presets are erased.

■ **Reception sensitivity**

- Maintaining perfect radio reception at all times is difficult due to the continually changing position of the antenna, differences in signal strength and surrounding objects, such as trains, transmitters, etc.
- The radio antenna is mounted on the rear side of the roof.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 304 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

CD player operation



① Display text message
② Display folder list/track list
③ Select a folder (MP3/WMA discs only)
④ Repeat play
⑤ Random playback
⑥ Mode select button
⑦ Open the selected track/file
⑧ Select a track/file
⑨ Select a track/file, fast-forward or reverse
⑩ Volume
⑪ Power
⑫ Eject a disc

Loading a CD, MP3 or WMA disc

Insert a disc.

Ejecting a CD, MP3 or WMA disc

Press ⏏ and remove the disc.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 305 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Using the CD player

■ Selecting a track

Press the “TUNE>” or “SEEK>” button to move up or the “<SELECT” or “<TRACK” button to move down until the desired track number is displayed.

■ Selecting a track from a track list

1 Press [ ] “List”.

The track list will be displayed.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select a track.

3 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to open the selected track.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Back”.

■ Fast-forwarding and reversing a track

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold the “SEEK>” or “<TRACK” button.

■ Repeat play

Press [ ] “RPT”.

The current track is played repeatedly until [ ] “RPT” is pressed again.

■ Random playback

Press [ ] “RDM”.

Tracks are played in a random order until [ ] “RDM” is pressed again.

■ Switching the display

Press [ ] “Text”.

Track name, Artist name and CD title are shown on the display.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Text” or [ ] “Back”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 306 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Playing back an MP3 or WMA disc

■ Selecting a folder

To select the desired folder, press [ ] " ❮ " or [ ] " ❯ ".

■ Selecting a folder and file from a folder list

1 Press [ ] "List".

The folder list will be displayed.

2 Press the "<SELECT" or "TUNE>" button to select a folder or file.

3 Press the "SETUP/ENTER" button to open the selected file/ folder.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] "Back".

■ Returning to the first folder

Press and hold [ ] " ❮ " until you hear a beep.

■ Selecting a file

Press the "<SELECT", "TUNE>", "<TRACK" or "SEEK>" button to select the desired file.

■ Fast-forwarding and reversing a file

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold the "SEEK>" or "<TRACK" button.

■ Repeat play

Pressing [ ] "RPT" changes the repeat play mode in the following order:

File repeat → Folder repeat* → Off.

*: Not available when RDM (random playback) is selected

■ Random playback

Pressing [ ] "RDM" changes the random playback mode in the following order:

Folder random → Disc random → Off.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 307 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Switching the display

Press [ ] “Text”.

Track title, Artist name and Album title (MP3 only) are shown on the display.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Text” or [ ] “Back”.

■ Display

Depending on the contents recorded, the characters may not be displayed properly or may not be displayed at all.

■ Error messages

If an error message is displayed, refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Message	Cause	Correction procedures
“CD check”	• The disc is dirty or damaged. • The disc is inserted upside down.	• Clean the disc. • Insert the disc correctly.
“Error 3”	There is a malfunction within the system.	Eject the disc.
“Error 4”	An over current error has occurred.	Turn the power switch off.
“No support”	MP3/WMA files are not included on the CD.	Eject the disc.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 308 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Discs that can be used**

Discs with the marks shown below can be used.
Playback may not be possible depending on recording format or disc features, or due to scratches, dirt or deterioration.



CDs with copy-protection features may not play correctly.

■ **CD player protection feature**

To protect the internal components, playback is automatically stopped when a problem is detected.

■ **If a disc is left inside the CD player or in the ejected position for extended periods**

The disc may be damaged and may not play properly.

■ **Lens cleaners**

Do not use lens cleaners. Doing so may damage the CD player.

■ **MP3 and WMA files**

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size by using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

MP3 and WMA file and media/format compatibility is limited.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 LAYER3, MPEG2 LSF LAYER3)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 LAYER3: 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 160, 192, 224, 256, 320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 LSF LAYER3: 8, 16, 24, 32, 40, 48, 56, 64, 80, 96, 112, 128, 144, 160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 309 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (only compatible with 2-channel playback)
  Ver. 7, 8: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192 (kbps)
  Ver. 9: CBR 48, 64, 80, 96, 128, 160, 192, 256, 320 (kbps)

● Compatible media

Media that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback are CD-Rs and CD-RWs.

Playback in some instances may not be possible if the CD-R or CD-RW is not finalized. Playback may not be possible or the audio may jump if the disc is scratched or marked with fingerprints.

● Compatible disc formats

The following disc formats can be used.

- Disc formats: CD-ROM Mode 1 and Mode 2
  CD-ROM XA Mode 2, Form 1 and Form 2
- File formats: ISO9660 Level 1, Level 2, (Romeo, Joliet)
  MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows.

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum length of folder names/file names: 32 characters
- Maximum number of folders: 192 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files per disc: 255

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● Multi-session discs

As the audio system is compatible with multi-session discs, it is possible to play discs that contain MP3 and WMA files. However, only the first session can be played.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

When a disc containing MP3 or WMA files is inserted, all files on the disc are first checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend you do not write in any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.

If the discs contain a mixture of music data and MP3 or WMA format data, only music data can be played.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be mistakenly recognized and played as MP3 and WMA files. This may result in large amounts of interference and damage to the speakers.

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- CD-R or CD-RW playback may not be possible in some instances, depending on the characteristics of the disc.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- When files other than MP3 or WMA files are recorded on a disc, it may take more time to recognize the disc and in some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are the registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

⚠ WARNING

■ Certification for the CD player

CAUTION:
THIS PRODUCT IS A CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT. USE OF CONTROLS OR ADJUSTMENTS OR PERFORMANCE OF PROCEDURES OTHER THAN THOSE SPECIFIED HEREIN MAY RESULT IN HAZARDOUS RADIATION EXPOSURE. DO NOT OPEN COVERS AND DO NOT REPAIR BY YOURSELF. REFER SERVICING TO QUALIFIED PERSONNEL.

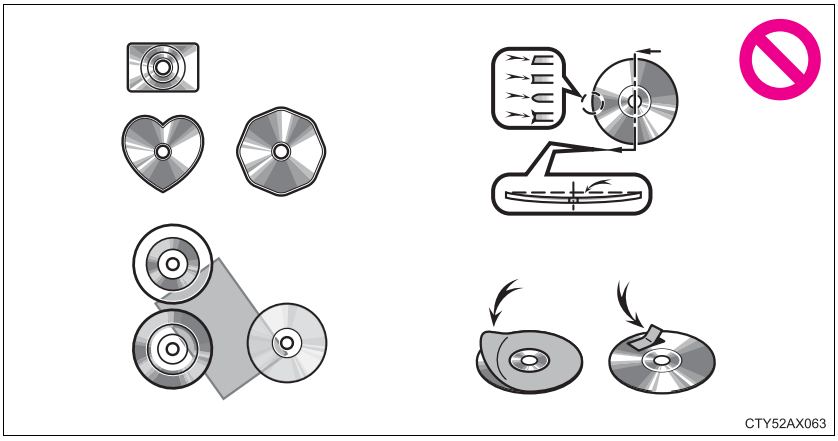
NOTICE

Discs and adapters that cannot be used

Do not use the following types of discs.

Also, do not use 8 cm (3 in.) disc adapters, Dual Discs or printable discs.

Doing so may damage the player and/or disc insert/eject function.



- Discs that have a diameter that is not 12 cm (4.7 in.).
- Low-quality or deformed discs.
- Discs with a transparent or translucent recording area.
- Discs that have tape, stickers or CD-R labels attached to them, or that have had the label peeled off.

Player precautions

Failure to follow the precautions below may result in damage to the discs or the player itself.

- Do not insert anything other than discs into the disc slot.
- Do not apply oil to the player.
- Store discs away from direct sunlight.
- Never try to disassemble any part of the player.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 312 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

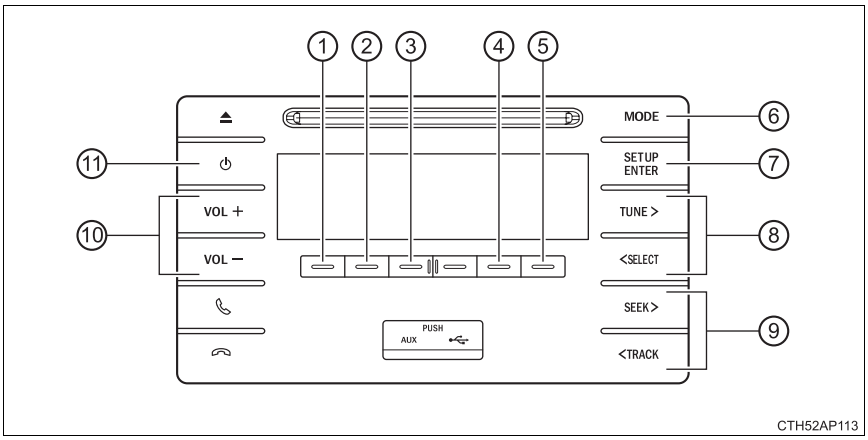
Listening to an iPod

Connecting an iPod enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers. Press the “MODE” button until “iPod” is displayed.

Connecting an iPod

→P. 298

Control panel



① Display text message
② Display lists
③ iPod menu mode
④ Repeat play
⑤ Shuffle playback
⑥ Mode select button
⑦ Set up menu
⑧ Song selector
⑨ Select a song, fast-forward or reverse
⑩ Volume
⑪ Power

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 313 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Selecting a play mode

1 Press [⇦] “Menu” to select iPod menu mode.

2 Pressing the “TUNE>” button changes the play mode in the following order:

“Playlists”→“Artists”→“Albums”→“Songs”→
“Podcasts”→“Genres”→“Composers”→“Audiobooks”

3 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to select the desired play mode.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 314 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Play mode list

Play mode	First selection	Second selection	Third selection	Fourth selection
“Playlists”	Playlist	Song	-	-
“Artists”	Artist	Album	Song	-
“Albums”	Album	Song	-	-
“Songs”	Song	-	-	-
“Podcasts”	Podcast	Episode	-	-
“Genres”	Genre	Artist	Album	Song
“Composers”	Composer	Album	Song	-
“Audiobooks”	Audiobook	Chapter	-	-

■ Selecting a list

1 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to display the first selection list.

2 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to select the desired item.

Pressing this button changes the display to the second selection list.

3 Repeat the procedure to select the desired item.

To return to the previous selection list, press “Back”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 315 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Selecting a song

Press the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>”, “<TRACK” or “SEEK>” button to select the desired song.

Selecting a song from the song list

1 Press [ ] “List”.

The song list will be displayed.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select a song.

3 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to play the song.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Back”.

Fast-forwarding and reversing a song

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold the “SEEK>” or “<TRACK” button.

Repeat play

Press [ ] “RPT”.

To cancel, press [ ] “RPT” again.

Shuffle playback

Pressing [ ] “RDM” changes the shuffle playback mode in the following order:

Track shuffle → Album shuffle → Off.

Switching the display

Press [ ] “Text”.

Track title, Artist name and Album title are shown on the display.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Text” or [ ] “Back”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 316 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Adjusting sound quality and volume balance

1 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to enter Set up menu mode.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to change sound modes. (→P. 299)

■ About iPod

Made for iPod iPhone

- “Made for iPod” and “Made for iPhone” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.
- Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.
- iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

■ iPod functions

- When an iPod is connected and the audio source is changed to iPod mode, the iPod will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.
- Depending on the iPod that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available. If a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it once again may resolve the problem.
- While connected to the system, the iPod cannot be operated with its own controls. It is necessary to use the controls of the vehicle’s audio system instead.
- When the battery level of an iPod is very low, the iPod may not operate. If so, charge the iPod before use.
- Supported models (→P. 318)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 317 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **iPod problems**

To resolve most problems encountered when using your iPod, disconnect your iPod from the vehicle iPod connection and reset it.
For instructions on how to reset your iPod, refer to your iPod Owner's Manual.

■ **Display**

→P. 307

■ **Error messages**

If an error message is displayed, refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Message	Cause/Correction procedures
"iPod error"	This indicates that the data in the iPod cannot be read.
"Error 3"	This indicates that the iPod may be malfunctioning.
"Error 4"	This indicates that an over current error has occurred.
"Error 5"	This indicates that an iPod communication error has occurred.
"Error 6"	This indicates that an authentication error has occurred.
"No songs"	This indicates that there is no music data in the iPod.
"No playlists"	This indicates that some available songs are not found in a selected playlist.
"Update your iPod"	This indicates that the version of the iPod is not compatible. Upgrade your iPod software to the latest version.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 318 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Compatible models**

The following iPod®, iPod nano®, iPod classic®, iPod touch® and iPhone® devices can be used with this system.

● Made for

- iPod (5th generation)
- iPod touch (5th generation)
- iPod touch (4th generation)
- iPod touch (Late 2009)
- iPod touch (3rd generation)
- iPod touch (2nd generation)
- iPod touch (1st generation)
- iPod classic (Late 2009)
- iPod classic (2nd generation)
- iPod classic
- iPod nano (7th generation)
- iPod nano (6th generation)
- iPod nano (5th generation)
- iPod nano (4th generation)
- iPod nano (3rd generation)
- iPod nano (2nd generation)
- iPod nano (1st generation)
- iPhone 5s
- iPhone 5c
- iPhone 5
- iPhone 4S
- iPhone 4
- iPhone 3GS
- iPhone 3G
- iPhone

Depending on differences between models or software versions etc., some models might be incompatible with this system.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

● Maximum number of lists in device: 9999

● Maximum number of songs in device: 65535

● Maximum number of songs per list: 65535

⚠ WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

Do not connect iPod or operate the controls.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 319 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

■To prevent damage to iPod

- Do not leave the iPod in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the iPod.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the iPod while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

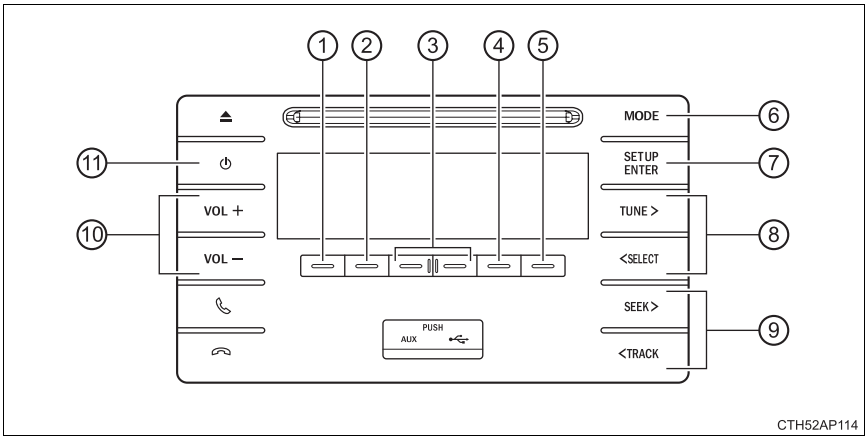
Listening to a USB memory device

Connecting a USB memory device enables you to enjoy music from the vehicle speakers. Press the “MODE” button until “USB” is displayed.

Connecting a USB memory

→P. 298

Control panel



① Display text message
② Display folder lists
③ Select a folder
④ Repeat play
⑤ Random playback
⑥ Mode select button
⑦ Open the selected file
⑧ Select a file
⑨ Select a file, fast-forward or reverse
⑩ Volume
⑪ Power

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 321 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Selecting a folder

■ Selecting folders one at a time

Press [ ] “ ❮ ” or [ ] “ ❯ ” to select the desired folder.

■ Selecting a folder and file from a folder list

1 Press [ ] “List”.

The folder list will be displayed.

2 Press the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button to select a folder or file.

3 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button to open the selected file/folder.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Back”.

■ Returning to the first folder

Press and hold [ ] “ ❮ ” until you hear a beep.

Selecting a file

Press the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>”, “<TRACK” or “SEEK>” button to select the desired file.

Fast-forwarding and reversing a file

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold the “SEEK>” or “<TRACK” button.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 322 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Repeat play

Pressing [ ] "RPT" changes the repeat playback mode in the following order:

File repeat → Folder repeat* → Off.

*: Not available when RDM (random playback) is selected

Random playback

Pressing [ ] "RDM" changes the random playback mode in the following order:

Folder random → Disc random → Off.

Switching the display

Press [ ] "Text".

Track title, Artist name and Album title (MP3 only) are displayed on the display.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] "Text" or [ ] "Back".

■USB memory functions

- Depending on the USB memory that is connected to the system, the device itself may not be operable and certain functions may not be available. If the device is inoperable or a function is unavailable due to a malfunction (as opposed to a system specification), disconnecting the device and reconnecting it may resolve the problem.
- If the USB memory still does not begin operation after being disconnected and reconnected, format the device.

■Display

→P. 307

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 323 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Error messages

If an error message is displayed, refer to the following table and take the appropriate measures. If the problem is not rectified, take the vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Message	Cause/Correction procedures
“USB error”	This indicates that the data in the USB memory cannot be read.
“Error 3”	This indicates that the USB memory may be malfunctioning.
“Error 4”	This indicates that an over current error has occurred.
“Error 5”	This indicates that the USB memory communication error has occurred.
“No music”	This indicates that no MP3/WMA files are included on the USB memory device.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 324 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **USB memory**

● Compatible devices

USB memory that can be used for MP3 and WMA playback

● Compatible device formats

The following device formats can be used:

- USB communication formats: USB 2.0 FS (12 Mbps)
- File formats: FAT12/16/32 (Windows)
- Correspondence class: Mass storage class

MP3 and WMA files written in any format other than those listed above may not play correctly, and their file names and folder names may not be displayed correctly.

Items related to standards and limitations are as follows:

- Maximum directory hierarchy: 8 levels
- Maximum number of folders in a device: 999 (including the root)
- Maximum number of files in a device: 9999
- Maximum number of files per folder: 255

● MP3 and WMA files

MP3 (MPEG Audio LAYER 3) is a standard audio compression format.

Files can be compressed to approximately 1/10 of their original size using MP3 compression.

WMA (Windows Media Audio) is a Microsoft audio compression format.

This format compresses audio data to a size smaller than that of the MP3 format.

There is a limit to the MP3 and WMA file standards that can be used and to the media/formats on which the files are recorded.

● MP3 file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  MP3 (MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III, MPEG2.5)
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 16, 22.05, 24 (kHz)
  MPEG2.5: 8, 11.025, 12 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates (compatible with VBR)
  MPEG1 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 32-320 (kbps)
  MPEG2 AUDIO LAYERII, III: 8-160 (kbps)
  MPEG2.5: 8-160 (kbps)
- Compatible channel modes: stereo, joint stereo, dual channel and monaural

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 325 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

● WMA file compatibility

- Compatible standards
  WMA Ver. 7, 8, 9
- Compatible sampling frequencies
  HIGH PROFILE 32, 44.1, 48 (kHz)
- Compatible bit rates
  HIGH PROFILE 32-320 (kbps, CBR)

● File names

The only files that can be recognized as MP3/WMA and played are those with the extension .mp3 or .wma.

● ID3 and WMA tags

ID3 tags can be added to MP3 files, making it possible to record the track title, artist name, etc.

The system is compatible with ID3 Ver. 1.0, 1.1, and Ver. 2.2, 2.3, 2.4 ID3 tags. (The number of characters is based on ID3 Ver. 1.0 and 1.1.)

WMA tags can be added to WMA files, making it possible to record the track title and artist name in the same way as with ID3 tags.

● MP3 and WMA playback

- When a device containing MP3 or WMA files is connected, all files in the USB memory are checked. Once the file check is finished, the first MP3 or WMA file is played. To make the file check finish more quickly, we recommend that you do not include any files other than MP3 or WMA files or create any unnecessary folders.
- When the USB memory is connected and the audio source is changed to USB memory mode, the USB memory will start playing the first file in the first folder. If the same device is removed and reinserted (and the contents have not been changed), the USB memory will resume play from the same point in which it was last used.

● Extensions

If the file extensions .mp3 and .wma are used for files other than MP3 and WMA files, they will be skipped (not played).

● Playback

- To play MP3 files with steady sound quality, we recommend a fixed bit rate of at least 128 kbps and a sampling frequency of 44.1 kHz.
- There is a wide variety of freeware and other encoding software for MP3 and WMA files on the market, and depending on the status of the encoding and the file format, poor sound quality or noise at the start of playback may result. In some cases, playback may not be possible at all.
- Microsoft, Windows, and Windows Media are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 326 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ Caution while driving

Do not connect USB memory or operate the controls.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to USB memory

- Do not leave USB memory in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to the device.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary pressure to the USB memory while it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the port.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 327 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Using the AUX port

This port can be used to connect a portable audio device and listen to it through the vehicle's speakers. Press the "MODE" button until "AUX" is displayed.

Connecting a portable player

→P. 298

■ **Operating portable audio devices connected to the audio system**

The volume can be adjusted using the vehicle's audio controls. All other adjustments must be made on the portable audio device itself.

■ **When using a portable audio device connected to the power outlet**

Noise may occur during playback. Use the power source of the portable audio device.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 328 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Bluetooth® audio/phone

The following can be performed using Bluetooth® wireless communication:

■ **Bluetooth® audio**

The Bluetooth® audio system enables you to enjoy music on a portable player from the vehicle speakers via wireless communication.

This audio system supports Bluetooth®, a wireless data system capable of playing portable audio music without cables. If your portable player does not support Bluetooth®, the Bluetooth® audio system cannot be used.

■ **Bluetooth® phone (hands-free phone system)**

This system supports Bluetooth®, which allows you to make or receive calls without using cables to connect a cellular phone to the system, and without operating the cellular phone.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 329 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Device registration/connection flow

1. Register a Bluetooth® device to be used with the audio system (→P. 334)

2. Connect a registered Bluetooth® device to be used (→P. 335, 336)

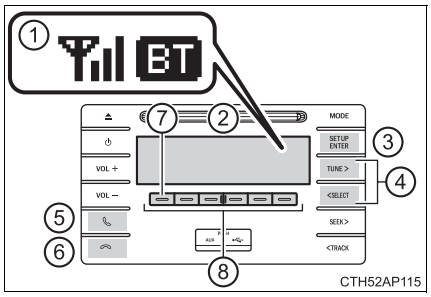
3. Set automatic connection of the device (→P. 338)

4. Check the Bluetooth® connection condition (→P. 330)

To be used for audio	To be used for hands-free phone
5. Use Bluetooth® audio (→P. 345)	5. Use Bluetooth® phone (→P. 348)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 330 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Audio unit



① Bluetooth® connection status

If “BT” is not displayed, the Bluetooth® audio/phone cannot be used.

② Display

A message, name, number, etc. is displayed.

Lower-case characters and special characters cannot be displayed.

③ Displays the set up menu/inputs the selected item

④ Select items such as menu and number

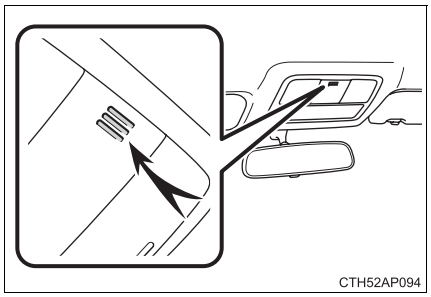
⑤ Off-hook switch
Turns the hands-free system on/starts a call

⑥ On-hook switch
Turns the hands-free system off/ends a call/refuses a call

⑦ Displays information that is too long to be displayed at one time on the display (press and hold)

⑧ Select speed dials

Microphone



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 331 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Menu list of the Bluetooth® audio/phone

To enter a menu, press the “SETUP/ENTER” button and navigate menus by using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons:

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Operation details
“Bluetooth*”	“Pairing”	-	Register a Bluetooth® device
	“List phone”	-	List the registered cellular phones
	“List audio”	-	List the registered portable players
	“Passkey”	-	Change the passkey
	“BT power”	-	Set automatic connection of the device on or off
	“Bluetooth* info”	“Device Name” “Device Address”	Display the device status
	“Display setting”	-	Set the automatic connection confirmation display on or off
	“Reset”	-	Initialize the settings

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 332 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

First menu	Second menu	Third menu	Operation details
“PHONE” or “TEL”	“Phonebook”	“Add contacts”	Add a new number
		“Add SD”	Register a speed dial
		“Delete call history”	Delete a number stored in the call history
		“Delete contacts”	Delete a number stored in the phonebook
		“Delete other PB”	Delete a phonebook’s data
	“HF sound setting”	“Call volume”	Set call volume
		“Ringtone volume”	Set ringtone volume
		“Ringtone”	Set the ringtone
	“Transfer history”	-	Transfer the call histories

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ **Bluetooth® audio/phone system functions**

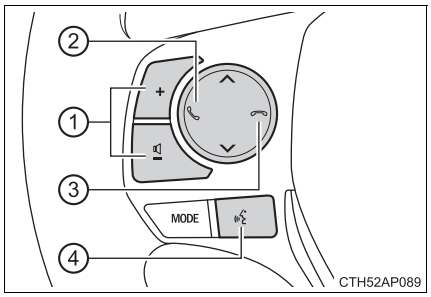
Depending on the Bluetooth® device, certain functions may not be available.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 333 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Using the steering wheel switches

The steering wheel switches can be used to operate a connected cellular phone or portable digital audio player (portable player).

Operating a Bluetooth® phone using the steering wheel switches



① Volume
The voice guidance volume cannot be adjusted using these buttons.

② Off-hook switch
Turns the hands-free system on/starts a call

③ On-hook switch
Turns the hands-free system off/ends a call/refuses a call

④ Talk switch
A message will be displayed.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 334 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Registering a Bluetooth® device

Before using the Bluetooth® audio/phone, it is necessary to register a Bluetooth® device in the system. You can register up to 5 Bluetooth® devices.

How to register a Bluetooth® device

1 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button and select “Bluetooth*” using the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button.

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

2 Press the “SETUP/ENTER” button and select “Pairing” using the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button.

A passkey will be displayed.

3 SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) incompatible Bluetooth® devices: Input the passkey into the device.

SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) compatible Bluetooth® devices: Select “Yes” to register the device. Depending on the type of device, it may register automatically.

If a Bluetooth® device has both music player and cellular phone functions, both functions will be registered at the same time. When deleting the device, both functions will be deleted at the same time.

If the off-hook switch is pressed and the “PHONE” or “TEL” mode is entered when no phones have been registered, the registration screen will be automatically displayed.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 335 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Using the “SET UP” menu (“Bluetooth*” menu)

Registering a Bluetooth® device in the system allows the system to function. The following functions can be used for registered devices:

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Registering a portable player

Select “Pairing” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons (→P. 331), and perform the procedure for registering a portable player. (→P. 334)

Listing the registered cellular phones

Select “List phone” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331) The list of registered cellular phones will be displayed.

● Connecting the registered cellular phone to the audio system

1 Select the name of the cellular phone to be connected using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Select” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

● Deleting a registered cellular phone

1 Select the name of the cellular phone to be deleted using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Delete” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

3 Press [ ] “Yes”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 336 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

● Disconnecting the registered cellular phone from the audio system

1 Select the name of the cellular to be disconnected using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Disconnect” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

3 Press [ ] “Yes”.

Listing the registered portable players

Select “List audio” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331) The list of registered portable players will be displayed.

● Connecting the registered portable player to the audio system

1 Select the name of the portable player to be connected using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Select” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

● Deleting the registered portable player

1 Select the name of the portable player to be deleted using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Delete” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

3 Press [ ] “Yes”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 337 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

● Disconnecting the registered portable player from the audio system

1 Select the name of the portable player to be disconnected using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Disconnect” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

3 Press [ ] “Yes”.

● Selecting the connection method

1 Select the name of the desired portable player using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select “Connection method” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

3 Select “From vehicle” or “From audio” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

Changing the passkey

1 Select “Passkey” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331)

2 Input a 4 to 8-digit passkey using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

Input the number 1 digit at a time.

3 When the entire number to be registered as a passkey has been input, press [ ] “Enter”.

If the passkey to be registered has 8 digits, pressing [ ] “Enter” is not necessary.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 338 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Setting automatic connection of the device on or off

If “BT power” is set to on, the registered device will be connected automatically when the power switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode.

1 Select “BT power” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331)

2 Select “On” or “Off” using the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

Displaying the device status

Select “Bluetooth* info” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331)

*: Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

- Displaying the device name

  Select “Device name” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

- Displaying the device address

  Select “Device address” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

Setting the automatic connection confirmation display to on or off

If the “Display setting” is set to on, the portable player connection status will be displayed when the power switch is turned to ACCESSORY or ON mode.

1 Select “Display setting” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331)

2 Select “On” or “Off” using the “SETUP/ENTER” button.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 339 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Initialization

Select “Reset” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331)

● Initializing the sound settings

Select “Sound settings” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

For details about sound settings: →P. 343

● Initializing the device information

Select “Car Device Info” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

The user set passkey and automatic confirmation display will be returned to their default settings.

● Initializing all the settings

Select “Reset all” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 340 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Using the “SET UP” menu (“Phone” menu)

Adding a new phone number

Select “Add contacts” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331)

- Transferring all contacts from the cellular phone

  Select “Overwrite all” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

- Transferring one contact from the cellular phone

  Select “Add contact” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

Setting speed dials

1. Select “Add SD” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331)
2. Select the desired data using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.
3. Press and hold the desired preset button.

   For details about setting speed dials from the call history: →P. 349

   For details about deleting speed dials: →P. 348

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 341 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Deleting call histories

Select “Delete call history” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331)

● Deleting outgoing call history

1 Select “Outgoing calls” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select the desired phone number using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

To delete all outgoing call history data, press [ ] “All” and then press [ ] “Yes”.

● Deleting incoming call history

1 Select “Incoming calls” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select the desired phone number using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

To delete all incoming call history data, press [ ] “All” and then press [ ] “Yes”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 342 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

● Deleting missed call history

1 Select “Missed calls” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select the desired phone number using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

To delete all missed call history data, press [ ] “All” and then press [ ] “Yes”.

● Deleting a number from all call histories (Outgoing calls, Incoming calls and Missed calls)

1 Select “All calls” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select the desired phone number using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

To delete all of the call history data, press [ ] “All” and then press [ ] “Yes”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 343 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Deleting a registered phone number

1 Select “Delete contacts” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331)

2 Select the desired phone number using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

To delete all of the registered phone numbers, Press [ ] “All” and then press [ ] “Yes”.

Press [ ] “A-Z” to display the registered names in alphabetical order of the initial.

Deleting another cellular phone’s phonebook

1 Select “Delete other PB” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331)

2 Select the desired phonebook using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

Setting call volume

1 Select “Call volume” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331)

2 Change the call volume.

To decrease the volume: Press the “<SELECT” button.

To increase the volume: Press the “TUNE>” button.

To set the volume, press [ ] “Back”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 344 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Setting ringtone volume

1 Select “Ringtone volume” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331)

2 Change the ringtone volume.

To decrease the volume: Press the “<SELECT” button.

To increase the volume: Press the “TUNE>” button.

To set the volume, press [ ] “Back”.

Setting ringtone

1 Select “Ringtone” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons. (→P. 331)

2 Using the “<SELECT” or “TUNE>” button, select a ringtone (1 - 3).

To set the selected ringtone, press [ ] “Back”.

Transferring call histories

Select “Transfer history” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press [ ] “Yes”.

■ **Phone number**

Up to 1000 names can be stored.

■ **Call history**

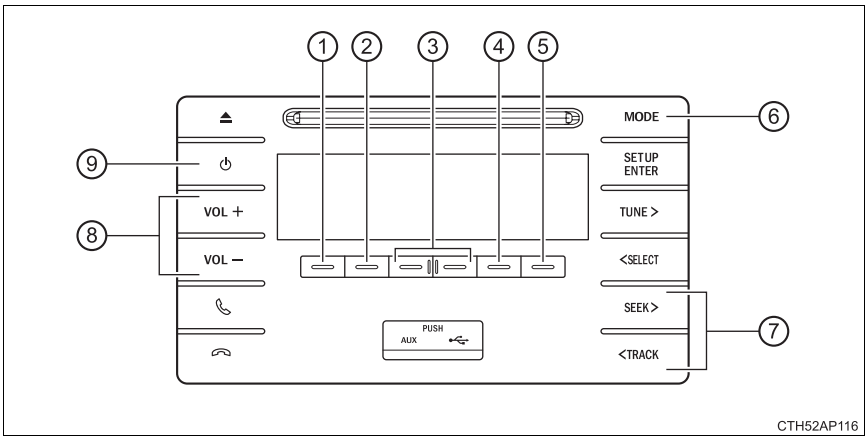
Up to 10 numbers can be stored in each of the outgoing, incoming and missed call history memories.

■ **Limitation of number of digits**

A phone number that exceeds 24 digits cannot be registered.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 345 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Operating a Bluetooth® enabled portable player



① Display text message
② Playback/pause
③ Select an album
④ Repeat play
⑤ Random playback
⑥ Playback
⑦ Select a track, fast-forward or reverse
⑧ Volume
⑨ Power

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 346 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Selecting an album

Press [ ] “ ❮ ” or [ ] “ ❯ ” to select the desired album.

Selecting a track

Press the “SEEK>” or “<TRACK” button to select the desired track.

Playing and pausing a track

Press [ ] “ ▶❚❚ ” to play or pause a track.

Fast-forwarding and reversing a track

To fast-forward or reverse, press and hold the “SEEK>” or “<TRACK” button.

Random playback

Pressing [ ] “RDM” changes the random playback mode in the following order:
Album random → All track random → Off

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 347 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Repeat play

Pressing [ ] “RPT” changes the repeat play mode in the following order:

Track repeat → Album repeat → Off

Switching the display

Press [ ] “Text”.

Track title and artist name are displayed on the display.

To return to the previous display, press [ ] “Text” or [ ] “Back”.

Bluetooth® audio system functions

Depending on the portable player that is connected to the system, certain functions may not be available.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 348 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Making a phone call

To enter the “PHONE” or “TEL” mode, press the off-hook switch.

Dialing by selecting a name

1 Select “Phonebook” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select the desired name using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press the off-hook switch.

By pressing [ ] “Add S. Dial” and then one of the speed dial buttons while the desired name is selected, the selected item can be registered as a speed dial.

Press [ ] “A-Z” to display the registered names in alphabetical order of the initial.

Speed dialing

1 Select “Speed dials” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Press the desired preset button and press the off-hook switch.

To delete a registered speed dial, after selecting the desired preset button press [ ] “Delete” and then press [ ] “Yes”.

Dialing by entering the number

1 Select “Dial by number” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Enter the phone number and press the off-hook switch.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 349 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Dialing from call histories

1 Select “All calls”, “Missed calls”, “Incoming calls” or “Outgoing calls” using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons.

2 Select the desired number using the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons and press the off-hook switch.

The following operations can be performed:

- Registering a number as a speed dial

  Press [ ] “Add S. Dial” and then press the desired preset button.

- Deleting the selected number

  Press [ ] “Delete” and press [ ] “Yes”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 350 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Receiving a phone call

Answering the phone

Press the off-hook switch.

Refusing a call

Press the on-hook switch.

Receiving a call when on another call

Press the off-hook switch.

Pressing the off-hook switch again returns you to the previous call.

Adjusting the ringtone volume when receiving a call

Change the ringtone volume using the “VOL-” or “VOL+” button.

To decrease the volume: Press the “VOL-” button.

To increase the volume: Press the “VOL+” button.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 351 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Speaking on the phone

Transferring a call

A call can be transferred between the cellular phone and system while dialing, receiving a call, or during a call. Use one of the following methods:

a. Operate the cellular phone.

Refer to the manual that comes with the cellular phone for the operation of the phone.

b. Press [ ] * “Phone”.

*: This operation can be performed only when transferring a call from the cellular phone to the system during a call.

Muting your voice

Press [ ] “Mute”.

Inputting digits

Press [ ] “0 - 9” and use the “<SELECT”, “TUNE>” and “SETUP/ENTER” buttons to input the desired digits.

- To send the input digits, press [ ] “Send”.
- When finished, press [ ] “Wait” to return to the previous screen.

Setting call volume

Change the call volume using the “VOL-” or “VOL+” button.

To decrease the volume: Press the “VOL-” button.

To increase the volume: Press the “VOL+” button.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 352 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **When talking on the phone**

- Do not talk at the same time as the other party.
- Keep the volume of the received voice down. Otherwise, voice echo will increase.

■ **Automatic volume adjustment**

When vehicle speed is 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the volume automatically increases. The volume returns to the previous volume setting when vehicle speed drops to 70 km/h (43 mph) or less.

■ **Phone call system functions**

Depending on the cellular phone, certain functions may not be available.

■ **Situations where the system may not recognize your voice**

- When driving on a rough road
- When driving at high speeds
- When air is blowing out of the vents onto the microphone
- When the air conditioning fan emits a loud noise

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 353 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Bluetooth®

■When using the Bluetooth® audio/Phone

●In the following situations, the system may not function.

- The portable player does not support Bluetooth®
- The cellular phone is located outside the service area
- The Bluetooth® device is switched off
- The Bluetooth® device has a low battery
- The Bluetooth® device is not connected to the system
- The Bluetooth® device is behind the seat or in the glove box or console box, or is touching or covered by metal objects

●There may be a delay if a cellular phone connection is made during Bluetooth® audio playback.

●Depending on the type of portable audio player that is connected to the system, operation may differ slightly and certain functions may not be available.

■When transferring ownership of the vehicle

Be sure to initialize the system to prevent personal data from being improperly accessed. (→P. 339)

■About Bluetooth®

Bluetooth is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.



■Compatible models

●Bluetooth® specifications:
Ver. 1.1, or higher (recommended: Ver. 2.1 + EDR or higher)

●Following Profiles:

- A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) Ver. 1.0, or higher (recommended: Ver. 1.2 or higher)
- AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (recommended: Ver. 1.3 or higher)

Portable players must correspond to the above specifications in order to be connected to the Bluetooth® audio system. However, please note that some functions may be limited depending on the type of portable player.

●Cellular phone

- HFP (Hands Free Profile) Ver. 1.0 or higher (recommended: Ver. 1.5)
- OPP (Object Push Profile) Ver. 1.1
- PBAP (Phone Book Access Profile) Ver. 1.0

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 354 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Certification

CE The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address: http://www.ptc.panasonic.eu/ When checking DOC, access the above mentioned URL and enter the following Model No. into the Keyword Search (Model No.) from a download folder. Model No. YEP0PTA606A0
Hereby, Panasonic, declares that this YEP0PTA606A0 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.
С настоящето, Panasonic, декларира, че YEP0PTA606A0 е в съот ветствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими раз поредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.
Panasonic tímto prohlašuje, že tento YEP0PTA606A0 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.
Undertegnede Panasonic erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr YEP0PTA606A0 overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Hierbij verklaart Panasonic dat het toestel YEP0PTA606A0 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.
Käesolevaga kinnitab Panasonic seadme YEP0PTA606A0 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.
Panasonic vakuuttaa täten että YEP0PTA606A0 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.
Par la présente Panasonic déclare que l'appareil YEP0PTA606A0 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.
Hiermit erklärt Panasonic, dass sich das Gerät YEP0PTA606A0 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den ü brigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.
ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ Panasonic ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ YEP0PTA606A0 ΣΥΜ ΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕ Σ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.
Alulírott, Panasonic nyilatkozom, hogy a YEP0PTA606A0 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyé b elõírásainak.
Con la presente Panasonic dichiara che questo YEP0PTA606A0 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Ar šo Panasonic deklarē, ka YEP0PTA606A0 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.
Šiuo Panasonic deklaruoja, kad šis YEP0PTA606A0 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.
Hawnhekk, Panasonic, jiddikjara li dan YEP0PTA606A0 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.
Niniejszym Panasonic oświadcza, że YEP0PTA606A0 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.
Panasonic declara que este YEP0PTA606A0 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Prin prezenta, Panasonic, declară că aparatul YEP0PTA606A0 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.
Panasonic týmto vyhlasuje, že YEP0PTA606A0 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.
Panasonic izjavlja, da je ta YEP0PTA606A0 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.
Por medio de la presente Panasonic declara que el YEP0PTA606A0 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.
Härmed intygar Panasonic att denna YEP0PTA606A0 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.
Hér með lýsir Panasonic yfir því að YEP0PTA606A0 er i samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.
Panasonic erklærer herved at utstyret YEP0PTA606A0 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.
Ovim Panasonic, izjavljuje da je YEP0PTA606A0 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.
Ovim, Panasonic, deklariše da je YEP0PTA606A0 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 356 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ While driving

Do not operate the portable audio player, cellular phone or connect a device to the Bluetooth® system.

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- Your audio unit is fitted with Bluetooth® antennas. People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the Bluetooth® antennas. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.
- Before using Bluetooth® devices, users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When leaving the vehicle

Do not leave your portable audio player or cellular phone in the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle may become hot, causing damage to the portable audio player or cellular phone.

Interior features 6

6-1. Using the air conditioning system and defogger

Automatic air conditioning system 358

Seat heaters 367

6-2. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list.....368

• Interior lights.....369

• Vanity lights 369

• Personal lights.....370

6-3. Using the storage features

List of storage features 372

• Glove box 373

• Console box 373

• Bottle holders 374

• Cup holders 375

• Auxiliary boxes 376

Luggage compartment features.....377

6-4. Other interior features

Other interior features.....383

• Sun visors.....383

• Vanity mirrors 383

• Clock 384

• Portable ashtray 384

• Power outlets.....385

• Armrest.....386

• Assist grips 386

• Coat hooks 387

• Panoramic roof shade.....387

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 358 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Automatic air conditioning system

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

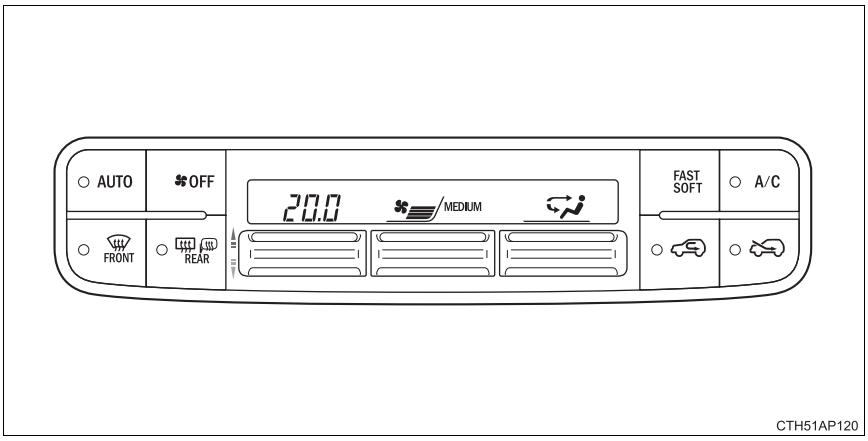
The illustrations below are for left-hand drive vehicles.

The button positions and shapes will differ for right-hand drive vehicles.

Also, the display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.

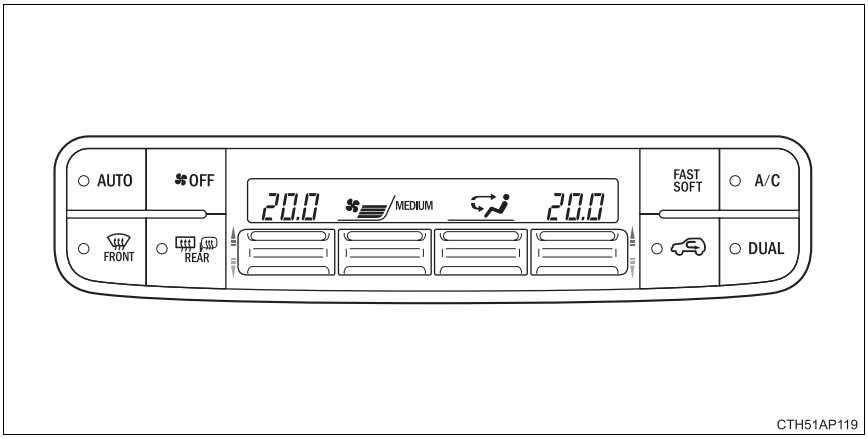
Air conditioning controls

▶ Without dual control mode



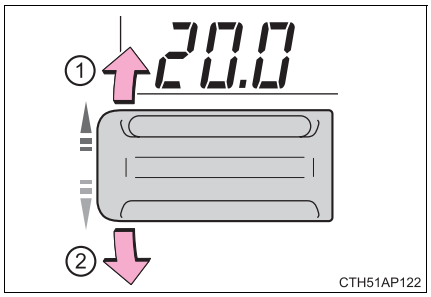
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 359 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

▶ With dual control mode



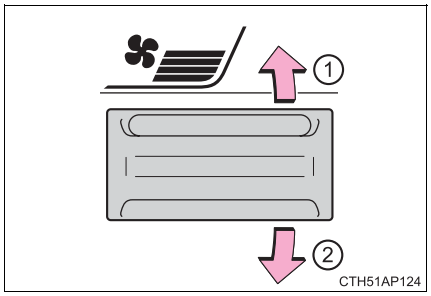
■ Adjusting the temperature setting

① Increases the temperature
② Decreases the temperature



■ Fan speed setting

① Increases the fan speed
② Decreases the fan speed



■ Change the airflow mode

To change the airflow mode, move the airflow change knob upward or downward.

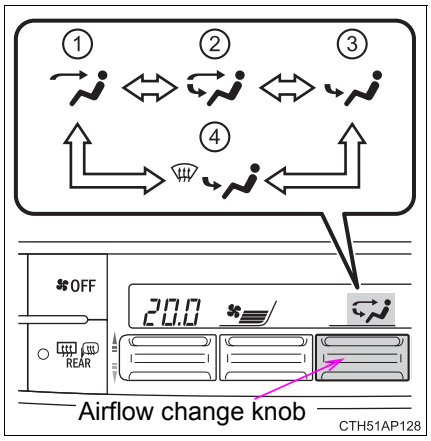
The air outlets used are changed each time the knob is operated.

① Air flows to the upper body.

② Air flows to the upper body and feet.

③ Air flows to the feet.

④ Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.



Using automatic mode

1 Press AUTO .

The dehumidification function begins to operate. Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

2 Adjust the temperature setting.

3 To stop the operation, press OFF .

■ Automatic mode indicator

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated is maintained.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 361 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately (vehicles with dual control mode)

To turn on the dual control mode, perform any of the following procedures:

● Press 

.

● Adjust the passenger's side temperature setting.

The indicator comes on when the dual control mode is on.

Other functions

■ Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

▶ Vehicles without dual control mode

Press  to change to recirculated air mode.

Press  to change to outside air mode.

When recirculated air mode is selected, the indicator on  illuminates.

When outside air mode is selected, the indicator on  illuminates.

▶ Vehicles with dual control mode

Press  .

The mode switches between outside air mode (indicator off) and recirculated air mode (indicator on) each time  is pressed.

■ **Defogging the windshield**

Defoggers are used to defog the windshield and front side windows.

Press 

.

The dehumidification function operates and fan speed increases.
Set the outside/recirculated air mode button to the outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)
To defog the windshield and the front side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press 

again when the windshield is defogged.

■ **Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors**

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Press 

.

The defoggers will automatically turn off after a period of time.

■ **Blower customization**

Fan speed settings can be changed.

1 Press 

.

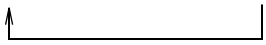
2 Press 

.

3 Each time 

is pressed, the fan speed changes as follows.

“MEDIUM”→“SOFT”→“FAST”



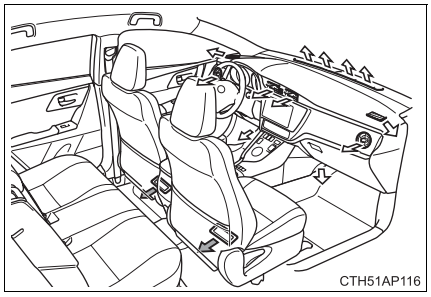
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 363 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Air outlets

■ Location of air outlets

The air outlets and air volume change according to the selected airflow mode.
(→P. 360)

⇦ : Some models

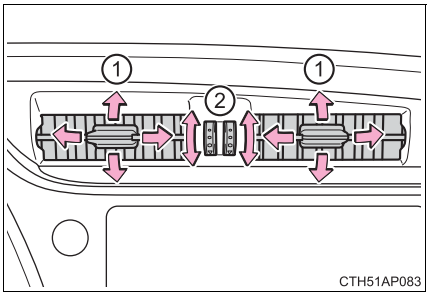

CTH51AP116

■ Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

▶ Front center outlets

① Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.

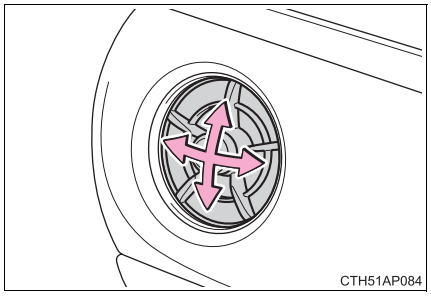
② Turn the knob up to open the vent and down to close the vent.



CTH51AP083

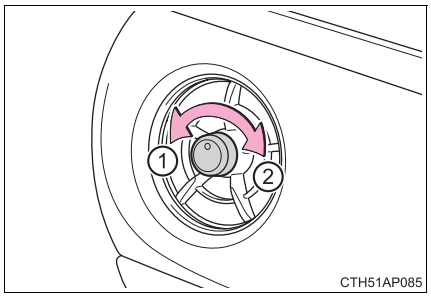
▶ Front side outlets

Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down.


CTH51AP084

① Open the vent

② Close the vent



■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode**

In Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency:

- Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
- Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected

To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Adjust the fan speed
- Turn off Eco drive mode

■ **Using automatic mode**

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.

Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after [○ AUTO] is pressed.

■ **Fogging up of the windows**

- The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Turning [○ A/C] on will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.
- If you turn [○ A/C] off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 365 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Outside/recirculated air mode**

- When driving on dusty roads such as tunnels or in heavy traffic, set the outside/recirculated air mode button to the recirculated air mode. This is effective in preventing outside air from entering the vehicle interior. During cooling operation, setting the recirculated air mode will also cool the vehicle interior effectively.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting or the inside temperature.

■ **When the outside temperature is low**

The dehumidification function may not operate even when A/C is pressed.

■ **Ventilation and air conditioning odors**

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

■ **Air conditioning filter**

→P. 431

■ **Customization**

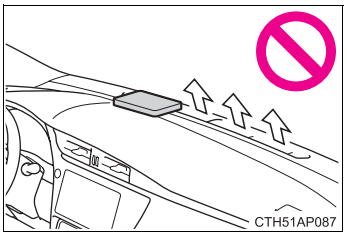
Settings (e.g. air conditioning setting) can be changed.
(Customizable features →P. 540)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 366 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

- Do not use  during cool air operation in extremely humid weather.
  The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.
- Do not place anything on the instrument panel which may cover the air outlets. Otherwise, air flow may be obstructed, preventing the windshield defoggers from defogging.



■ To prevent burns

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces when the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent 12-volt battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 367 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Seat heaters*

WARNING

- Care should be taken to prevent injury if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the seats when the heater is on:
  - Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are fatigued
  - Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)
- Observe the following precautions to prevent the minor burns or overheating
  - Do not cover the seat with a blanket or cushion when using the seat heater.
  - Do not use seat heater more than necessary.

NOTICE

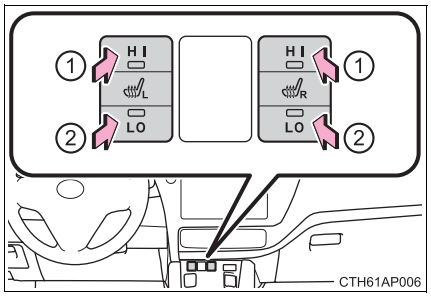
- Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.
- To prevent 12-volt battery discharge, do not use the functions when the hybrid system is off.

Press the switch.

① High temperature

② Low temperature

The indicator light comes on when the switch is on.

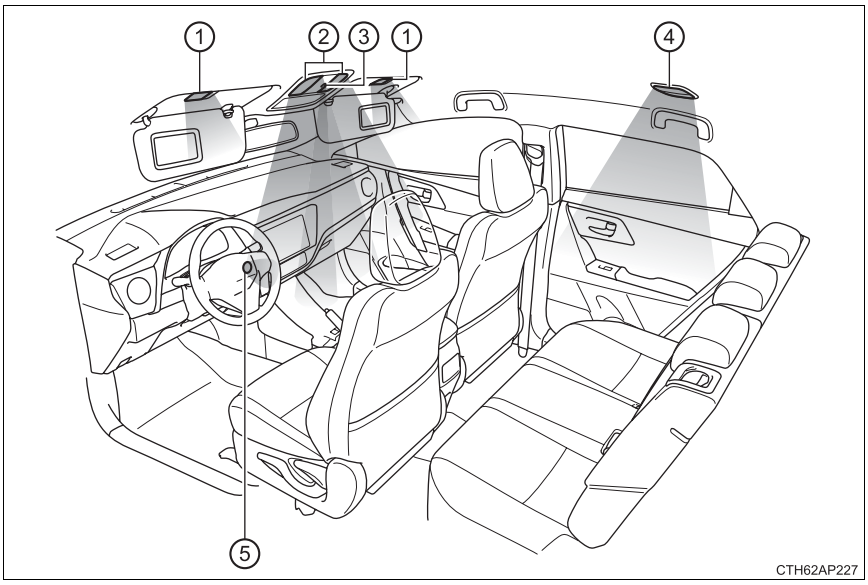


- The seat heaters can be used when the power switch is in ON mode.
- When not in use, put the switch in the neutral position. The indicator will turn off.

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 368 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Interior lights list



① Vanity lights (if equipped) (→P. 369)

② Front interior/front personal lights (→P. 369, 370)

③ Shift lever light

④ Rear interior light (if equipped) (→P. 369)
Rear personal light (if equipped) (→P. 370)

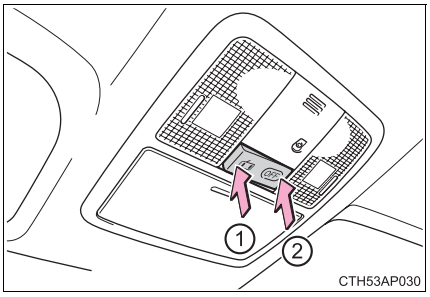
⑤ Power switch light

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 369 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Interior lights

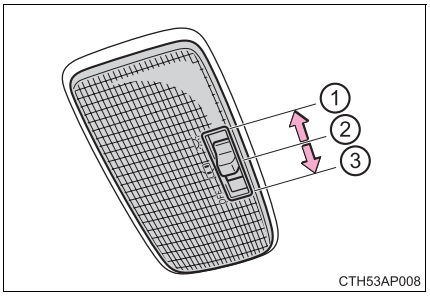
■ Front

① Door position
② Off



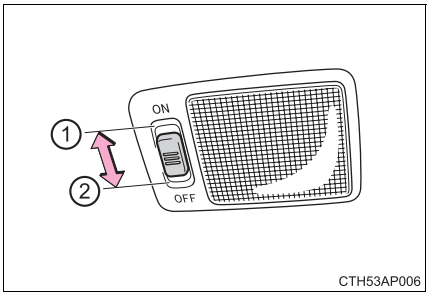
■ Rear (if equipped)

① On
② Door position
③ Off



Vanity lights (if equipped)

① On
② Off



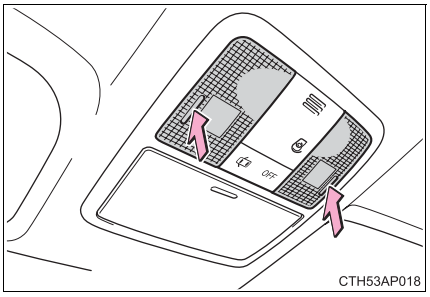
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 370 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Personal lights

■ Front

On/off

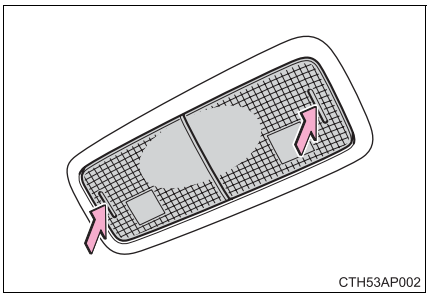
When the lights are on due to the door link switch, a light will not turn off even if its lens is pressed.



■ Rear (if equipped)

On/off

When the front interior lights are on due to the door link switch, a light will not turn off even if its lens is pressed.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 371 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Illuminated entry system**

When the interior light switch is in the “DOOR” position, the interior lights and power switch light automatically turn on/off according to power switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked and whether the doors are open/closed.

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

The following lights will turn off automatically after 20 minutes:

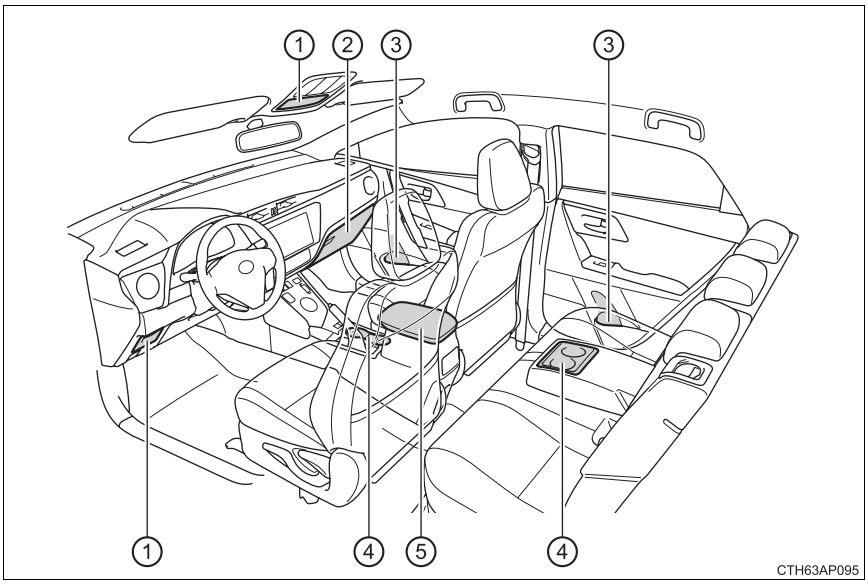
- Personal/interior lights
- Luggage compartment light
- Vanity lights (if equipped)

■ **Customization that can be configured at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional**

Settings (e.g. the time elapsed before lights turn off) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P. 540)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 372 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

List of storage features



① Auxiliary boxes (if equipped) (→P. 376)
② Glove box (→P. 373)
③ Bottle holders (→P. 374)
④ Cup holders (if equipped) (→P. 375)
⑤ Console box (→P. 373)

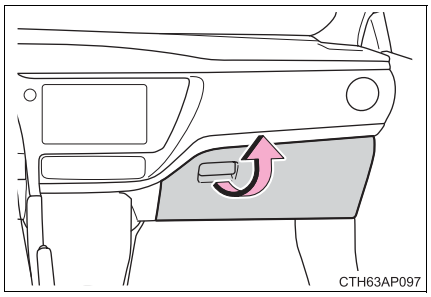
⚠ WARNING

- Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:
  - Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
  - Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.
- When driving or when the storage compartments are not in use, keep the lids closed.
  In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open lid or the items stored inside.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 373 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

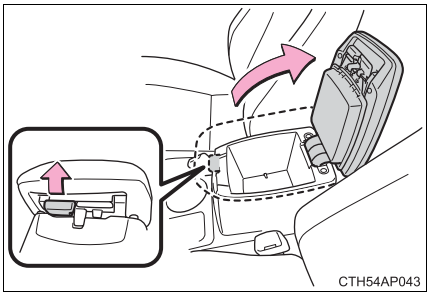
Glove box

Pull up the lever to open the glove box.



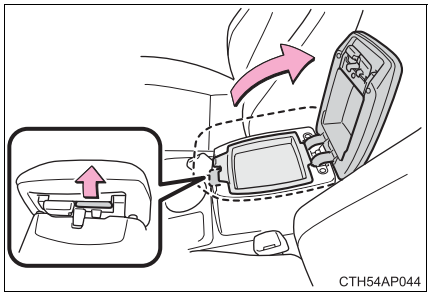
Console box

▶ Console box



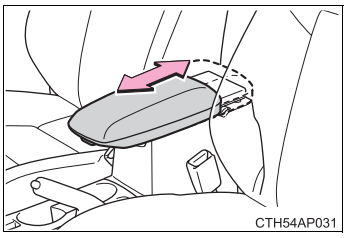
Lift the lid while pulling up the knob on the right seat side.

▶ Upper level box



Lift the lid while pulling up the knob on the left seat side.

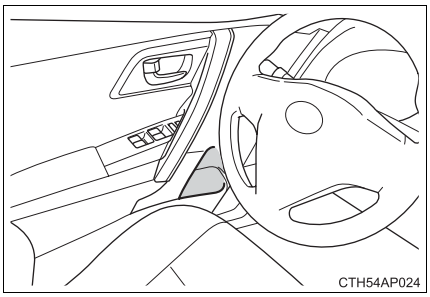
The console box lid can be slid forward or backward. (with slide function)



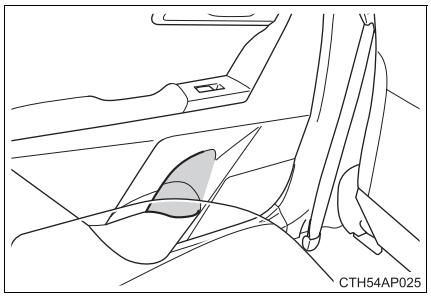
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 374 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Bottle holders

▶ Front



▶ Rear



- When storing a bottle, close the cap.
- The bottle may not be stored depending on its size or shape.

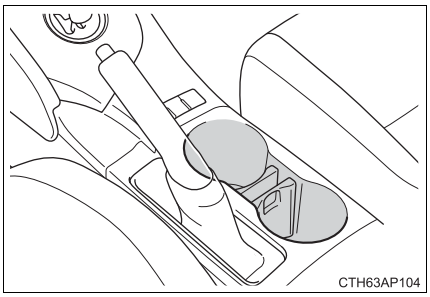
⚠ WARNING

Do not place anything other than a bottle in the bottle holders.
Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking and cause injury.

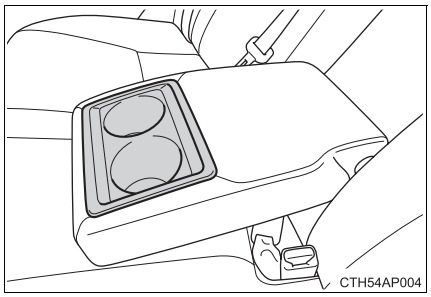
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 375 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Cup holders

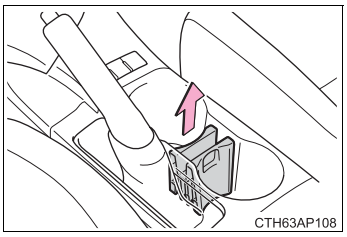
▶ Front



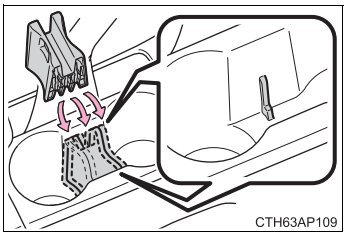
▶ Rear (if equipped)



- The insert for the front cup holders can be removed for cleaning.



- The front cup holders can be adjusted to the appropriate size for a cup or drink can by changing the insert position.



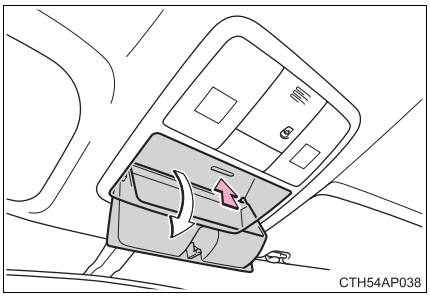
⚠ WARNING

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking, causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 376 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

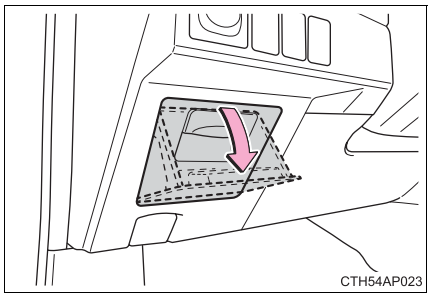
Auxiliary boxes

▶ Type A (if equipped)



Push the lid to open.

▶ Type B



Pull the tab to open.

⚠ WARNING

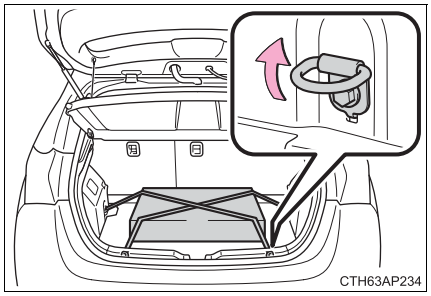
- Keep the auxiliary boxes closed. In the event of sudden braking, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open auxiliary box or the items stored inside.
- Type A only: do not store items heavier than 0.2 kg (0.4 lb.).
  Doing so may cause the auxiliary box to open and the items inside may fall out, resulting in an accident.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 377 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Luggage compartment features

Cargo hooks (if equipped)

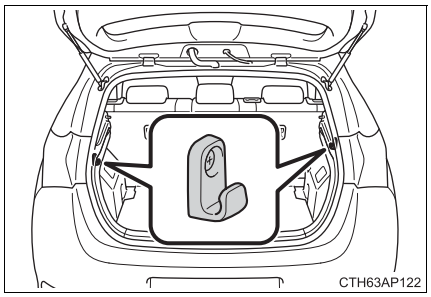
Cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.



WARNING

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their positions when they are not in use.

Grocery bag hooks



NOTICE

Do not hang any object heavier than 4 kg (8.8 lb.) on the grocery bag hooks.

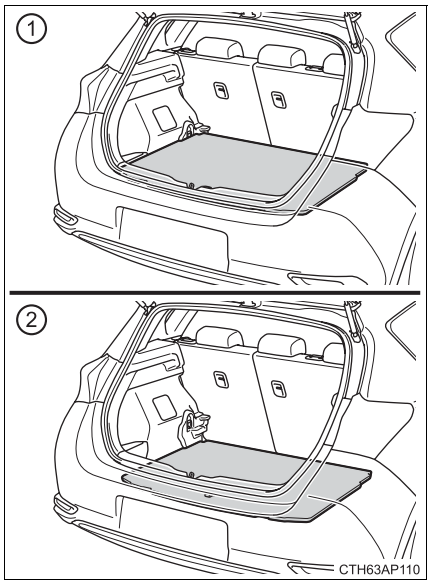
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 378 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Deck board (if equipped)

① Upper position

② Lower position

The lower position can be used when the deck board is placed on the deck mat.



⚠ WARNING

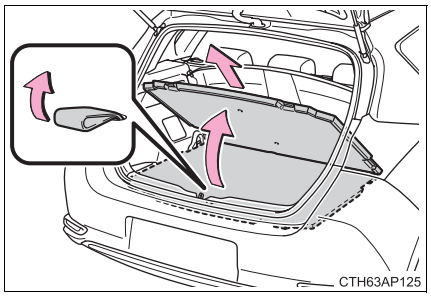
Do not place anything on the deck board when operating the board.

Otherwise, your fingers may be caught or an accident may result causing injuries.

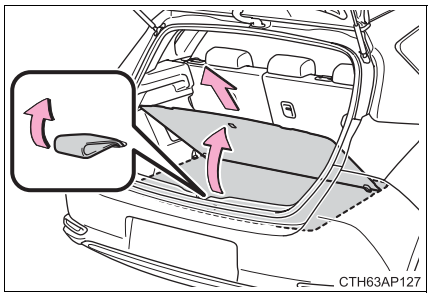
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 379 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Auxiliary boxes (if equipped)

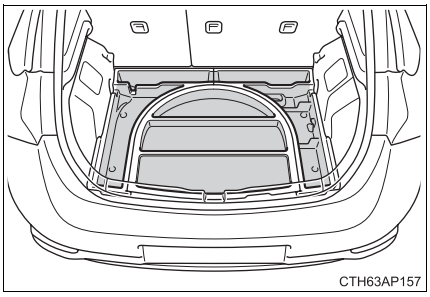
1 Lift the deck board tab and pull it toward you to remove it. (if equipped)



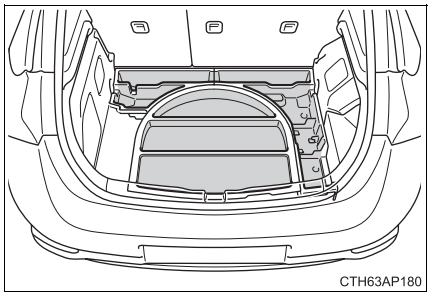
2 Lift the deck mat tab and pull it toward you to remove it.



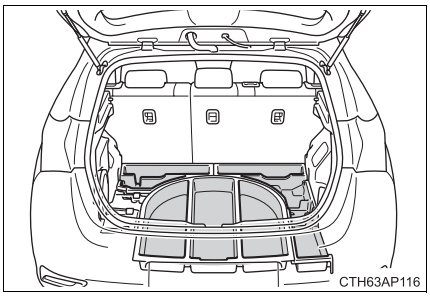
▶ Type A



▶ Type B

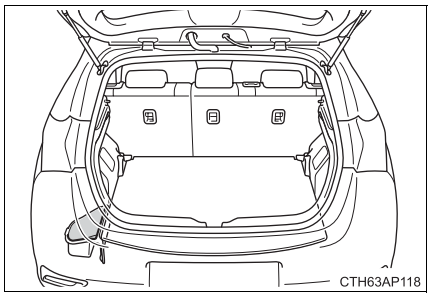


▶ Type C

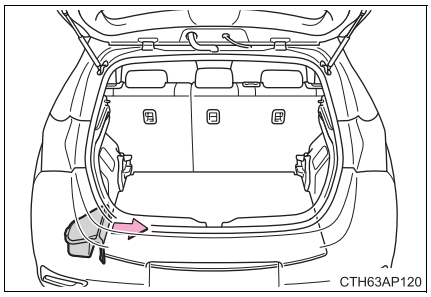


UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 380 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Side auxiliary boxes (if equipped)

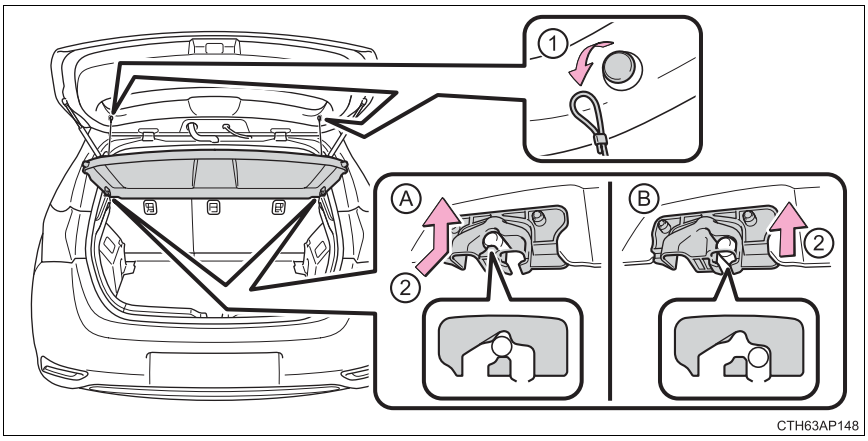


The luggage side tray can be removed when the deck board is in the lower position.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 381 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Removing the luggage cover



① Unhook the cords.

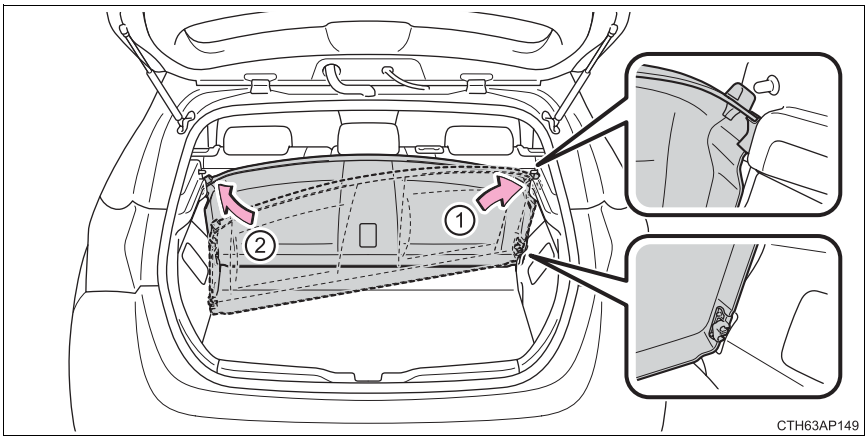
② Remove the cover from the anchors.

The cover can be removed by pulling it in the direction of the arrow labeled “A”.

If this does not work, pull the cover in the direction labeled “B”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 382 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

The luggage cover can be stowed on the back of the rear seats.



① Insert one side of the luggage cover into the gap between the back of the rear seat and deck side trim.

② While moving the luggage cover toward the back of the rear seat, insert the other side of the luggage cover.

Make sure that the luggage cover is securely installed.

When using the luggage cover, reverse the steps listed.

NOTICE

Do not apply a strong impact to the stored luggage cover. Doing so may damage the luggage cover.

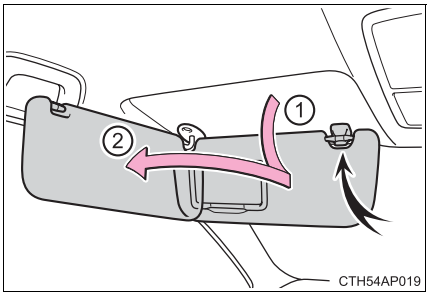
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 383 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Other interior features

Sun visors

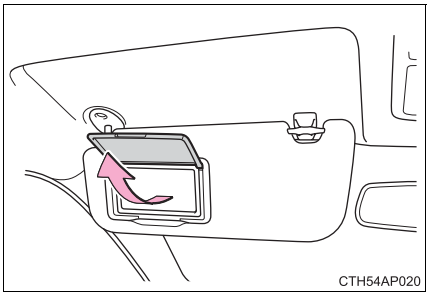
① To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

② To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.



Vanity mirrors

Open the cover.



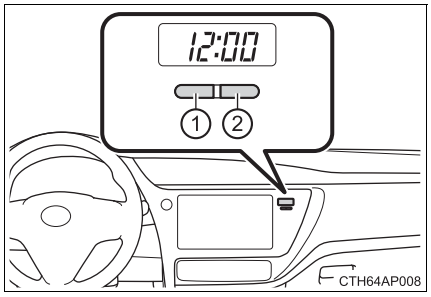
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 384 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Clock

The clock can be adjusted by pressing the buttons.

① Adjusts the hours

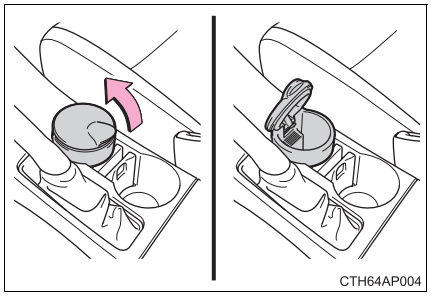
② Adjusts the minutes



- The clock is displayed when the power switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode.
- When the 12-volt battery terminals are disconnected and reconnected, the clock will automatically be set to 1:00.

Portable ashtray (if equipped)

The ashtray can be installed in a cup holder. (→P. 375)



WARNING

- When not in use, keep the ashtray closed.
  Injuries may result in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
- To prevent fire, fully extinguish matches and cigarettes before putting them in the ashtray, then make sure the ashtray is fully closed.
- To prevent fire, do not place paper or any other type of flammable object in the ashtray.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 385 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

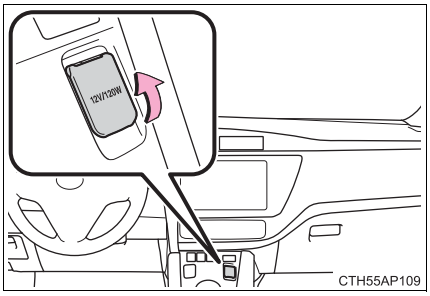
Power outlets

For front and rear: Please use as a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC/10 A (power consumption of 120 W).

When using electronic goods, make sure that the power consumption of all the connected power outlets is less than 120 W.

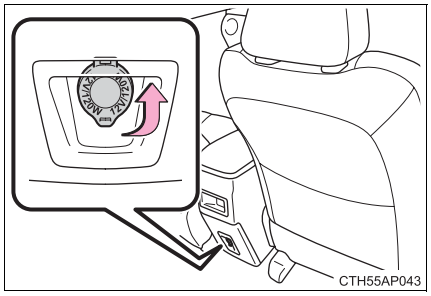
For luggage compartment: Please use as a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC/10 A (power consumption of 120 W).

▶ Front



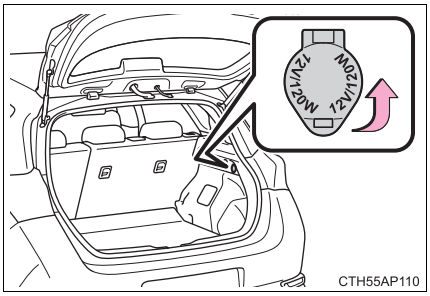
Open the cover.

▶ Rear



Open the cover.

▶ Luggage compartment



Open the cover.

The power outlet can be used when the power switch is in ACCESSORY or ON mode.

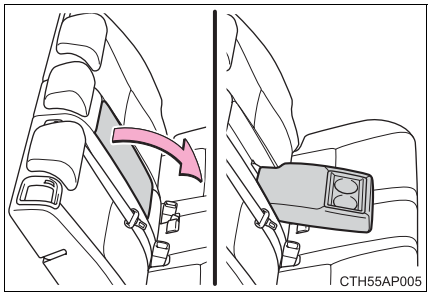
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 386 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

- To avoid damaging the power outlet, close the power outlet covers when the power outlet is not in use.
  Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.
- To prevent 12-volt battery discharge, do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the hybrid system is off.

Armrest (if equipped)

Fold down the armrest for use.

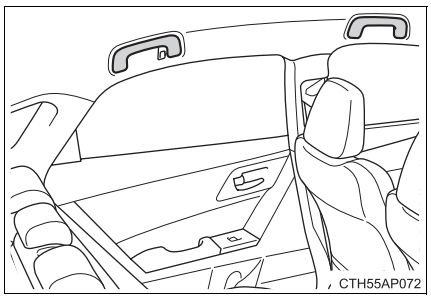


NOTICE

To prevent damage to the armrest, do not apply too much load on the armrest.

Assist grips

An assist grip installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.



WARNING

Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

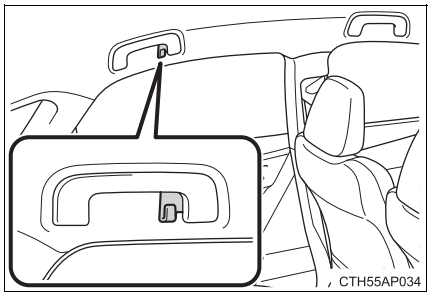
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 387 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the assist grip, do not put a heavy load on the assist grip.

Coat hooks

Coat hooks are provided on the rear assist grips.



WARNING

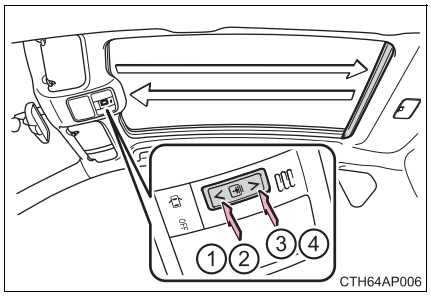
Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

Panoramic roof shade (if equipped)

Use the overhead switch to open or close the panoramic roof shade.

① Closing
② Automatic full-closing (press and hold)*
③ Opening
④ Automatic full-opening (press and hold)*

*: Pressing either side of the switch will stop the panoramic roof shade travel partway.



6 Interior features

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 388 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **The panoramic roof shade can be operated when**

The power switch is in ON mode.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the panoramic roof shade and the frame while closing, travel is stopped and the panoramic roof shade opens slightly.

■ **If the panoramic roof shade does not open/close automatically**

1 Press the open side of the switch to open the panoramic roof shade.

2 Press and hold the open side of the switch until the panoramic roof shade opens fully and then closes slightly.

After this procedure is completed, check that the automatic opening/closing function is available.
If the automatic opening/closing function does not work properly, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **Closing the panoramic roof shade**

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the panoramic roof shade is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the panoramic roof shade.
  Closing a panoramic roof shade on someone can cause death or serious injury.
  The driver is responsible for instructing children not to operate the panoramic roof shade.

■ **Jam protection function**

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the panoramic roof shade fully closes.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 389 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Maintenance and care 7

7-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 390

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 394

7-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements.....397

7-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 400

Hood 402

Positioning a floor jack.....404

Engine compartment.....405

12-volt battery 412

Tires.....417

Tire inflation pressure 427

Wheels.....429

Air conditioning filter 431

Electronic key battery 433

Checking and replacing fuses 436

Light bulbs 441

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 390 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform the following to protect the vehicle and maintain it in prime condition:

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

  If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ Automatic car washes

- Fold the mirrors before washing the vehicle. Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure to extend the mirrors before driving.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.

■ High pressure car washes

- Do not allow the nozzles of the car wash to come within close proximity of the windows.
- Before using the car wash, check that the fuel filler door on your vehicle is closed properly.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 391 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■When using a car wash (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:

- Place the key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P. 134)

■Aluminum wheels

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive cleaners. Do not use strong or harsh chemical cleaners.
  Use the same mild detergent and wax as used on the paint.
- Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, for example after driving for long distance in the hot weather.
- Wash detergent from the wheels immediately after use.

■Bumpers

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

⚠ WARNING

■When washing the vehicle

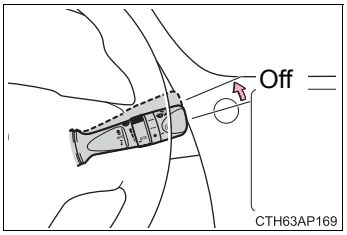
Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components etc. to catch fire.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 392 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

■When cleaning the windshield (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wiper)

Set the wiper switch to off.
If the wiper switch is in “AUTO”, the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■Precautions regarding the exhaust pipe

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the exhaust pipe until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 393 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

■ **To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)**

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
  - If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ **Cleaning the exterior lights**

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights. Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ **To prevent damage to the windshield wiper arms**

When lifting the wiper arms away from the windshield, pull the driver side wiper arm upward first, and repeat for the passenger side. When returning the wipers to their original position, do so from the passenger side first.

■ **When using an automatic car wash (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wiper)**

Set the wiper switch to the off position.
If the wiper switch is in “AUTO”, the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

■ **When using a high pressure car wash**

Do not bring the nozzle tip close to following parts and boots (Rubber or resin manufactured cover), or connectors. Parts may be damages if they come into contact with high pressure water.

- Traction related parts
- Steering parts
- Suspension parts
- Brake parts

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 394 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

The following procedures will help protect your vehicle's interior and keep it in top condition:

Protecting the vehicle interior

Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

  Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove loose dirt using a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply a mild soap solution to the synthetic leather using a sponge or soft cloth.
- Allow the solution to soak in for a few minutes. Remove the dirt and wipe off the solution with a clean, damp cloth.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 395 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Caring for leather areas

Toyota recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

Seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

WARNING

Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle, such as on the floor, in the hybrid battery (traction battery) air vents, and in the luggage compartment. Doing so may cause the hybrid battery, electrical components, etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P. 39)
  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 396 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

Cleaning detergents

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
  - Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.
Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

Cleaning the inside of the rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 397 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance is essential. Toyota recommends the following maintenance:

■ Scheduled maintenance

Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

For full details of your maintenance schedule, read the “Toyota Service Booklet” or “Toyota Warranty Booklet”.

■ Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you're an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer will keep a record of maintenance, which could be useful should you ever require Warranty Service. Should you choose to select a qualified and equipped professional other than an authorized Toyota repairer to service or maintain your vehicle, we recommend that you request that a record of maintenance be kept.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 398 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Where to go for maintenance service?**

In order to maintain your vehicle in the best possible condition, Toyota recommends that maintenance service operations as well as other inspections and repairs be carried out by authorized Toyota dealers or repairers or other duly qualified and equipped professionals. For repairs and services covered by your warranty, please visit an authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, who will use genuine Toyota parts in repairing any difficulties you may encounter. There can also be advantages in utilizing authorized Toyota dealers or repairers for non-warranty repairs and services, as members of the Toyota network will be able to expertly assist you with any difficulties you may encounter.

Your Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically due to their experience with Toyota vehicles.

■ **Does your vehicle need repair?**

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling, or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driving straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 399 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

■ **If your vehicle is not properly maintained**

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible serious injury or death.

■ **Handling of the 12-volt battery**

12-volt battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P. 412)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 400 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Items	Parts and tools
12-volt battery condition (→P. 412)	• Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Engine/power control unit coolant level (→P. 408)	• “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P. 406)	• “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P. 436)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P. 441)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original • Phillips-head screwdriver • Flathead screwdriver • Wrench
Radiator and condenser (→P. 410)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P. 427)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P. 410)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 401 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Make sure that the indicator on the power switch and the “READY” indicator are both off.
- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel or the 12-volt battery. Fuel and 12-volt battery fumes are flammable.
- Be extremely cautious when working on the 12-volt battery. It contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.
  If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

■ When working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille

Be sure the power switch is off.
With the power switch in ON mode, the electric cooling fans may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P. 410)

■ Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

⚠ NOTICE

■ If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

■ If the fluid level is low or high

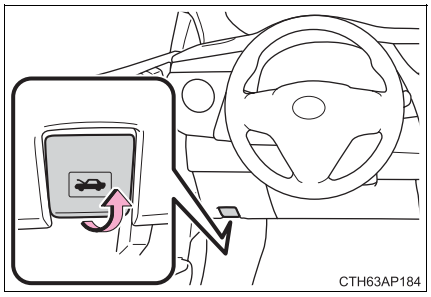
It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 402 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

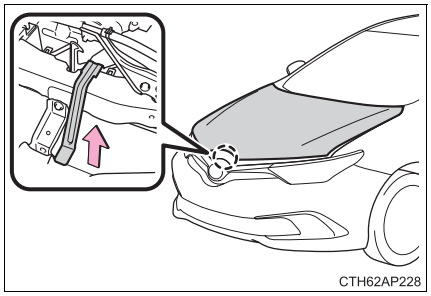
Hood

Release the lock from the inside of the vehicle to open the hood.

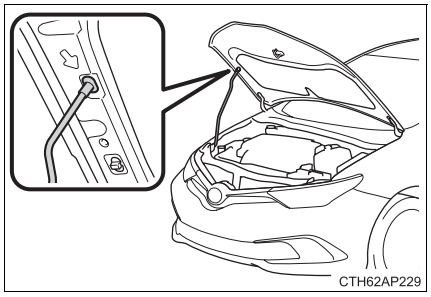
1 Pull the hood lock release lever.
The hood will pop up slightly.



2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



3 Hold the hood open by inserting the support rod into the slot.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 403 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

■ Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

■ After installing the support rod into the slot

Make sure the rod supports the hood securely preventing it from falling down onto your head or body.

NOTICE

■ When closing the hood

Be sure to return the support rod to its clip before closing the hood. Closing the hood with the support rod not clipped could cause the hood to bend.

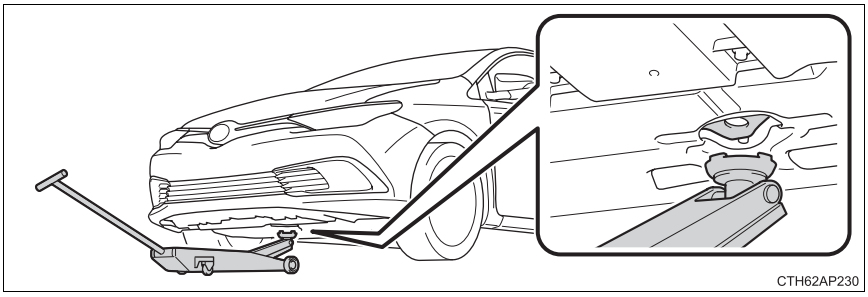
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 404 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Positioning a floor jack

When using a floor jack, follow the instructions in the manual provided with the jack and perform the operation safely.

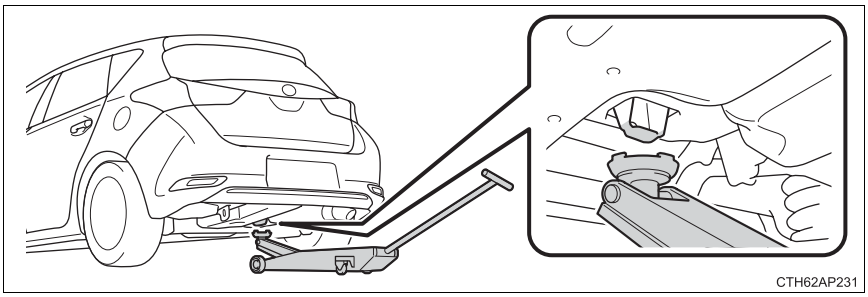
When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

◆ Front

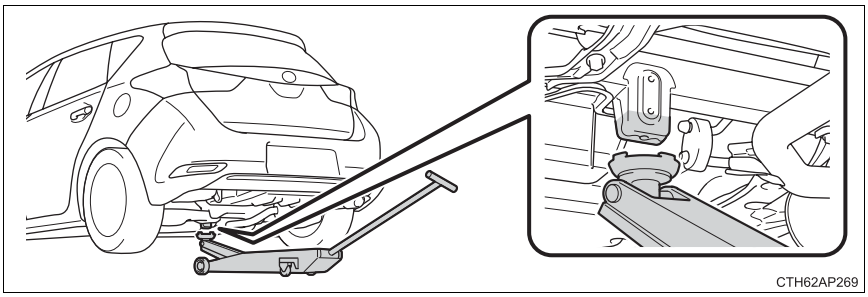

CTH62AP230

◆ Rear

▶ Type A

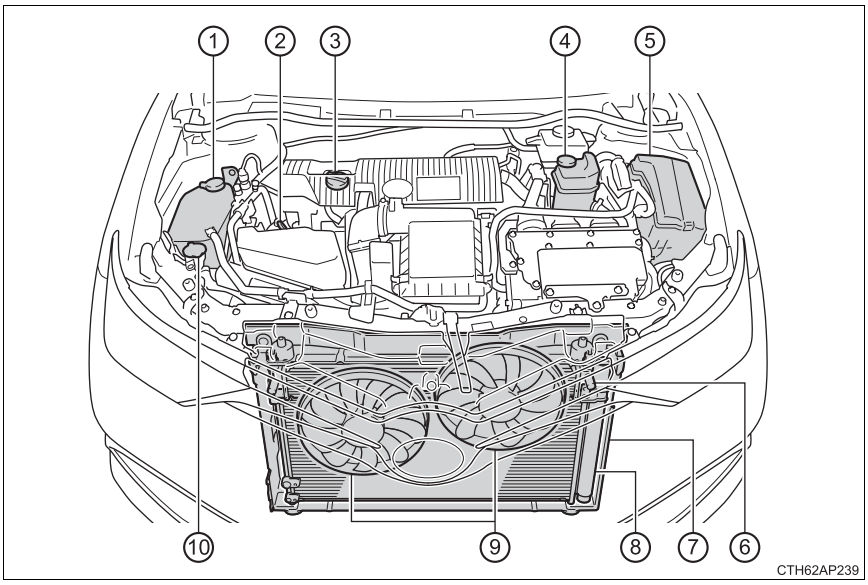

CTH62AP231

▶ Type B


CTH62AP269

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 405 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Engine compartment



① Engine coolant reservoir (→P. 408)
② Engine oil level dipstick (→P. 406)
③ Engine oil filler cap (→P. 407)
④ Power control unit coolant reservoir (→P. 408)
⑤ Fuse box (→P. 436)
⑥ Power control unit coolant radiator (→P. 410)
⑦ Radiator (→P. 410)
⑧ Condenser (→P. 410)
⑨ Electric cooling fans
⑩ Washer fluid tank (→P. 410)

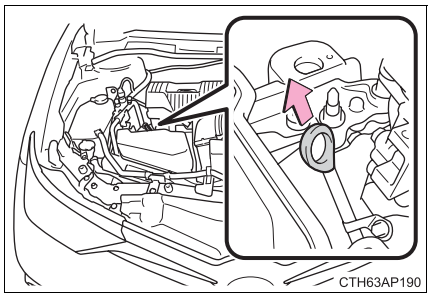
Engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

1 Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning off the hybrid system, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.



3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

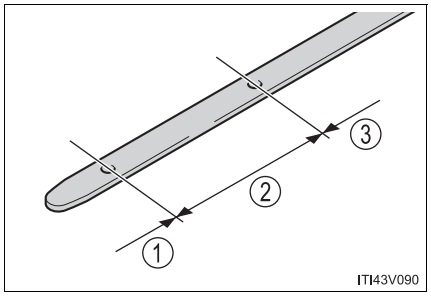
5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.

① Low

② Normal

③ Excessive

The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.



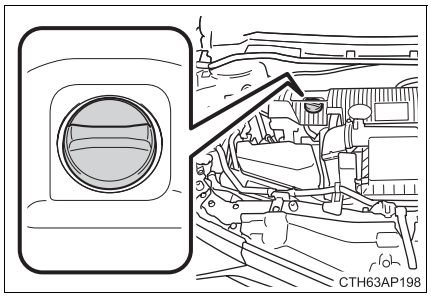
6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 407 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Adding engine oil

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.



Engine oil selection	→P. 529
Oil quantity (Low → Full)	1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp. qt.)
Items	Clean funnel

1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ Engine oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, when towing, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 408 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground.
  Call any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent serious engine damage

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ When replacing the engine oil

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

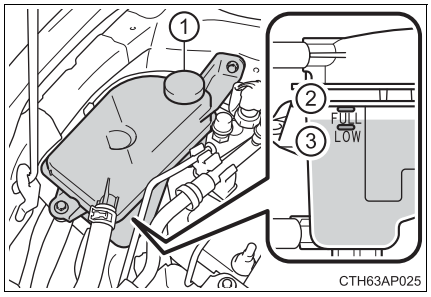
Coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir when the hybrid system is cold.

▶ Engine coolant reservoir

① Reservoir cap
② “FULL” line
③ “LOW” line

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line.



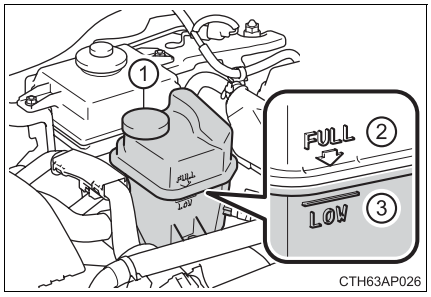
▶ Power control unit coolant reservoir

① Reservoir cap

② “FULL” line

③ “LOW” line

If the level is on or below the “LOW” line, add coolant up to the “FULL” line.



■ Coolant selection

Only use “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

“Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about engine coolant, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine/power control unit coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

⚠ WARNING

■ When the hybrid system is hot

Do not remove the engine/power control unit coolant reservoir caps.
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When adding coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 410 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear away any foreign objects. If either of the above parts is extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

⚠ WARNING

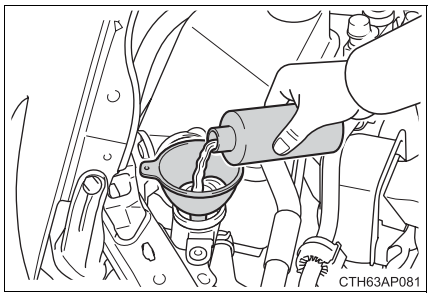
■ When the hybrid system is hot

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Washer fluid

▶ Vehicles without headlight cleaner

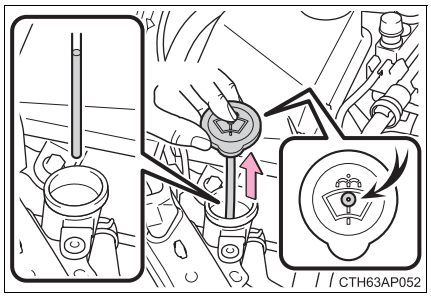
If any washer does not work, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.



▶ Vehicles with headlight cleaner

If the fluid level is extremely low add washer fluid.

Raise the cap keeping your finger pressed down on the hole in the center and check the fluid level in the tube.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 411 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the hybrid system is hot or operating as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

⚠ NOTICE

■Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze instead of washer fluid. Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces.

■Diluting washer fluid

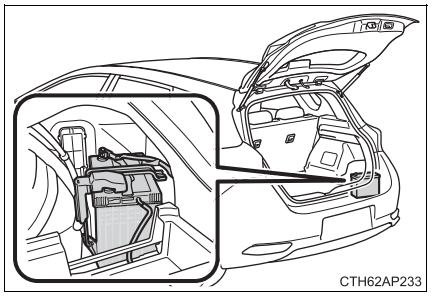
Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 412 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

12-volt battery

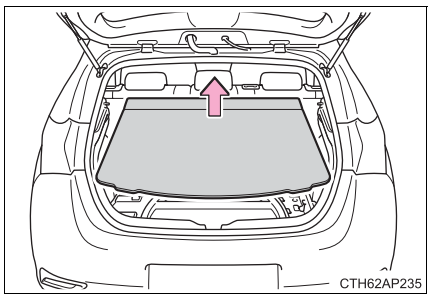
■ Location

The 12-volt battery is located in the right-hand side of luggage compartment.

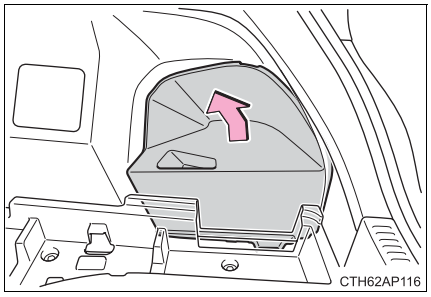


■ Removing the 12-volt battery cover

1 Remove the deck mat.



2 Remove the 12-volt battery cover.

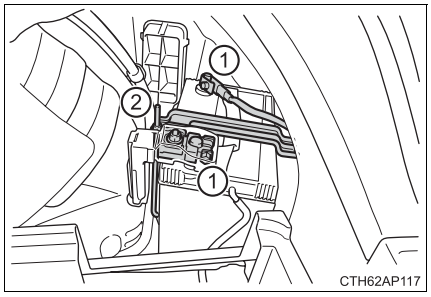


UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 413 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Exterior

Make sure that the 12-volt battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

① Terminals
② Hold-down clamp



■ Caution symbol

The meanings of each caution symbol on the top of the 12-volt battery are as follows:

	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks		Battery acid
	Shield eyes		Note operating instructions
	Keep away from children		Explosive gas

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 414 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Before recharging**

When recharging, the 12-volt battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, before recharging:

- If recharging with the 12-volt battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the 12-volt battery.

■ **After recharging/reconnecting the 12-volt battery**

- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: Unlocking the doors using the entry function may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the hybrid system with the power switch in ACCESSORY mode. The hybrid system may not start with the power switch turned off. However, the hybrid system will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The power switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the 12-volt battery is reconnected, the vehicle will return the power switch mode to the status it was in before the 12-volt battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn the power switch off before disconnecting the 12-volt battery. Take extra care when connecting the 12-volt battery if the power switch mode prior to discharge is unknown.
- When the 12-volt battery is reconnected, start the hybrid system, depress the brake pedal, and confirm that it is possible to shift into each shift position.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 415 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

■Chemicals in the 12-volt battery

The 12-volt battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the 12-volt battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the 12-volt battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the 12-volt battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the 12-volt battery.
- Keep children away from the 12-volt battery.

■Where to safely charge the 12-volt battery

Always charge the 12-volt battery in an open area. Do not charge the 12-volt battery in a garage or closed room where there is not sufficient ventilation.

■How to recharge the 12-volt battery

Only perform a slow charge (5 A or less). The 12-volt battery may explode if charged at a quicker rate.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 416 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or a burning sensation, seek medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Follow with milk of magnesia, beaten raw egg or vegetable oil. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

■ When replacing the 12-volt battery

Use a 12-volt battery designed for the AURIS HYBRID. Failure to do so may cause gas (hydrogen) to enter the passenger compartment, causing a fire or explosion.

For replacement of the 12-volt battery, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified professional.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When recharging the 12-volt battery

Never recharge the 12-volt battery while the hybrid system is operating. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

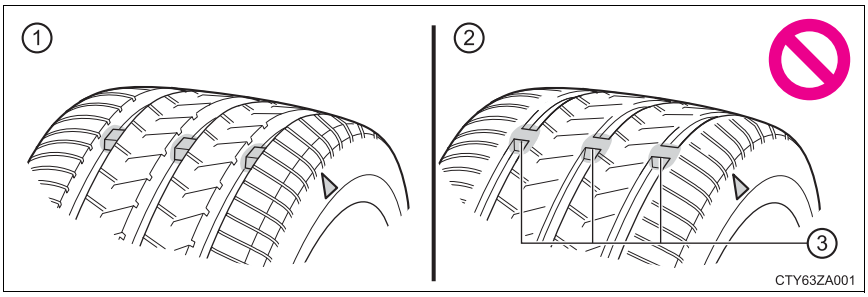
Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

Check if the treadwear indicators are showing on the tires. Also check the tires for uneven wear, such as excessive wear on one side of the tread.

Check the spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.



① New tread

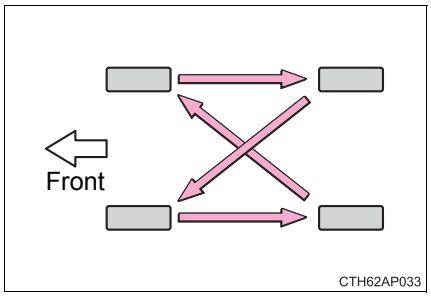
② Worn tread

③ Treadwear indicator

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by a “TWI” or “Δ” mark, etc., molded into the sidewall of each tire.
Replace the tires if the treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.

Tire rotation

Rotate the tires in the order shown.



To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Toyota recommends that tire rotation is carried out approximately every 10000 km (6000 miles).

Vehicles with a tire pressure warning system: When rotating front and rear tires which have different tire inflation pressures, do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 418 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Tire pressure warning system (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise. (→P. 468)

◆ Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valves and transmitter ID codes registered by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. (→P. 419)

◆ Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:

- When rotating front and rear tires which have different tire inflation pressures.
- When changing the tire size.
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing traveling speed or load weight.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 419 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the power switch off.

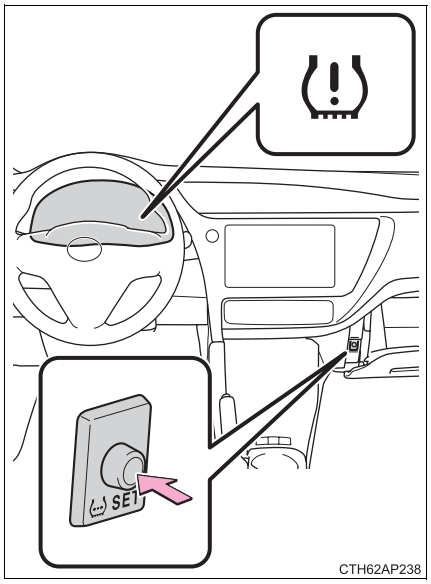
Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P. 534)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

3 Turn the power switch to ON mode.

4 Open the glove box. Press and hold the tire pressure warning reset switch until the tire pressure warning light blinks slowly 3 times.



5 Wait for a few minutes with the power switch in ON mode and then turn the power switch off.

◆ Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 420 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **When to replace your vehicle's tires**

Tires should be replaced if:

- The treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult with any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Replacing tires and wheels (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

■ **Tire life**

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ **Routine tire inflation pressure checks (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ **Low profile tires (17-inch tires)**

Generally, low profile tires will wear more rapidly and tire grip performance will be reduced on snowy and/or icy roads when compared to standard tires. Be sure to use snow tires or tire chains* on snowy and/or icy roads and drive carefully at a speed appropriate for road and weather conditions.

*: Tire chains cannot be mounted on 225/45R17 tires.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 421 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **If the tread on snow tires wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.)**

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

■ **Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

● In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

- If non-genuine Toyota wheels are used.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.
- A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
- Tire chains etc. are equipped.
- Lock nuts are equipped.
- An auxiliary-supported run-flat tire is equipped.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
- If tires not equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.

● Performance may be affected in the following situations.

- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise.
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device.

● When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.

● When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not function.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 422 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **The initialization operation (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

- Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.
- If you have accidentally turned the power switch off during initialization, it is not necessary to press the reset switch again as initialization will restart automatically when the power switch has been turned to ON mode for the next time.
- If you accidentally press the reset switch when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.

■ **Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

The warning of the tire pressure warning system will change in accordance with driving conditions. For this reason, the system may give a warning even if the tire pressure does not reach a low enough level, or if the pressure is higher than the pressure that was adjusted to when the system was initialized.

■ **When initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

- When operating the tire pressure warning reset switch, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times.
- After driving for a certain period of time since the initialization has been completed, the warning light comes on after blinking for 1 minute.

■ **Registering ID codes (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

The ID codes of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitters for two sets of wheels can be registered.

It is not necessary to register the ID codes when replacing normal tires with snow tires, if the ID codes for the wheels of both normal tires and snow tires are registered beforehand.

For information about changing ID codes, ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 423 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Tire pressure warning system certification

CE The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY" (DoC) is available at the following address: http://www.globaldenso.com/en/products/oem/index.html

Hereby, DENSO CORPORATION declares that this 23AAM is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

DENSO CORPORATION vakuuttaa täten että 23AAM tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Hierbij verklaart DENSO CORPORATION dat het toestel 23AAM in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Par la présente DENSO CORPORATION déclare que l'appareil 23AAM est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Härmed intygar DENSO CORPORATION att denna 23AAM står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Undertegnede DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr 23AAM overholder de væsentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Hiermit erklärt DENSO CORPORATION, dass sich das Gerät 23AAM in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigen einschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ DENSO CORPORATION ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ 23AAM ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente DENSO CORPORATION dichiara che questo 23AAM è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Por medio de la presente DENSO CORPORATION declara que el 23AAM cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

DENSO CORPORATION declara que este 23AAM está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Hawnhekk, DENSO CORPORATION, jiddikjara li dan 23AAM jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab DENSO CORPORATION seadme 23AAM vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Alulírott, DENSO CORPORATION nyilatkozom, hogy a 23AAM megfelel a vonatkozó alapvető követelményeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb előírásainak.

DENSO CORPORATION týmto vyhlasuje, že 23AAM spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

DENSO CORPORATION tímto prohlašuje, že tento 23AAM je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími příslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

DENSO CORPORATION izjavlja, da je ta 23AAM v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo DENSO CORPORATION deklaruoja, kad šis 23AAM atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo DENSO CORPORATION deklarē, ka 23AAM atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Niniejszym DENSO CORPORATION oświadcza, że 23AAM jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Hér með lýsir DENSO CORPORATION yfir því að 23AAM er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

DENSO CORPORATION erklærer herved at utstyret 23AAM er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, DENSO CORPORATION, декларира, че 23AAM е в съответствие със съществените изисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/EC.

Prin prezenta, DENSO CORPORATION, declară că aparatul 23AAM este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţiale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da ovaj 23AAM je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Ovim, DENSO CORPORATION, deklariše da je 23AAM u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Ovim DENSO CORPORATION, izjavljuje da je 23AAM u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC i Pravilnika o RiTT opremi (NN 25/2012).

Nepermjet kesaj, DENSO CORPORATION, deklaroj qe ky 23AAM eshte ne pajtim me kerkesat thelbesore dhe dispozitat e tjera perkatese te Direktives 1999/5/EC.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 424 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

The latest "DECLARATION of CONFORMITY "(DoC) is available at the following:
DoC address :http://www.pacific-ind.co.jp/eng/products/car/tpms/doc/

CE0891

Hereby, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., declares that this PMV-C210 is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. vakuuttaa täten että PMV-C210 tyyppinen laite on direktiivin 1999/5/EY oleellisten vaatimusten ja sitä koskevien direktiivin muiden ehtojen mukainen.

Hierbij verklaart PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. dat het toestel PMV-C210 in overeenstemming is met de essentiële eisen en de andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG.

Par la présente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. déclare que l'appareil PMV-C210 est conforme aux exigences essentielles et aux autres dispositions pertinentes de la directive 1999/5/CE.

Härmed intygar PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. att denna PMV-C210 står I överensstämmelse med de väsentliga egenskapskrav och övriga relevanta bestämmelser som framgår av direktiv 1999/5/EG.

Undertegnede PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. erklærer herved, at følgende udstyr PMV-C210 overholder de væ sentlige krav og øvrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

Hiermit erklärt PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., dass sich das Gerät PMV-C210 in Übereinstimmung mit den grundlegenden Anforderungen und den übrigeneinschlägigen Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG befindet.

ΜΕ ΤΗΝ ΠΑΡΟΥΣΑ PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. ΔΗΛΩΝΕΙ ΟΤΙ PMV-C210 ΣΥΜΜΟΡΦΩΝΕΤΑΙ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΙΣ ΟΥΣΙΩ ΔΕΙΣ ΑΠΑΙΤΗΣΕΙΣ ΚΑΙ ΤΙΣ ΛΟΙΠΕΣ ΣΧΕΤΙΚΕΣ ΔΙΑΤΑΞΕΙΣ ΤΗΣ ΟΔΗΓΙΑΣ 1999/5/ΕΚ.

Con la presente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. dichiara che questo PMV-C210 è conforme ai requisiti essenziali ed alle altre disposizioni pertinenti stabilite dalla direttiva 1999/5/CE.

Por medio de la presente PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. declara que el PMV-C210 cumple con los requisitos esenciales y cualesquiera otras disposiciones aplicables o exigibles de la Directiva 1999/5/CE.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. declara que este PMV-C210 está conforme com os requisitos essenciais e outras disposições da Directiva 1999/5/CE.

Hawnhekk, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., jiddikjara li dan PMV-C210 jikkonforma mal-ħtiġijiet essenzjali u ma provvedimenti oħrajn relevanti li hemm fid-Dirrettiva 1999/5/EC.

Käesolevaga kinnitab PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. seadme PMV-C210 vastavust direktiivi 1999/5/EÜ põhinõuetele ja nimetatud direktiivist tulenevatele teistele asjakohastele sätetele.

Alulírott, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. nyilatkozom, hogy a PMV-C210 megfelel a vonatkozó alapvetõ követelmé nyeknek és az 1999/5/EC irányelv egyéb elõírásainak.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. týmto vyhlasuje, že PMV-C210 spĺňa základné požiadavky a všetky príslušné ustanovenia Smernice 1999/5/ES.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. tímto prohlašuje, že tento PMV-C210 je ve shodě se základními požadavky a dalšími p říslušnými ustanoveními směrnice 1999/5/ES.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. izjavlja, da je ta PMV-C210 v skladu z bistvenimi zahtevami in ostalimi relevantnimi določili direktive 1999/5/ES.

Šiuo PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. deklaruoja, kad šis PMV-C210 atitinka esminius reikalavimus ir kitas 1999/5/EB Direktyvos nuostatas.

Ar šo PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. deklarē, ka PMV-C210 atbilst Direktīvas 1999/5/EK būtiskajām prasībām un citiem ar to saistītajiem noteikumiem.

Niniejszym PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. oświadcza, że PMV-C210 jest zgodny z zasadniczymi wymogami oraz pozostałymi stosownymi postanowieniami Dyrektywy 1999/5/EC.

Hér með lýsir PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. yfir því að PMV-C210 er í samræmi við grunnkröfur og aðrar kröfur, sem gerðar eru í tilskipun 1999/5/EC.

PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD. erklærer herved at utstyret PMV-C210 er i samsvar med de grunnleggende krav og ø vrige relevante krav i direktiv 1999/5/EF.

С настоящето, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., декларира, че PMV-C210 е в съответствие със съществените и зисквания и другите приложими разпоредби на Директива 1999/5/ЕС.

Prin prezenta, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., declară că aparatul PMV-C210 este in conformitate cu cerinţele esenţ iale şi cu alte prevederi pertinente ale Directivei 1999/5/CE.

Ovim , PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da ovaj PMV-C210 je usklađen sa bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

Ovim, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., deklariše da je PMV-C210 u skladu sa osnovnim zahtevima i ostalim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 425 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Ovim PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO.,LTD., izjavljuje da je PMV-C210 u sklau s bitnim zahtjevima i drugim relevantnim odredbama Direktive 1999/5/EC .

Me anë të kësaj, PACIFIC INDUSTRIAL CO, LTD., Deklaron se ky PMV-C210 është në përputhje me kërkesat themelore dhe dispozitat e tjera përkatëse të direktivës 1999/5/EC.

⚠ WARNING

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drivetrain as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Toyota.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
- Vehicles with a compact spare tire: Do not tow if your vehicle has a compact spare tire installed.

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

Do not operate the tire pressure warning reset switch without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 426 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. After use of liquid sealant, make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when repairing or replacing the tire. (→P. 418)

Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

Low profile tires (17-inch tires)

Low profile tires may cause greater damage than usual to the tire wheel when sustaining impact from the road surface. Therefore, pay attention to the following:

- Be sure to use proper tire inflation pressure. If tires are under-inflated, they may be damaged more severely.
- Avoid potholes, uneven pavement, curbs and other road hazards. Failure to do so may lead to severe tire and wheel damage.

If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 427 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

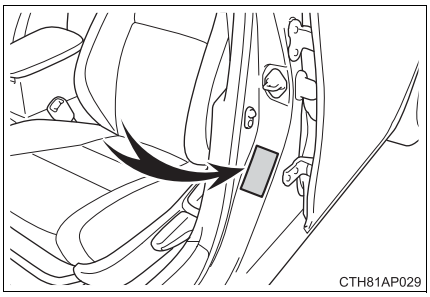
Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Toyota recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks. (→P. 534)

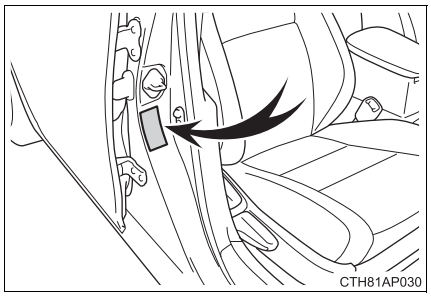
Tire-loading information label

Tire inflation pressure is specified on the label on the driver's side door frame as shown.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel economy
- Reduced driving comfort and poor handling
- Reduced tire life due to wear
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drivetrain

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  It is difficult to judge if a tire is properly inflated based only on its appearance.
- It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving as heat is generated in the tire. Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.
- Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

WARNING

Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated.
If the tires are not properly inflated, the following conditions may occur which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Air leaking from between tire and wheel
- Wheel deformation and/or tire damage
- Greater possibility of tire damage while driving (due to road hazards, expansion joints, sharp edges in the road, etc.)

NOTICE

When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.
If a valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may get into the valve and cause an air leak, resulting in decreased tire inflation pressure.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 429 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

*: Conventionally referred to as “offset”.

Toyota does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Toyota wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Toyota genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

When replacing wheels (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

The wheels of your vehicle (except spare tire) are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P. 418)

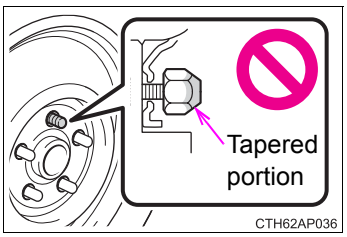
⚠ WARNING

■When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

■When installing the wheel nuts

- Be sure to install the wheel nuts with the tapered ends facing inward. Installing the nuts with the tapered ends facing outward can cause the wheel to break and eventually cause the wheel to come off while driving, which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.



- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing an accident and resulting in death or serious injury. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.

■Use of defective wheels prohibited

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.

Doing so could cause the tire to leak air during driving, possibly causing an accident.

⚠ NOTICE

■Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Ensure that only genuine Toyota wheels are used on your vehicle.
  Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 431 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

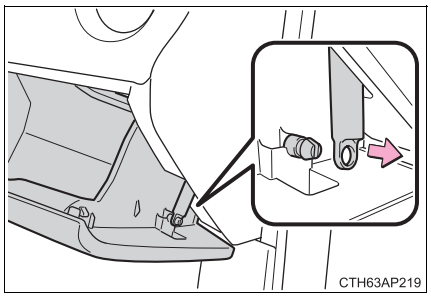
Air conditioning filter

The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

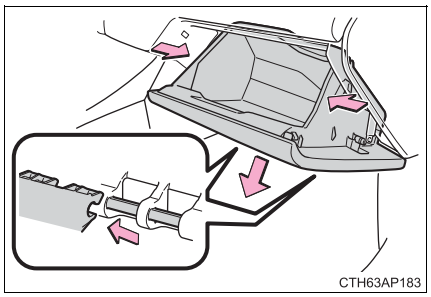
Removal method

1 Turn the power switch off.

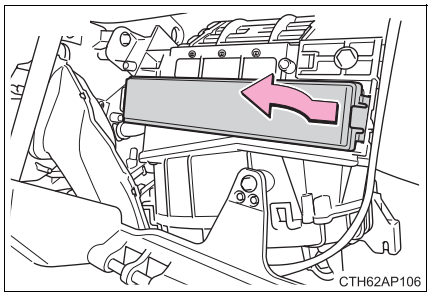
2 Open the glove box. Slide off the damper.



3 Push in the glove box on the vehicle's outer side to disconnect the claws. Then pull out the glove box and disconnect the lower claws.



4 Remove the filter cover.

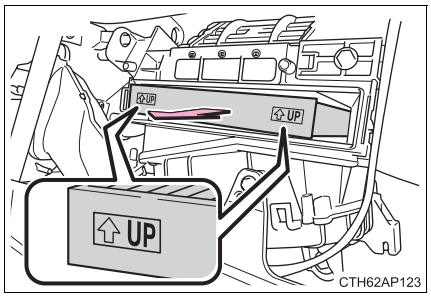


UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 432 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Replacement method

Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one.

The “↑UP” marks shown on the filter should be pointing up.



■ Checking interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (For scheduled maintenance information, please refer to the “Toyota Service Booklet” or “Toyota Warranty Booklet”.)

■ If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When using the air conditioning system

Make sure that a filter is always installed.
Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 433 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Electronic key battery

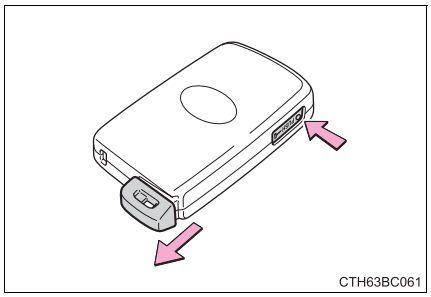
Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted or “Key battery low.” is displayed on the multi-information display.

You will need the following items:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2032

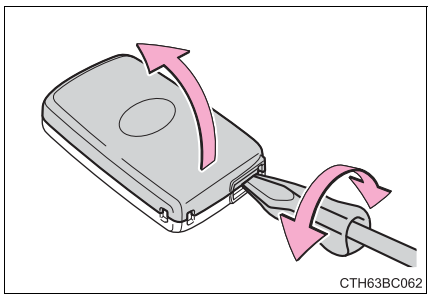
Replacing the battery

1 Take out the mechanical key.


CTH63BC061

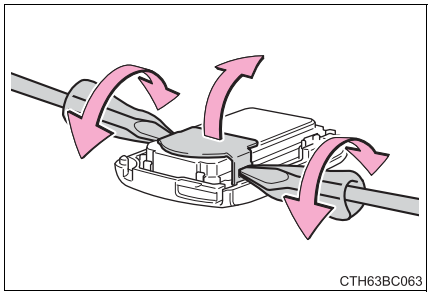
2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.


CTH63BC062

3 Remove the battery cover.

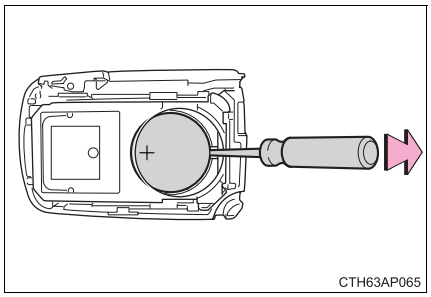
To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.


CTH63BC063

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 434 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

4 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the “+” terminal facing up.



■ **Use a CR2032 lithium battery**

- Batteries can be purchased at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to local laws.

■ **If the key battery is depleted**

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system (if equipped), push button start (if equipped) and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

WARNING

■ **Removed battery and other parts**

These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Keep away from children. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

■ **Certification for the lithium battery**

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 435 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

■For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.
  Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 436 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Checking and replacing fuses

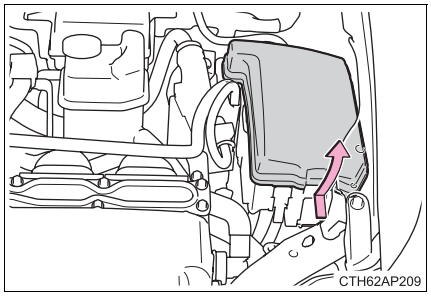
If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

1 Turn the power switch off.

2 Open the fuse box cover.

▶ Engine compartment

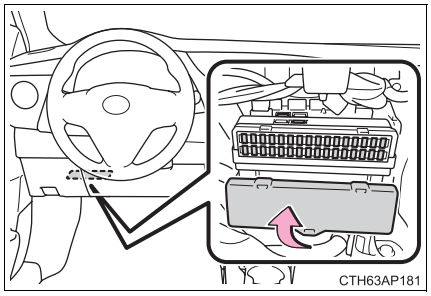
Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



▶ Under the driver's side instrument panel (left-hand drive vehicles)

Type A:

Remove the lid.

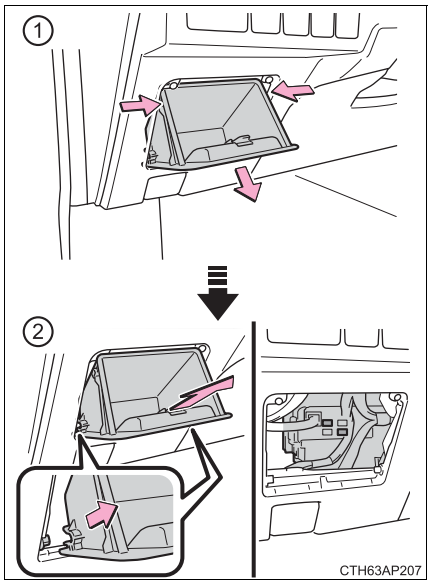


UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 437 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Type B:

① Open the auxiliary box. Push in each side of the auxiliary box to disconnect the upper claws.

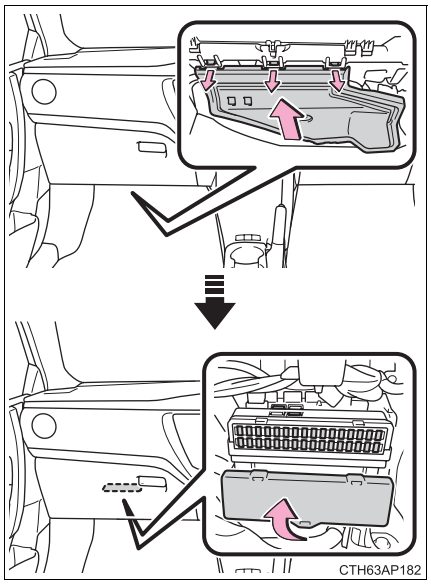
② Pull out the auxiliary box and disconnect the lower claws.



▶ Under the passenger's side instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles)

Type A:

Remove the cover* and the lid.



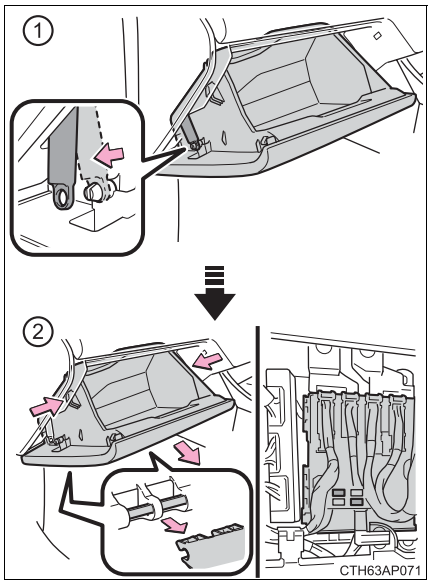
*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 438 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Type B:

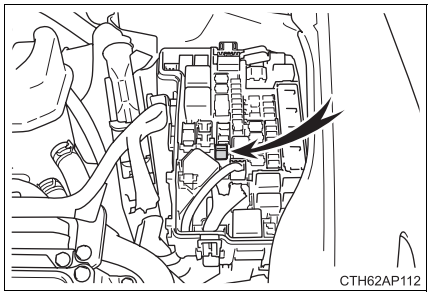
① Open the glove box. Slide off the damper.

② Push in each side of the glove box disconnect the upper claws. Then pull out the glove box and disconnect the lower claws.



3 Remove the fuse with the pull-out tool.

Only type A fuses can be removed using the pullout tool.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 439 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

4 Check if the fuse is blown.

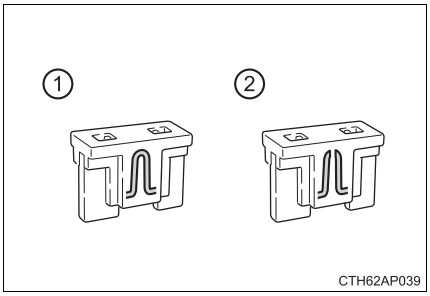
① Normal fuse

② Blown fuse

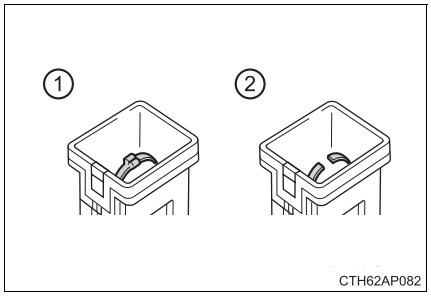
Type A, B, C and D:
Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type E:
Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

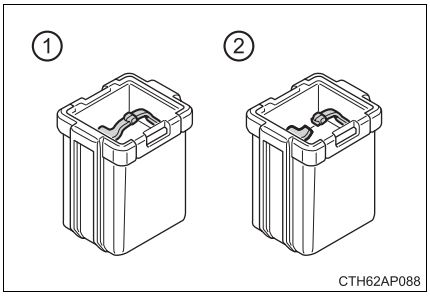
▶ Type A



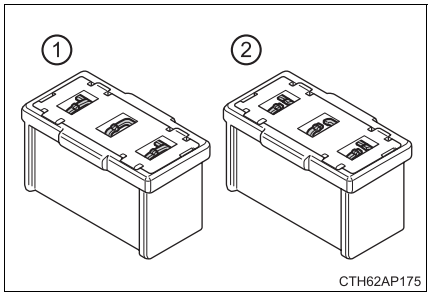
▶ Type B



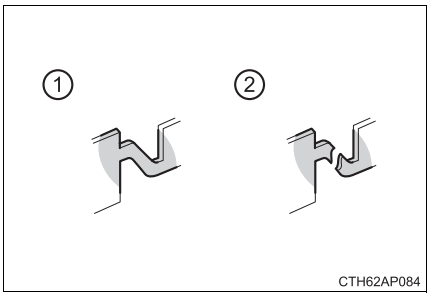
▶ Type C



▶ Type D



▶ Type E



■ **After a fuse is replaced**

- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P. 441)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **If there is an overload in a circuit**

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

■ **When replacing light bulbs**

Toyota recommends that you use genuine Toyota products designed for this vehicle. Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

⚠ WARNING

■ **To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire**

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Toyota fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

■ **Fuse box near the power control unit**

Never check or replace the fuses as there are high voltage parts and wiring near the fuse box.
Doing so may cause electric shock, resulting in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Before replacing fuses**

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 441 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulbs by yourself. The difficulty level of replacement varies depending on the bulb. As there is a danger that components may be damaged, we recommend that replacement is carried out by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

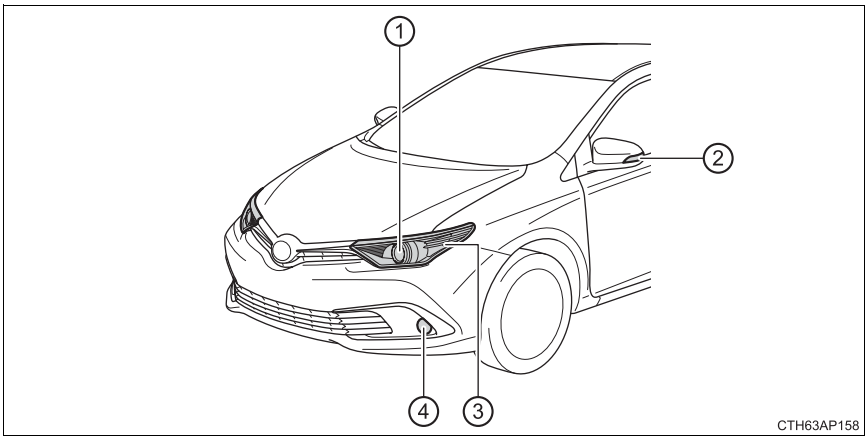
Preparing for light bulb replacement

Check the wattage of the light bulb to be replaced. (→P. 537)

Bulb locations

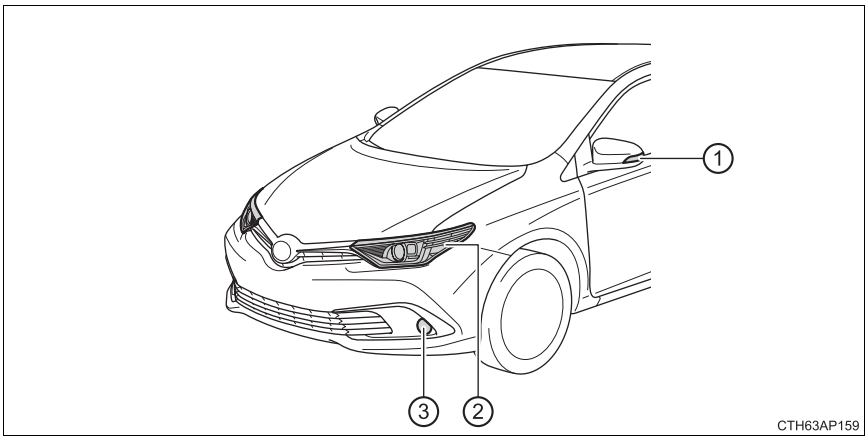
■ Front

▶ Vehicles with halogen headlights



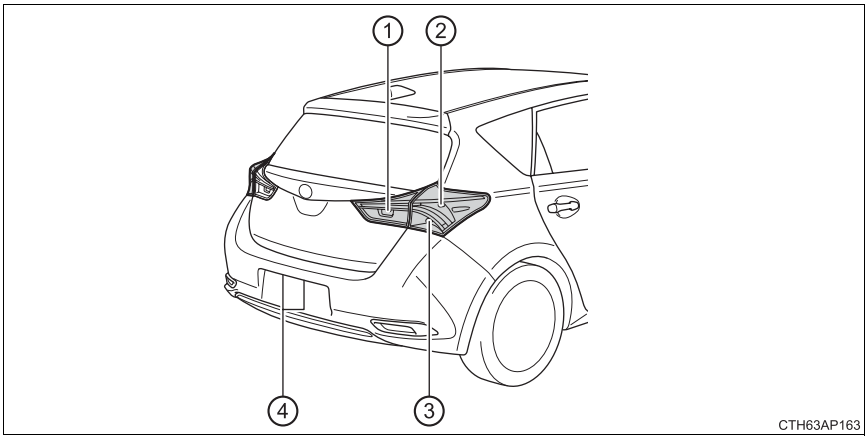
① Headlights
② Side turn signal lights
③ Front turn signal lights
④ Front fog lights (if equipped)

▶ Vehicles with LED headlights



① Side turn signal lights
② Front turn signal lights
③ Front fog lights (if equipped)

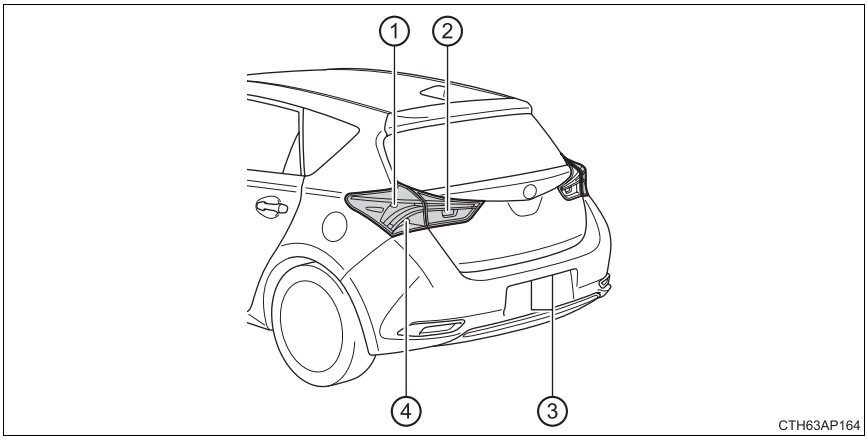
■ **Rear (left-hand drive vehicles)**



① Back-up light
② Stop lights
③ Rear turn signal lights
④ License plate lights

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 443 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Rear (right-hand drive vehicles)**

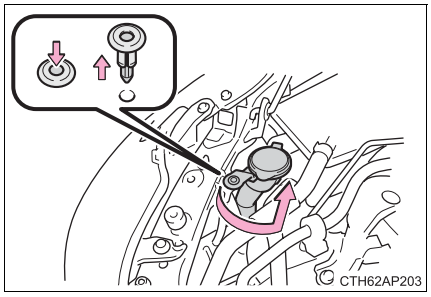


① Stop lights
② Back-up light
③ License plate lights
④ Rear turn signal lights

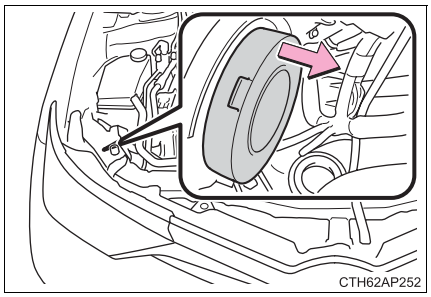
Replacing light bulbs

■ Headlights (vehicles with halogen headlights)

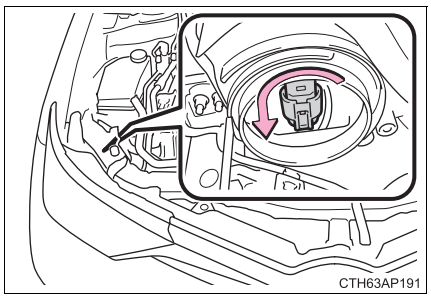
1 Remove the securing clip. Pull out the washer fluid filler opening after turning it. (When replacing right side bulb only.)



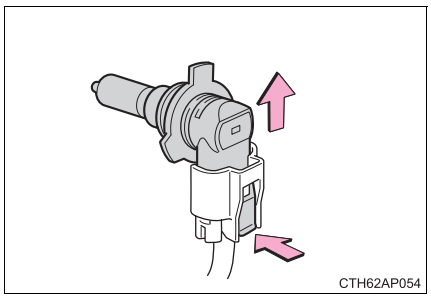
2 Remove the cover.



3 Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise and remove it.



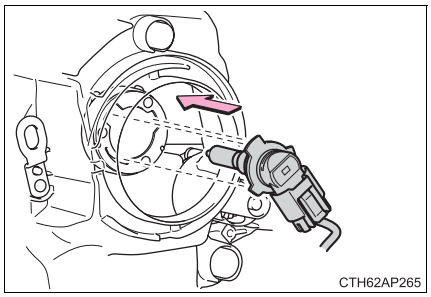
4 Unplug the connector while pressing the lock release.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 445 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

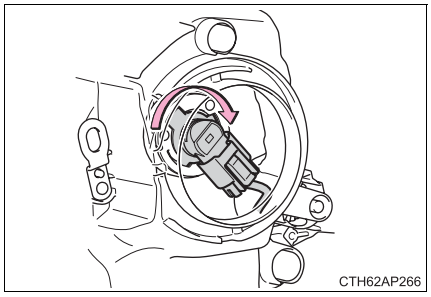
5 Replace the light bulb, and install the bulb base.

Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting and insert.



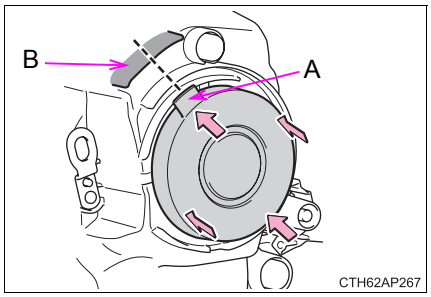
6 Turn and secure the bulb base.

Shake the bulb base gently to check that it is not loose, turn the headlights on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.

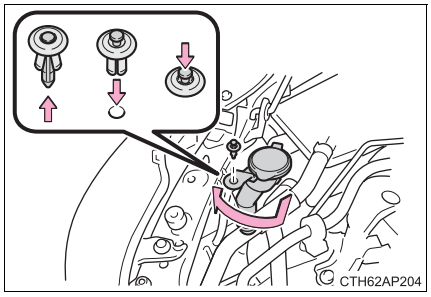


7 Install the cover.

To make sure the cover is installed securely, align the protruding part (A) with the center of the area (B) shown in the illustration and push the perimeter of the cover firmly.



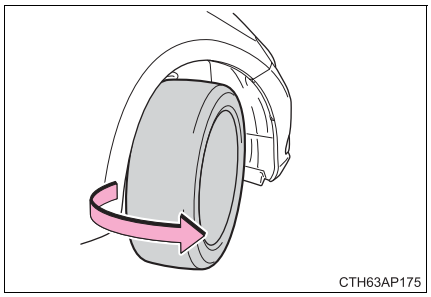
8 Install the washer fluid filler opening by inserting and turning it. Install the securing clip. (When replacing right side bulb only.)



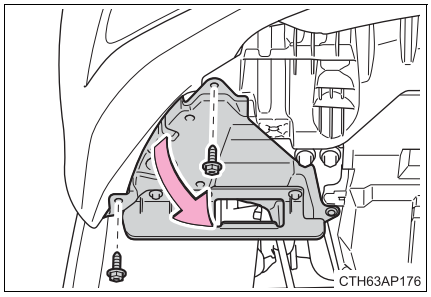
■ Front fog lights (if equipped)

1 Turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction of the light to be replaced.

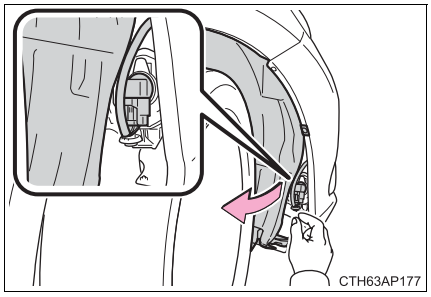
Turn the steering wheel to a point that allows your hand to easily fit between the tire and fender liner.



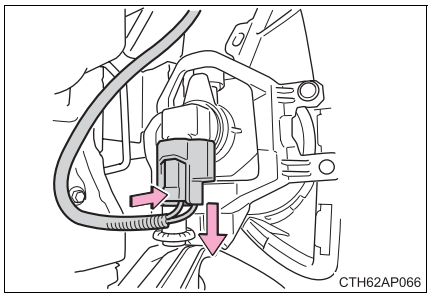
2 Remove the 2 screws and partly remove the fender liner.



3 Partly remove the fender liner until the bulb is visible.

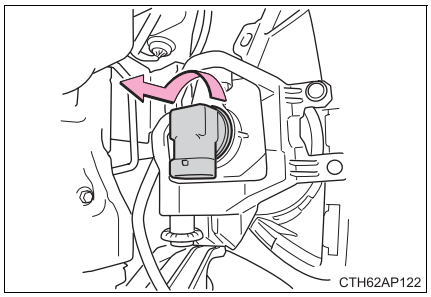


4 Unplug the connector while pressing the lock release.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 447 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

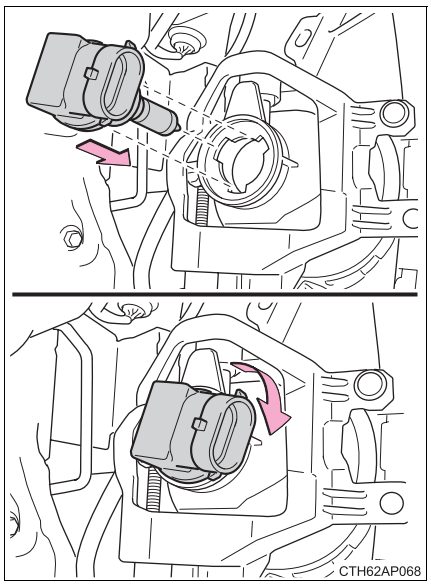
5 Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise and remove it.



6 Install a new light bulb.

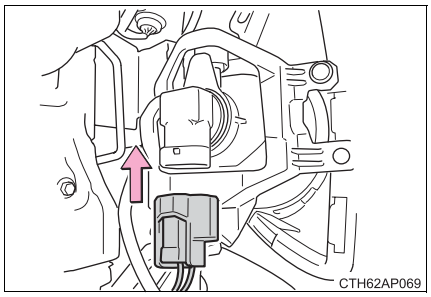
Align the 3 tabs on the light bulb with the mounting and insert.

Turn clockwise and secure the bulb base.



7 Install the connector.

Shake the connector gently to check that it is not loose, turn the front fog lights on once and visually confirm that no light is leaking through the mounting.

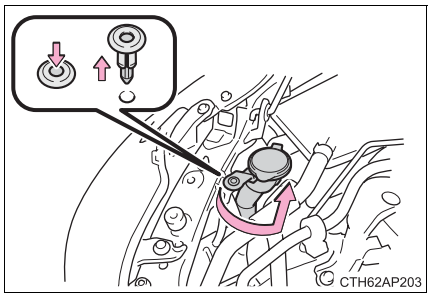


8 When installing the fender liner, install by conducting 3 and 2 with the directions reversed.

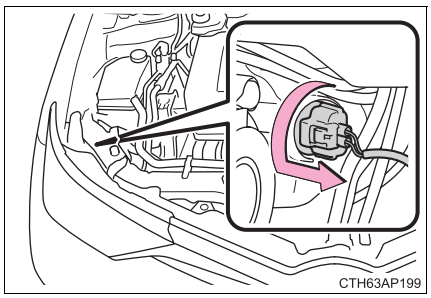
Make sure that the fender liner is attached to the inside of the bumper.

■ Front turn signal lights

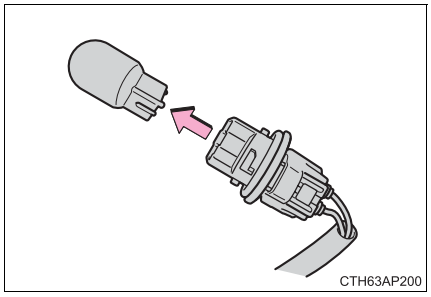
1 Remove the securing clip. Pull out the washer fluid filler opening after turning it. (When replacing right side bulb only.)



2 Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise.

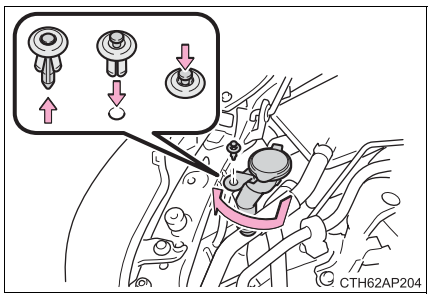


3 Remove the light bulb.



4 When installing the light bulb, install by conducting 3 and 2 with the directions reversed.

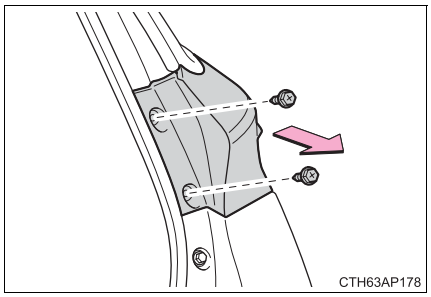
5 Install the washer fluid filler opening by inserting and turning it. Install the securing clip. (When replacing right side bulb only.)



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 449 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Stop lights and rear turn signal lights

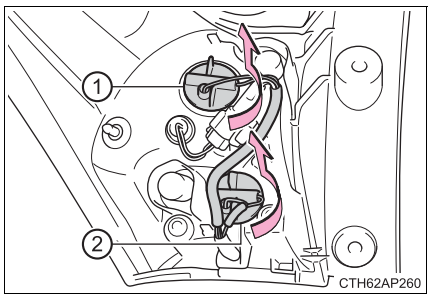
1 Open the back door and remove the 2 screws. Remove the lamp assembly by pulling it straight back.


CTH63AP178

2 Turn the bulb base counter-clockwise.

① Stop lights

② Rear turn signal lights

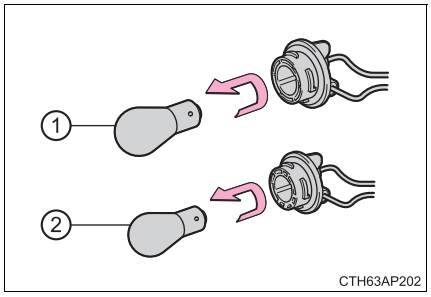


CTH62AP260

3 Remove the light bulb.

① Stop lights

② Rear turn signal lights

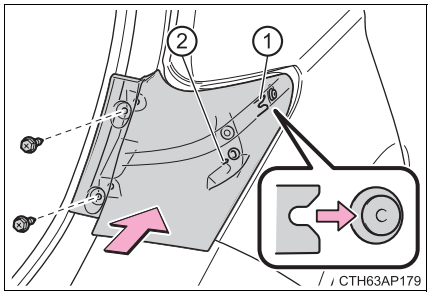


CTH63AP202

4 When installing the light bulb, install by conducting 3 and 2 with the directions reversed.

5 Install the lamp assembly and then install the 2 screws.

Align the guide (①) and pin (②) on the lamp assembly with the mounting when installing it.



CTH63AP179

7

Maintenance and care

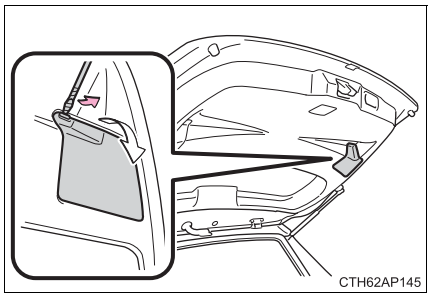
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 450 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Back-up light

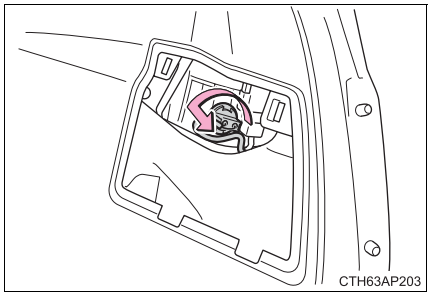
1 Open the back door and remove the cover.

Insert a flathead screwdriver or similar into the hole at the top of the cover and remove it as shown in the illustration.

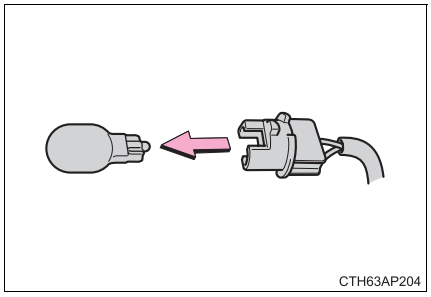
To prevent damaging the vehicle, wrap the flathead screwdriver with a tape.



2 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise and remove it.



3 Remove the light bulb.



4 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

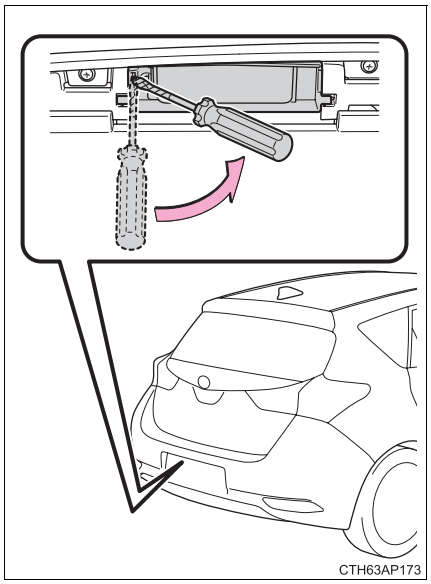
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 451 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ License plate lights

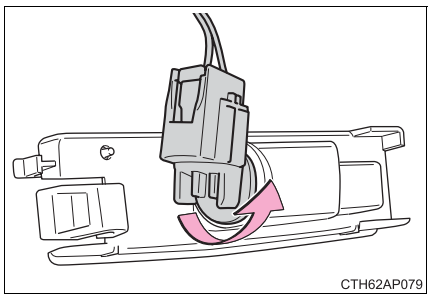
1 Remove the light unit

Insert a flathead screwdriver or similar into the hole next to the light and remove it as shown in the illustration.

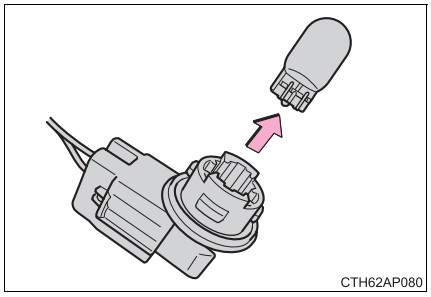
To prevent damaging the vehicle, wrap the flathead screwdriver with a tape.


CTH63AP173

2 Turn the bulb base counterclockwise and remove it.


CTH62AP079

3 Remove the light bulb


CTH62AP080

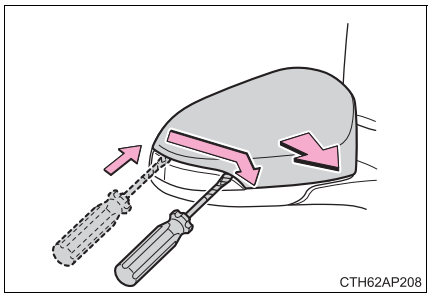
4 When installing, reverse the steps listed.

■ Side turn signal lights

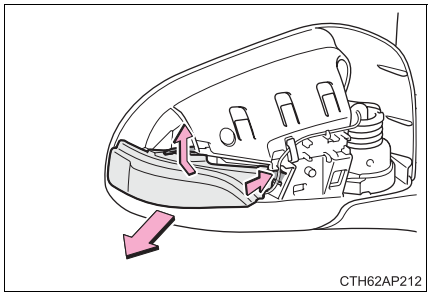
1 Remove the cover

Insert the flathead screwdriver and slide along the side turn signal light.

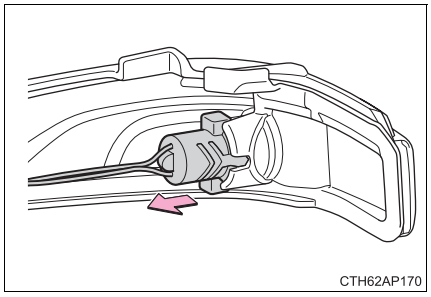
To prevent damaging the vehicle, wrap the flathead screwdriver with a tape.


CTH62AP208

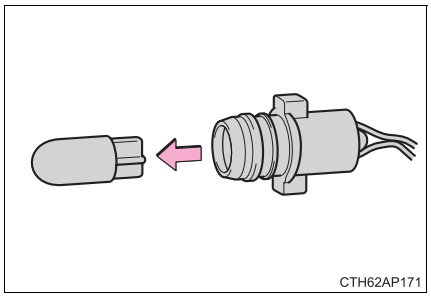
2 Press on the 2 clips and remove the side turn signal light from the visor housing.


CTH62AP212

3 Remove the socket from the side turn signal light housing.


CTH62AP170

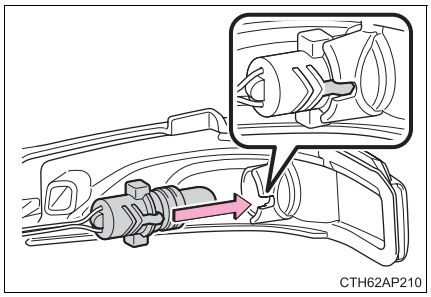
4 Remove the bulb.


CTH62AP171

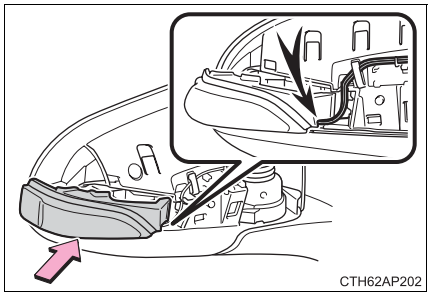
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 453 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

5 Replace the bulb and install the socket to the side turn signal light housing.

Align the grooves of the socket to the side turn signal light housing.

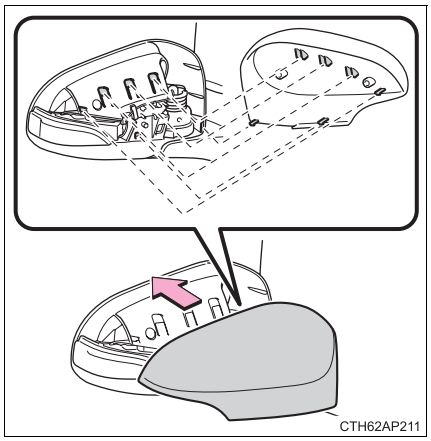


6 With the wire harness passing through the lower part of the side turn signal light, install it to the visor housing.



7 Align the 6 tabs and install the cover.

After hearing a click sound, confirm that the cover is secure.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 454 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Replacing the following bulbs

If any of the lights listed below has burnt out, have it replaced by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

- Headlights (vehicles with LED headlights)
- Front position lights/daytime running lights
- High mounted stoplight
- Tail lights
- Rear fog light

■ LED light bulbs

The headlights (vehicles with LED headlights), rear fog light, high mounted stoplight, front position lights/daytime running lights and tail lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional to have the light replaced.

■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction.
Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

■ When replacing light bulbs

→P. 440

⚠ WARNING

■ Replacing light bulbs

- Turn off the lights. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the lights.
  The bulbs become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When it is unavoidable to hold the glass portion, use and hold with a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and oils on the bulb.
  Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulbs and any parts used to secure them. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the headlight unit. This may damage the headlights or cause condensation to build up on the lens.

■ To prevent damage or fire

Make sure bulbs are fully seated and locked.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 455 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

When trouble arises 8

8-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 456

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 457

8-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 458

If you think something is wrong 464

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 465

If a warning message is displayed 472

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire) 481

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit) 493

If the hybrid system will not start 508

If the electronic key does not operate properly 510

If the 12-volt battery is discharged 513

If your vehicle overheats 518

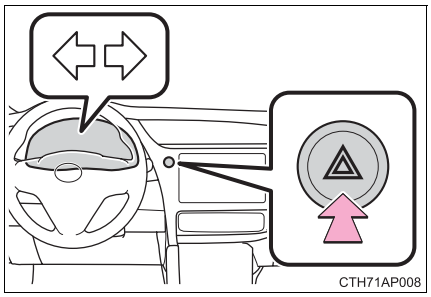
If the vehicle becomes stuck 523

Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Press the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash. To turn them off, press the switch once again.



■ Emergency flashers

If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the hybrid system is not operating (while the “READY” indicator is not illuminated), the 12-volt battery may discharge.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 457 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

2 Change the shift position to N.

▶ If the shift position can be changed to N

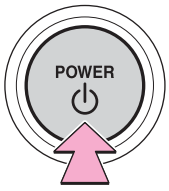
3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

4 Stop the hybrid system.

▶ If the shift position cannot be changed to N

3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

4 To stop the hybrid system, press and hold the power switch for 2 consecutive seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



Press and hold for 2 seconds or more, or press briefly 3 times or more

CTH71AP006

5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

WARNING

■ If the hybrid system has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the steering wheel will be lost, making the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the hybrid system.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 458 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or commercial towing service, using a wheel-lift type truck or flatbed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

Situations when it is not possible to be towed by another vehicle

In the following situations, it is not possible to be towed by another vehicle using cables or chains, as the front wheels may be locked due to the parking lock. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or commercial towing service.

- There is a malfunction in the P position control system. (→P. 472)
- There is a malfunction in the immobilizer system. (→P. 82)
- There is a malfunction in the smart entry & start system. (→P. 510)
- The 12-volt battery is discharged. (→P. 513)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 459 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

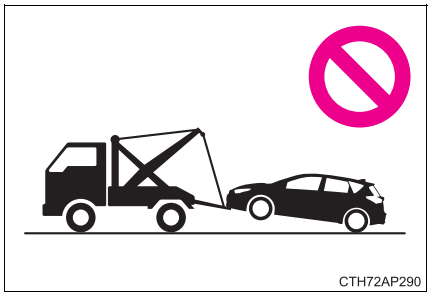
Situations when it is necessary to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or commercial towing service before towing.

- The hybrid system warning light turns on and the vehicle does not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

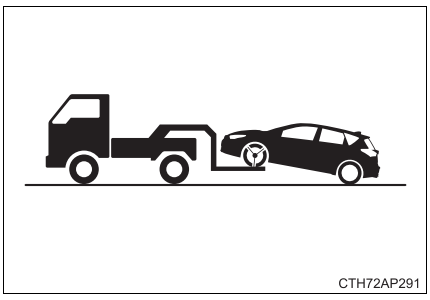
Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.


CTH72AP290

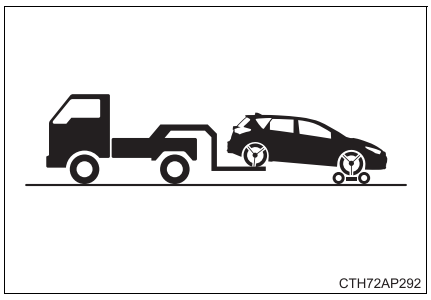
Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

▶ From the front


CTH72AP291

Release the parking brake.

▶ From the rear


CTH72AP292

Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

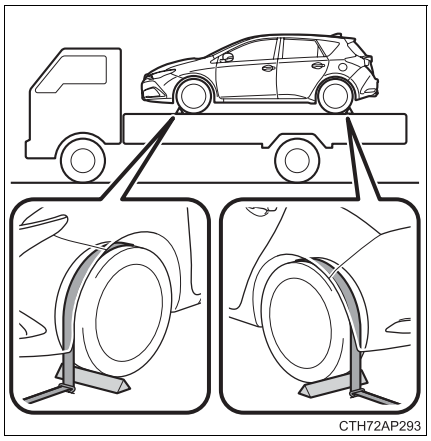
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 460 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Using a flatbed truck

1 Apply the parking brake and turn the power switch off.

Use wheel chocks for all 4 wheels to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

2 Secure the vehicle by strapping the tires to the deck of the tow truck as shown.



Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using cables or chains secured to the emergency towing eyelets. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for short distance at under 5 km/h (3 mph).

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

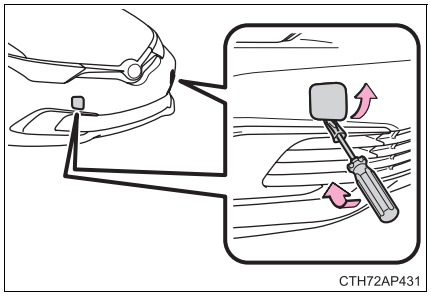
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 461 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Emergency towing procedure

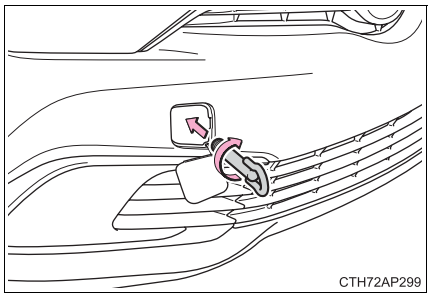
1 Take out the towing eyelet. (→P. 482, 494)

2 Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

To prevent damage, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.

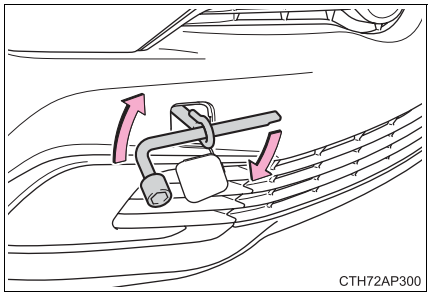


3 Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



4 Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench* or hard metal bar.

*: If the vehicle is not equipped with a wheel nut wrench, a wheel nut wrench can be purchased at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.



5 Securely attach cables or chains to the towing eyelet.

Take care not to damage the vehicle body.

6 Enter the vehicle being towed and start the hybrid system.

If the hybrid system does not start, turn the power switch to ON mode.

7 Shift the shift position to N and release the parking brake.

While towing

If the hybrid system is off, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

Wheel nut wrench

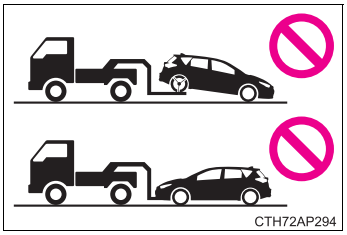
Vehicles without a wheel nut wrench: Wheel nut wrench can be purchased at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
Vehicles with a wheel nut wrench: Wheel nut wrench is installed in the luggage compartment. (→P. 482)

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

When towing the vehicle

Be sure to transport the vehicle with the front wheels raised or with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the front wheels contacting the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged or electricity generated by the operation of the motor may cause a fire to occur depending on the nature of the damage or malfunction.


CTH72AP294

While towing

- When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing eyelets, cables or chains. The towing eyelets, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people, and cause serious damage.
- Do not turn the power switch off.
  This may lead to an accident as the front wheels will be locked by the parking lock.

Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle

Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 463 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck

- Do not tow the vehicle from the rear when the power switch is off. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
- When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.

To prevent damage to the vehicle during emergency towing

Do not secure cables or chains to the suspension components.

To prevent damage to the vehicle when using a flatbed truck

- Do not drive over wheel chocks, as doing so may damage the tires.
- Do not tie down the vehicle over any parts other than the tires (do not use parts such as the suspension).

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 464 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle.
  (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- The high engine coolant temperature display is shown on the multi-information display.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 465 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Warning light and warning buzzer list

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
	**Brake system warning light in red (warning buzzer)*1** Indicates that: • The brake fluid level is low; or • The brake system is malfunctioning This light also comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released the system is operating normally. → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**
	**Brake system warning light in yellow** Indicates a malfunction in: • The regenerative brake system; or • The electronically controlled brake system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
	**High engine coolant temperature warning light** Indicates that the engine is almost overheating. (→P. 518) → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.**

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
	**Malfunction indicator lamp** Indicates a malfunction in: • The hybrid system; • The electronic engine control system; or • The electronic throttle control system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
	**SRS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The SRS airbag system; or • The seat belt pretensioner system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
	**ABS warning light** Indicates a malfunction in: • The ABS; or • The brake assist system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
	**Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)** Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**
 (Comes on)	**Slip indicator** Indicates a malfunction in: • The VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system; • The TRC (Traction Control) system; or • The hill-start assist control system The light will flash when the ABS, VSC or the TRC is operating. (→P. 284) → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.**

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 467 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
 (If equipped)	**PCS warning light** When the warning light flashes (and a buzzer sounds): Indicates a malfunction in the PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) → **Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.** When the warning light flashes (and a buzzer does not sound): Indicates that the PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) is temporarily unavailable, possibly due to either of the following: • The part of the windshield around the front sensor being dirty, fogged up or covered with condensation, ice, stickers, etc. → **Clear the dirt, fog, condensation, ice, stickers, etc. (→P. 232)** • Front sensor temperature being outside of its operational range → **Wait for a while until the area around the front sensor has cooled down sufficiently.** When the warning light is illuminated: Either the VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system or PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) is disabled or both are disabled. → **To enable the PCS, enable both the VSC system and PCS. (→P. 235, 285)**
	**Low fuel level warning light** Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 6.8 L (1.8 gal., 1.5 Imp. gal.) or less → **Refuel the vehicle.**
	**Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*2** Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.** **If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) turn off.**

Warning light	Warning light/Details/Actions
	**Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights (warning buzzer)*2** Warns the rear passengers to fasten their seat belts. → **Fasten the seat belt.**
 (If equipped)	**Tire pressure warning light** When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as • Natural causes (→P. 469) • Flat tire (→P. 481, 493) → **Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level.** **The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.** When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system (→P. 470) → **Have the system checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.**
	**Master warning light** A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction. → **P. 472**

*1: Brake system warning buzzer:
When there is a possible problem that could affect braking performance, the warning light will come on and a warning buzzer will sound.

Parking brake engaged warning buzzer:
The buzzer sounds to indicate that the parking brake is still engaged (with the vehicle having reached a speed of 5 km/h [3 mph]).

*2: Driver's and passengers' seat belt buzzer:

The driver's and passengers' seat belt buzzer sounds to alert the driver and passengers that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of at least 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 469 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Front passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer**

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ **If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving**

The malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

Carry out the following procedure after the tire temperature has lowered sufficiently.

- Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust it to the appropriate level.
- If the warning light does not go out after several minutes, check that the tire inflation pressure is at the specified level and carry out initialization.

The warning light may come on again if the above operations are conducted without first allowing the tire temperature to lower sufficiently.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks and tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **When a tire is replaced with a spare tire (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

The compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will go off after a few minutes.

■ **Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

→P. 421

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 470 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the power switch is turned to ON mode, have it checked by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ **Warning buzzer**

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard because of noisy place or an audio sound.

■ **Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)**

When the 12-volt battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 471 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When the electric power steering system warning light comes on

The steering wheel may become extremely heavy.
If the steering wheel becomes heavier than usual when operating, hold firmly and operate using more force than usual.

■ If the tire pressure warning light comes on (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- Vehicles with a compact spare tire: If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit: If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, repair the flat tire by using emergency tire puncture repair kit.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

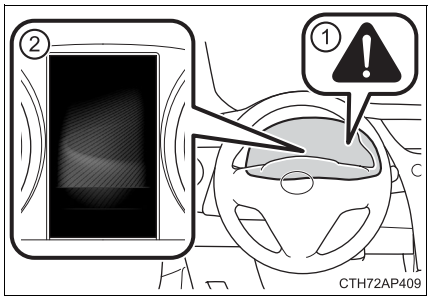
⚠ NOTICE

■ To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, and messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.



① Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

② Multi-information display

If any of the message or indicator comes on again after the following actions have been performed, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 473 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	—	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed
—	Comes on or flashes	Sounds or does not sound	Indicates an important situation, such as when the systems shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning
Flashes	—	Sounds	Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on	—	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance
—	—	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 474 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If the shifting operation of the hybrid transmission is rejected

The following messages may be displayed. Take the appropriate action as shown below:

■ **If “12-volt battery low. Shifting unavailable. Read Owner’s Manual.” is displayed**

Indicates that an attempt was made to change the shift position when the voltage of the 12-volt battery was low.
Charge or replace the 12-volt battery.

■ **If “Shifting temporarily unavailable. Wait a moment and try again.” is displayed**

Indicates that the shift lever and P position switch were operated repeatedly in quick succession.
Wait approximately 20 seconds and then change the shift position.

■ **If “Switched to N. To engage P mode, stop car then press P switch.” is displayed**

Indicates that the P position switch has been pressed while driving and that the shift position has been changed to N automatically.
To enable shifting to P, stop the vehicle completely and press the P position switch. To continue driving, change the shift position to D or R.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 475 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If caution about parking is necessary

If any of the following messages are displayed, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.
When parking, park the vehicle on level ground and firmly set the parking brake.

■ If “P lock malfunction. When parking, park in flat place and apply parking brake securely” is displayed

Indicates the following:

- The parking lock mechanism may not operate. Also, changing the shift position to P may not be possible.
- The hybrid system may not be able to be started.
- The power switch may not be able to be turned off.

If the power switch cannot be turned off, set the parking brake and then operate the power switch to turn it off.

■ If “Shift system failure. When parking, apply parking brake. Read Owner’s Manual.” is displayed

Refer to “P lock malfunction. When parking, park in flat place and apply parking brake securely.”.

■ If “Shift system comm. failure. When parking, apply parking brake. Read Owner’s Manual.” is displayed

Indicates that the automatic P position selection function may not be operating.
Before turning the power switch off, press the P position switch. Verify that the shift position has been changed to P by checking the shift position indicators.

■ If “12-volt battery low. When parking, apply parking brake. Read Owner’s Manual.” is displayed

Indicates the following:

- 12-volt battery may not be charged sufficiently.
- Changing the shift position to P may not be possible.
- The hybrid system may not be able to be started.

Charge or replace the 12-volt battery. After charging the 12-volt battery, the message may be displayed until the shift position is changed from P.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 476 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If a message about the hybrid system or hybrid battery (traction battery) is displayed

If any of the following messages are displayed, take the appropriate actions as shown below:

■ If “Press brake when vehicle is stopped. Hybrid system may overheat.” is displayed

Message is displayed when the accelerator pedal is depressed to maintain the vehicle position when stopped on an upward slope, etc.

If this continues, the hybrid system may overheat. Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.

■ If “Hybrid battery low. Hybrid system stopped. Shift to P and restart.” is displayed

Message is displayed when the remaining charge for the hybrid battery (traction battery) is low, because vehicle has been shifted N for a long period of time.

When operating the vehicle, restart the hybrid system.

■ If “Hybrid system malfunction. Stop in a safe place. See owner’s manual.” is displayed

Refer to “If a message instructing to refer to the Owner’s Manual is displayed”. (→P. 478)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 477 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **If “Hybrid battery low. Shift out of N to recharge.” is displayed**

Message is displayed when the remaining charge for the hybrid battery (traction battery) is low.
As the hybrid battery (traction battery) cannot be charged when the shift position is in N, when stopped for long periods of time change the shift position to P.

■ **If “Hybrid system overheated. Reduced output power.” is displayed**

This message may be displayed when driving under severe operating conditions.
(For example, when driving up a long steep hill.)
Handling method: →P. 518

■ **If “Maintenance required for hybrid battery cooling parts at your dealer.” is displayed**

The filter may be clogged, or the air intake vents or ducts may be blocked.
Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 478 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If a message instructing to refer to the Owner's Manual is displayed

● If any of the following messages are displayed, take the appropriate actions as shown on the following pages in this Owner's Manual:
  • "12-volt battery low. Shifting unavailable. Read Owner's Manual.": →P. 474
  • "Shift system failure. When parking, apply parking brake. Read owner's manual.": →P. 475
  • "Shift system comm. failure. When parking, apply parking brake. Read owner's manual.": →P. 475
  • "12-volt battery low. When parking, apply parking brake. Read Owner's Manual.": →P. 475

● If the following messages are displayed, there may be a malfunction.
  Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
  • "Brake effectiveness is reduced due to failure, please stop in a safe area and check manual."
  • "Hybrid system malfunction. Stop in a safe place. See owner's manual."

● If the following message is displayed, there may be a malfunction.
  Immediately have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
  • "Shift system failure. Read Owner's Manual."

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 479 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Other messages displayed on the multi-information display

Take the appropriate actions as instructed in the message displayed.

If any of the following messages are displayed, also refer to this Owner's Manual.

■ If "Check charging system." is displayed

Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system.

Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ If "Engine oil pressure low." is displayed

Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ When "Headlight system malfunction. Visit your dealer." is displayed on the multi-information display (if equipped)

The following systems may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately.

- The LED headlight system
- The automatic headlight leveling system
- Automatic High Beam

■ If "Front sensor systems are temporarily unavailable due to inappropriate temp. Wait a moment." or "Front sensor systems are temporarily unavailable due to blocked vision. Clean windshield." is displayed. (if equipped)

The following systems may be suspended until the problem shown in the message is resolved.

- PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert)
- Automatic High Beam
- RSA (Road Sign Assist)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 480 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **If “Shift to P before exiting vehicle.” is displayed**

Message is displayed when the driver’s door is opened without turning the power switch to off with the shift position in any position other than P.

Change the shift position to P.

■ **If “Shift is in N. Release accelerator before shifting.” is displayed**

Message is displayed when the accelerator pedal has been depressed and the shift position is in N.

Release the accelerator pedal and change the shift position to D or R.

■ **System warning lights**

In the following situations, the master warning light will not come on or flash. Instead, a separate system warning light will come on along with a message displayed on the multi-information display.

- Malfunction of the brake system
  The brake system warning light will come on. (→P. 465)
- High engine coolant temperature
  The high engine coolant temperature warning light will be displayed. (→P. 465)

■ **Warning buzzer**

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard because of noisy place or an audio sound.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 481 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with a spare tire)

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.

For details about tires: →P. 417

⚠ WARNING

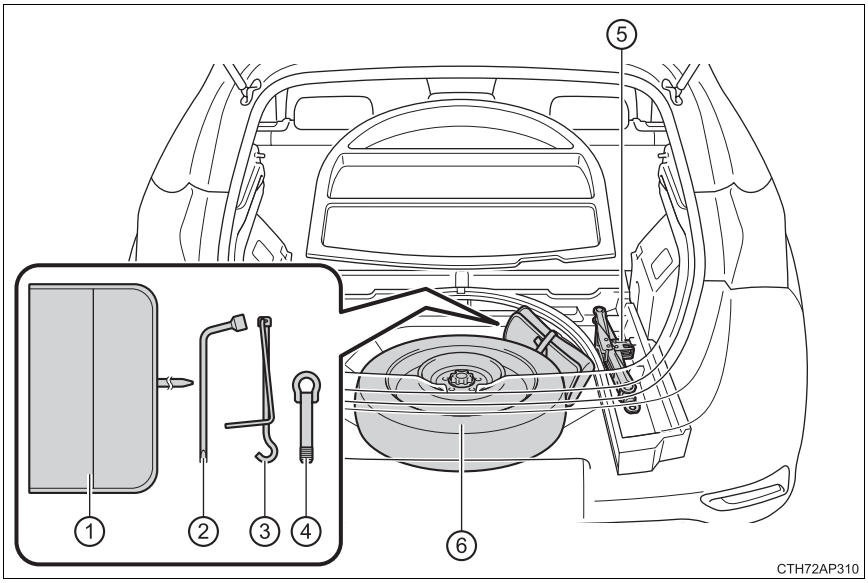
■ If you have a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift position to P.
- Stop the hybrid system.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P. 456)

Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



① Tool bag
② Wheel nut wrench
③ Jack handle
④ Towing eyelet
⑤ Jack
⑥ Spare tire

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 483 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■ Using the tire jack

Observe the following precautions.
Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

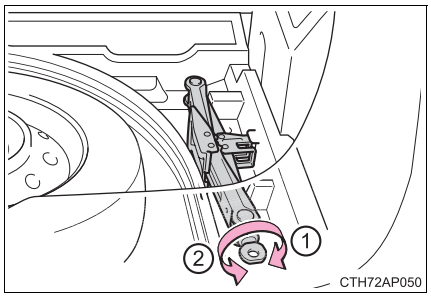
- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Put the jack properly in its jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- When lowering the vehicle, make sure that there is no-one near the vehicle. If there are people nearby, warn them vocally before lowering.

Taking out the jack

1 Remove the deck mat. (→P. 379)

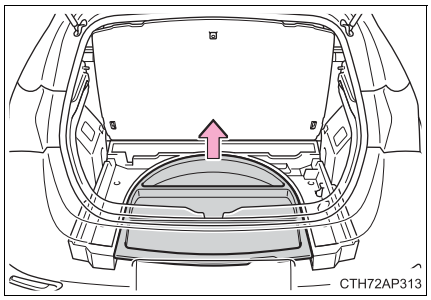
2 Take out the jack.

① For tightening
② For loosening

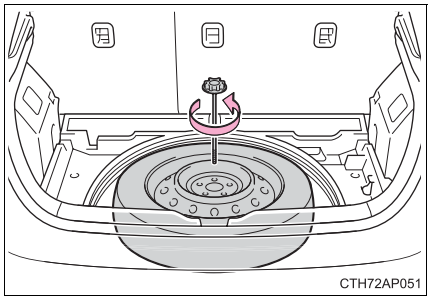


Taking out the spare tire

1 Remove the deck mat and tray. (→P. 379)



2 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.



WARNING

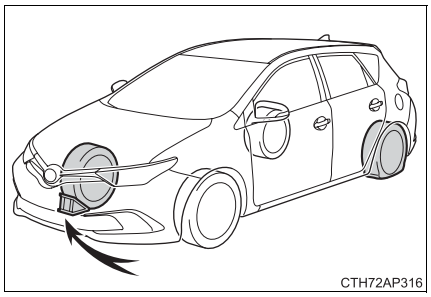
■When storing the spare tire

Be careful not to catch fingers or other body parts between the spare tire and the body of the vehicle.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 485 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

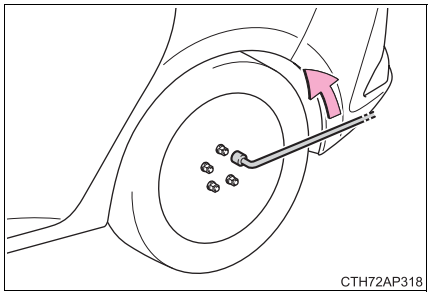
Replacing a flat tire

1 Chock the tires.



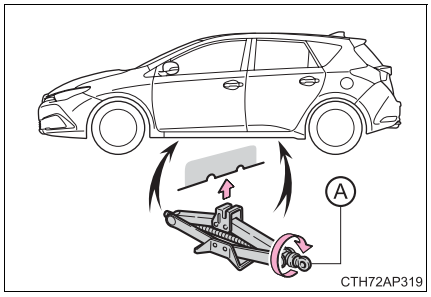
Flat tire		Wheel chock positions
Front	Left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear	Left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
	Right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

2 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).



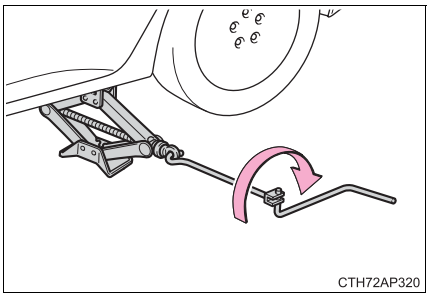
3 Turn the tire jack portion “A” by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point guides are located under the rocker panel. They indicate the jack point positions.



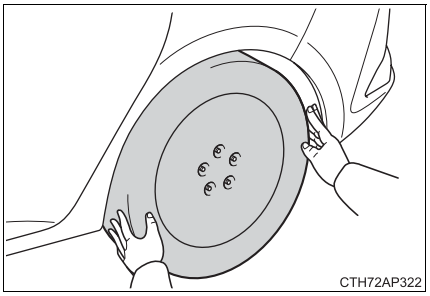
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 486 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

4 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



5 Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 487 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

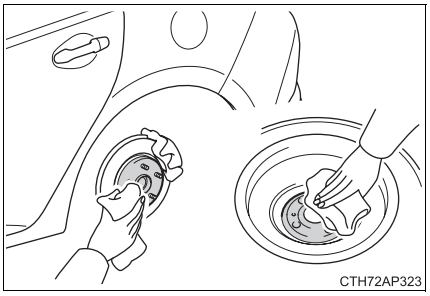
■ Replacing a flat tire

- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
  After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.
- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.
  - Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
    Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
  - Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
  - Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel while the vehicle is moving.
  - When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
  - If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
  - When installing the wheel nuts, be sure to install them with the tapered ends facing inward. (→P. 430)

Installing the spare tire

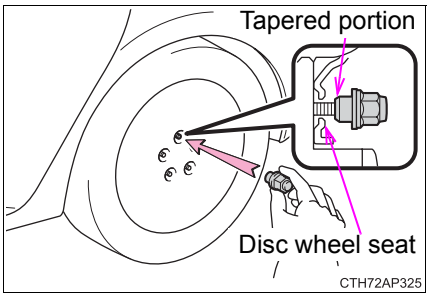
1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.

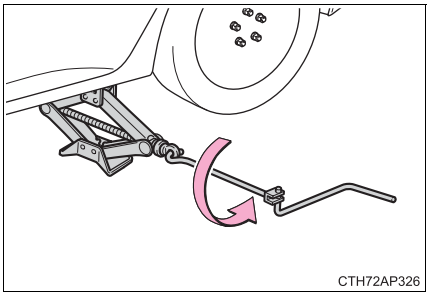

CTH72AP323

2 Install the tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

Tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion comes into loose contact with the disc wheel seat.

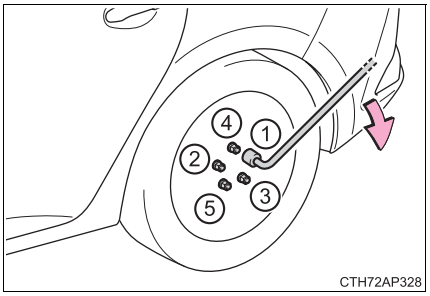


3 Lower the vehicle.



4 Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)



5 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 489 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **The compact spare tire**

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label “TEMPORARY USE ONLY” on the tire sidewall.
  Use the compact spare tire temporarily, and only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare tire. (→P. 534)

■ **When the compact spare tire is equipped**

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires.

■ **When using the spare tire (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)**

As the spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be indicated by the tire pressure warning system. Also, if you replace the spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

■ **If you have a flat front tire on a road covered with snow or ice**

Install the compact spare tire on one of the rear wheels of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the front tires:

1. Replace a rear tire with the compact spare tire.
2. Replace the flat front tire with the tire removed from the rear of the vehicle.
3. Fit tire chains to the front tires.

Certification for the jack

CE

Manufacturer's Declaration of Conformity

Manufacturer :

ARIKAN KRİKO A.Ş
Organize Sanayi Bölgesi 2.Cd.26110 ESKİŞEHİR / TURKEY

The EU Directives covered by this Declaration

2006 / 42 / EC Machinery Directive

The product covered by this declaration

JACK SUB-ASSY. PANTOGRAPH

model

0.8 ton , 1.1 ton

The basis on which conformity is being declared

The product identified above complies with the requirements of the Machinery Directive
Directive above by meeting following standards

857 – ISO 8720

The technical documentation required to demonstrate that the product meets the requirement the Machinery Directive has been compiled by the signatory below and is available for inspection by the relevant enforcement authorities.

A sample of the product has been tested by the manufacturer

Technical File No :2010-TOYOTA JACK-ISO8720-1

The CE mark was first applied in:2010

Done at Shizuoka , Japan

Ahmet ARIKAN
General Manager

Signature :

Date of Issue : 24.08.2010

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 491 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

When using the compact spare tire

- Remember that the compact spare tire provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tires simultaneously.
- Replace the compact spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, deceleration and braking, as well as sharp cornering.

When the compact spare tire is attached

The vehicle speed may not be correctly detected, and the following systems may not operate correctly:

- ABS & Brake assist
- VSC
- TRC
- Automatic High Beam (if equipped)
- Cruise control (if equipped)
- EPS
- PCS (if equipped)
- LDA (Lane departure alert) (if equipped)

Speed limit when using the compact spare tire

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 80 km/h (50 mph) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

After using the tools and jack

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 492 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

Be careful when driving over bumps with the compact spare tire installed on the vehicle.

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.

Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.
Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

When replacing the tires (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P. 418)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 493 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit)

Your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tire, but instead is equipped with an emergency tire puncture repair kit.
A puncture caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread can be repaired temporarily using the emergency tire puncture repair kit. (The kit contains a bottle of sealant. The sealant can be used only once to temporarily repair one tire without removing the nail or screw from the tire.) Depending on the damage, this kit cannot be used to repair the tire. (→P. 496)

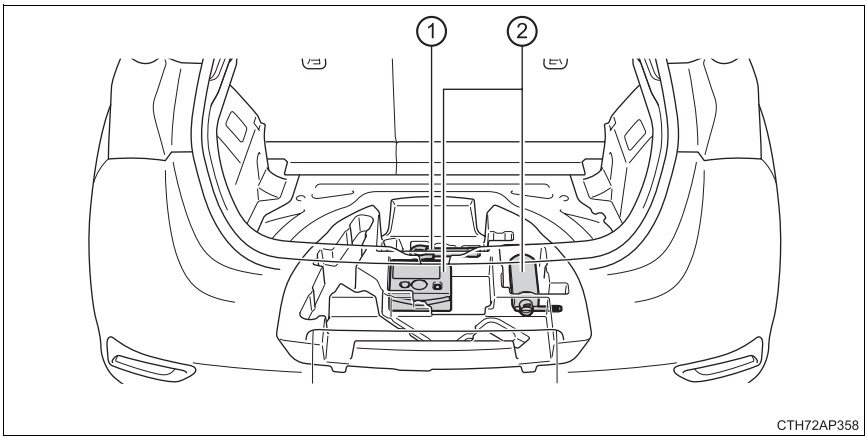
After temporarily repairing the tire with the kit, have the tire repaired or replaced by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. Repairs conducted using the emergency tire puncture repair kit are only a temporary measure. Have the tire repaired and replaced as soon as possible.

■ Before repairing the tire

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift position to P.
- Stop the hybrid system.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P. 456)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 494 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

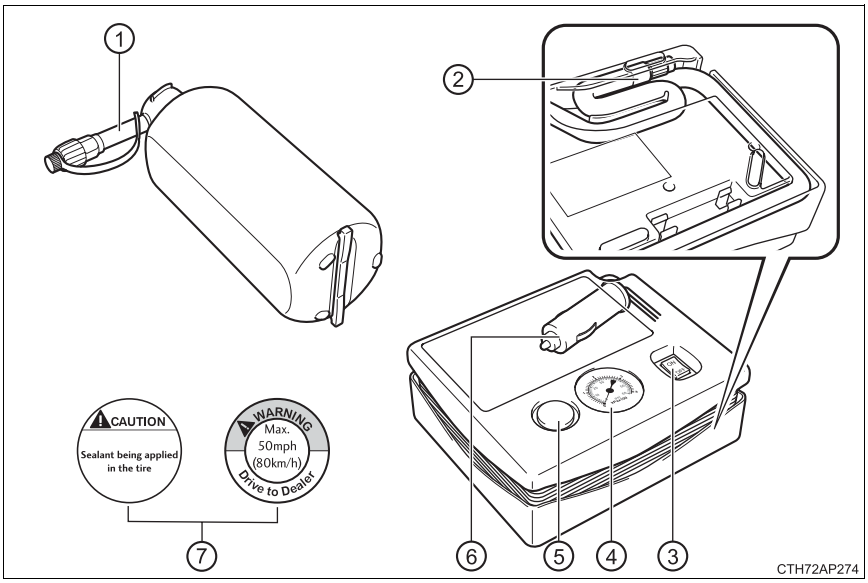
■ Location of the emergency tire puncture repair kit



① Towing eyelet

② Emergency tire puncture repair kit

■ Emergency tire puncture repair kit components



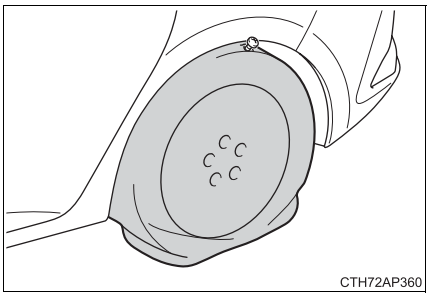
① Nozzle
② Hose
③ Compressor switch
④ Air pressure gauge
⑤ Pressure release button
⑥ Power plug
⑦ Stickers

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 496 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Before performing emergency repair

Check the degree of the tire damage.

Do not remove the nail or screw from the tire. Removing the object may widen the opening and prevent emergency repair with the repair kit.



Taking out the emergency tire puncture repair kit

1 Remove the deck mat. (→P. 379)

2 Take out the emergency tire puncture repair kit. (→P. 494)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 497 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

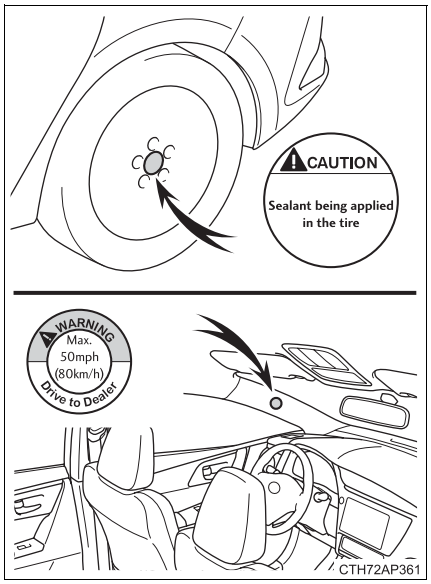
Emergency repair method

1 Take out the repair kit.

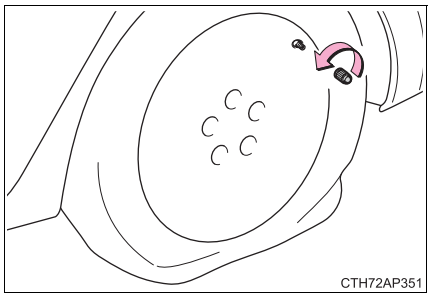
When taking out the bottle from the original bag, do not tear or discard the bag.

2 Attach the 2 stickers as shown.

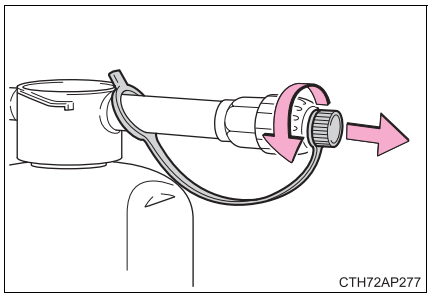
Remove any dirt and moisture from the wheel before attaching the label. If it is impossible to attach the label, make sure to tell any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or other duly qualified and equipped professional when you have them repair and replace the tire that sealant is injected.



3 Remove the valve cap from the valve of the punctured tire.



4 Remove the cap from the nozzle.

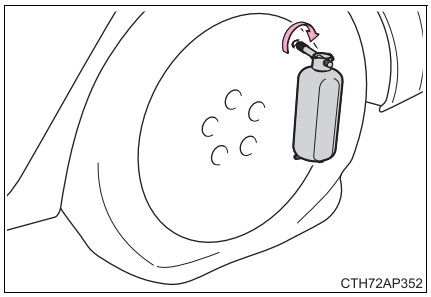


UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 498 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

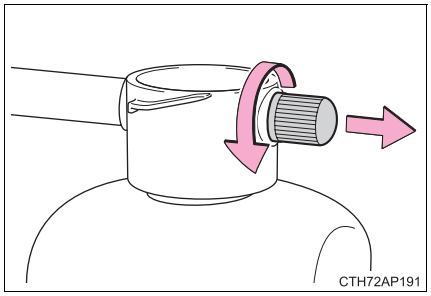
5 Connect the nozzle to the valve.

Screw the end of the nozzle clockwise as far as possible.

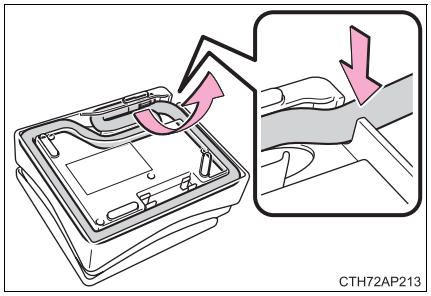
The bottle should hang vertically without contacting the ground. If the bottle does not hang vertically, move the vehicle so that the tire valve is located properly.



6 Remove the cap from the bottle.

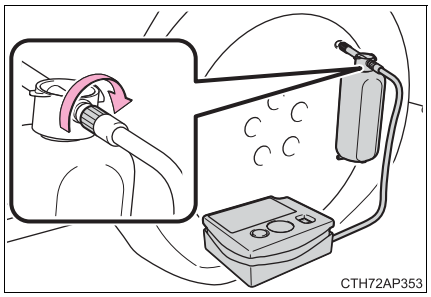


7 Pull the hose out from the compressor.



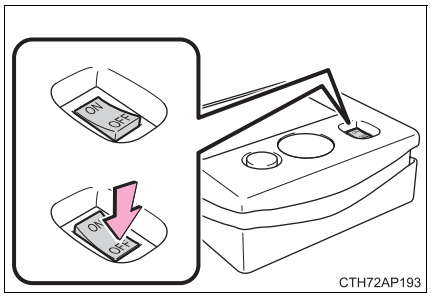
8 Connect the bottle to the compressor.

Screw the end of the nozzle clockwise as far as possible.



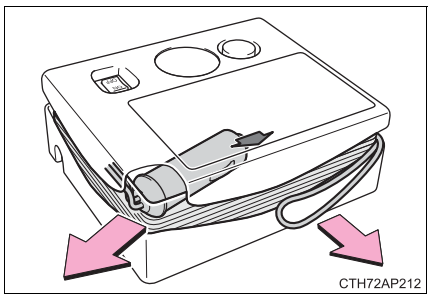
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 499 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

9 Make sure that the compressor switch is off.

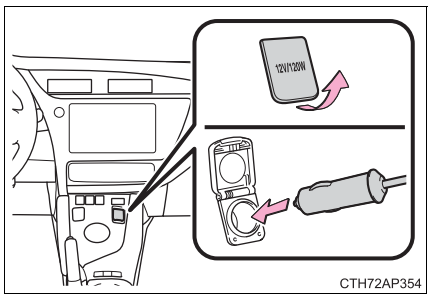


CTH72AP193

10 Remove the power plug from the compressor.


CTH72AP212

11 Connect the power plug to the power outlet socket. (→P. 385)

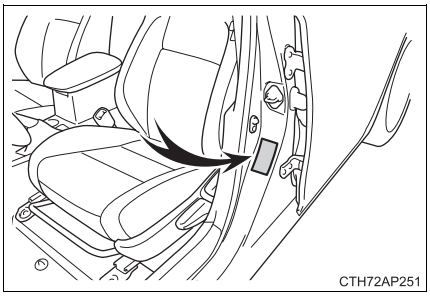


CTH72AP354

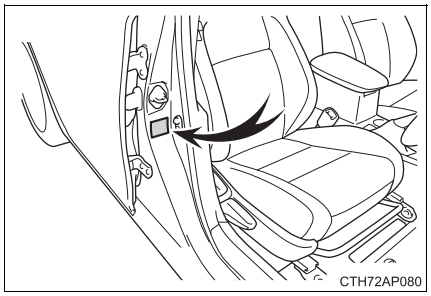
12 Check the specified tire inflation pressure.

Tire inflation pressure is specified on the label as shown. (→P. 534)

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles

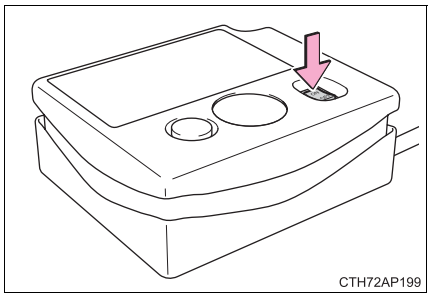

CTH72AP251

▶ Right-hand drive vehicles


CTH72AP080

13 Start the hybrid system.

14 To inject the sealant and inflate the tire, turn the compressor switch on.

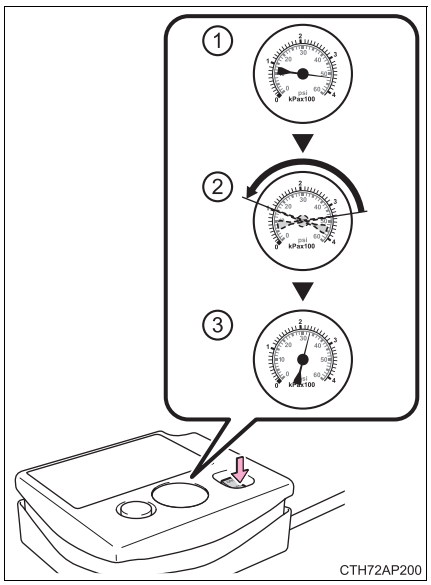

CTH72AP199

15 Inflate the tire until the specified air pressure is reached.

① The sealant will be injected and the pressure will surge and then gradually decrease.

② The air pressure gauge will display the actual tire inflation pressure about 1 minute (5 minutes at low temperature) after the switch is turned on.

③ Inflate the tire until the specified air pressure.

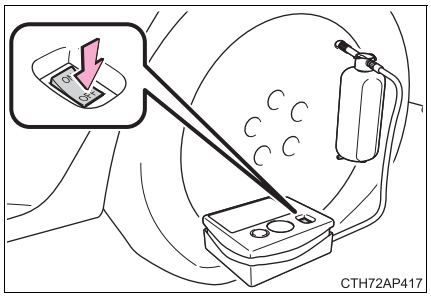


CTH72AP200

- If the tire inflation pressure is still lower than the specified point after inflation for 35 minutes with the switch on, the tire is too damaged to be repaired. Turn the compressor switch off and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- If the tire inflation pressure exceeds the specified air pressure, let out some air to adjust the tire inflation pressure. (→P. 503, 534)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 501 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

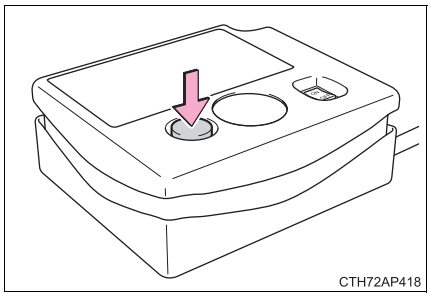
16 Turn the compressor off.



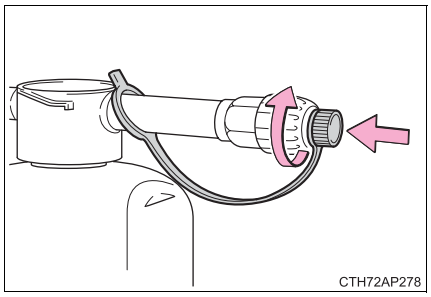
17 Disconnect the nozzle from the valve on the tire and then pull out the power plug from the power outlet socket.

Some sealant may leak when the hose is removed.

18 Press the button to release pressure from the bottle.



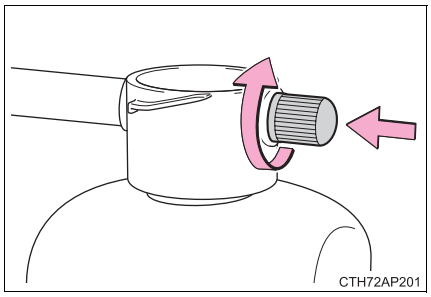
19 Attach the cap to the nozzle.



20 Install the valve cap onto the valve of the repaired tire.

21 Disconnect the hose from the bottle and attach the cap to the bottle.

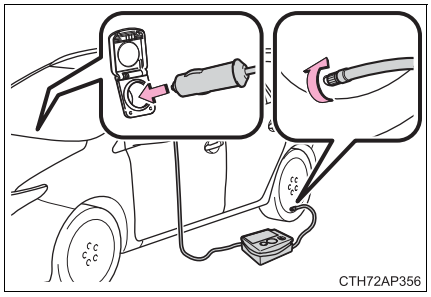
Place the bottle in the original bag and zip it.



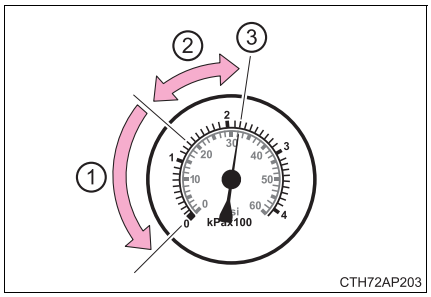
22 Temporarily store the bottle and compressor in the luggage compartment.

23 To spread the liquid sealant evenly within the tire, immediately drive safely for about 5 km (3 miles) below 80 km/h (50 mph).

24 After driving for about 5 km (3 miles), stop your vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface and connect the compressor.


CTH72AP356

25 Check the tire inflation pressure.



CTH72AP203

① If the tire inflation pressure is under 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi): The puncture cannot be repaired. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

② If the tire inflation pressure is 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi) or higher, but less than the specified air pressure: Proceed to 26.

③ If the tire inflation pressure is the specified air pressure (→P. 534): Proceed to 27.

26 Turn the compressor switch on to inflate the tire until the specified air pressure is reached. Drive for about 5 km (3 miles) and then perform 24.

27 Store the compressor in the luggage compartment.

28 Taking precautions to avoid sudden braking, sudden acceleration and sharp turns, drive carefully at under 80 km/h (50 mph) to the nearest authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for tire repair or replacement.

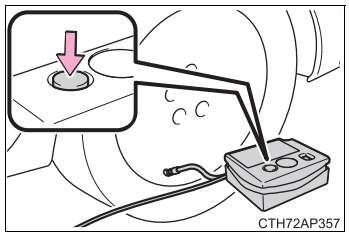
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 503 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **In the following cases, the tire cannot be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.**

- When the tire is damaged due to driving without sufficient air pressure
- When there are any cracks or damage at any location on the tire, such as on the side wall, except the tread
- When the tire is visibly separated from the wheel
- When the cut or damage to the tread is 4 mm (0.16 in.) long or more
- When the wheel is damaged
- When two or more tires have been punctured
- When 2 or more sharp objects such as nails or screws have passed through the tread on a single tire
- When the sealant has expired

■ **If the tire is inflated to more than the specified air pressure**

1 Press the button to let some air out.


CTH72AP357

2 Check that the air pressure indicator shows the specified air pressure.

If the air pressure is under the designated pressure, turn the compressor switch on again and repeat the inflation procedure until the specified air pressure is reached.

■ **After a tire is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit**

- The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter should be replaced.
- Even if the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level, the tire pressure warning light may come on/flash.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 504 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Note for checking the emergency tire puncture repair kit**

Check the sealant expiry date occasionally.
The expiry date is shown on the bottle. Do not use sealant whose expiry date has already passed. Otherwise, repairs conducted using the emergency tire puncture repair kit may not be performed properly.

■ **Emergency tire puncture repair kit**

- The sealant stored in the emergency tire puncture repair kit can be used only once to temporarily repair a single tire. If the sealant has been used and needs to be replaced, purchase a new bottle at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. The compressor is reusable.
- The sealant can be used when the outside temperature is from -30°C (-22°F) to 60°C (140°F).
- The repair kit is exclusively designed for size and type of tires originally installed on your vehicle. Do not use it for tires that a different size than the original ones, or for any other purposes.
- The sealant has a limited lifespan. The expiry date is marked on the bottle. The bottle of sealant should be replaced with a new bottle before the expiry date. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for replacement.
- If the sealant gets on your clothes, it may stain.
- If the sealant adheres to a wheel or the surface of the vehicle body, the stain may not be removable if it is not cleaned at once. Immediately wipe away the sealant with a wet cloth.
- During operation of the repair kit, a loud operation noise is produced. This does not indicate a malfunction.
- Do not use to check or to adjust the tire pressure.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 505 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

■Do not drive the vehicle with a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.
Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair.

Driving with a flat tire may cause a circumferential groove on the side wall. In such a case, the tire may explode when using a repair kit.

■Caution while driving

- The repair kit is exclusively only for your vehicle.
  Do not use repair kit on other vehicles, which could lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.
- Do not use repair kit for tires that are different size than the original ones, or for any other purpose. If the tires have not been completely repaired, it could lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

■Precautions for use of the sealant

- Ingesting the sealant is hazardous to your health. If you ingest sealant, consume as much water as possible, and then immediately consult a doctor.
- If sealant gets in eyes or adheres to skin, immediately wash it off with water. If discomfort persists, consult a doctor.

■When fixing the flat tire

- Stop your vehicle in a safe and flat area.
- Do not touch the wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven.
  After the vehicle has been driven, the wheels and the area around the brakes may be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts may result in burns.
- To avoid risk of burst or severe leakage, do not drop or damage the bottle. Visually inspect the bottle before use. Do not use a bottle with shock, crack, scratch, leakage or any other damage. In such case, immediately replace.
- Connect the valve and hose securely with the wheel installed to the vehicle. If the hose is not properly connected to the valve, air leakage may occur and sealant may be sprayed out.
- If the hose comes off the valve while inflating the tire, there is a risk that the hose will move abruptly due to air pressure.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 506 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

WARNING

When fixing the flat tire

- After inflation of the tire has completed, the sealant may splatter when the hose is disconnected or some air is let out of the tire.
- Follow the operation procedure to repair the tire. If the procedures not followed, the sealant may spray out.
- Keep back from the tire while it is being repaired, as there is a chance of it bursting while the repair operation is being performed. If you notice any cracks or deformation of the tire, turn off the compressor switch and stop the repair operation immediately.
- The repair kit may overheat if operated for a long period of time. Do not operate the repair kit continuously for more than 40 minutes.
- Parts of the repair kit become hot during operation. Be careful when handling the repair kit during and after operation. Do not touch the metal part around the connecting area between the bottle and compressor. It will be extremely hot.
- Do not attach the vehicle speed warning sticker to an area other than the one indicated. If the sticker is attached to an area where an SRS airbag is located, such as the pad of the steering wheel, it may prevent the SRS airbag from operating properly.

Driving to spread the liquid sealant evenly

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failing to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Drive the vehicle carefully at a low speed. Be especially careful when turning and cornering.
- If the vehicle does not drive straight or you feel a pull through the steering wheel, stop the vehicle and check the following.
  - Tire condition. The tire may have separated from the wheel.
  - Tire inflation pressure. If the tire inflation pressure is 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 19 psi) or less, the tire may be severely damaged.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 507 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

When performing an emergency repair

- A tire should only be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit if the damage is caused by a sharp object such as nail or screw passing through the tire tread.
  Do not remove the sharp object from the tire. Removing the object may widen the opening and disenable emergency repair with the repair kit.
- The repair kit is not waterproof. Make sure that the repair kit is not exposed to water, such as when it is being used in the rain.
- Do not put the repair kit directly onto dusty ground such as sand at the side of the road. If the repair kit vacuums up dust etc., a malfunction may occur.
- Do not turn the bottle upside down when using it, as doing so may cause damage to the compressor.

Precautions for the emergency tire puncture repair kit

- The repair kit power source should be 12 V DC suitable for vehicle use. Do not connect the repair kit to any other source.
- If gasoline splatters on the repair kit, the repair kit may deteriorate. Take care not to allow gasoline to contact it.
- Place the repair kit in a storage to prevent it from being exposed to dirt or water.
- Store the repair kit in the tool tray under the deck mat out of reach of children.
- Do not disassemble or modify the repair kit. Do not subject parts such as the air pressure indicator to impacts. This may cause a malfunction.

To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with a tire pressure warning system)

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. After use of liquid sealant, make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when repairing or replacing the tire. (→P. 418)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 508 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If the hybrid system will not start

Reasons for the hybrid system not starting vary depending on the situation. Check the following and perform the appropriate procedure:

The hybrid system will not start even though the correct starting procedure is being followed. (→P. 195)

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The electronic key may not be functioning properly. (→P. 511)
- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle.
- There may be a malfunction in the immobilizer system. (→P. 82)
- There may be malfunction in the P position control system.*
  (→P. 199, 472)
- The hybrid system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, depending on the type of malfunction, an interim measure is available to start the hybrid system. (→P. 509)

*: It may not be possible to shift the shift position from P to another position.

The interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (→P. 513)
- The 12-volt battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded. (→P. 412)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 509 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

The interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The 12-volt battery may be discharged. (→P. 513)
- One or both of the 12-volt battery terminals may be disconnected. (→P. 412)

Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Emergency start function

When the hybrid system does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the hybrid system if the power switch is functioning normally.

Do not use this starting procedure except in case of emergency.

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the power switch to ACCESSORY mode.
3. Press and hold the power switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the hybrid system can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 510 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If the electronic key does not operate properly

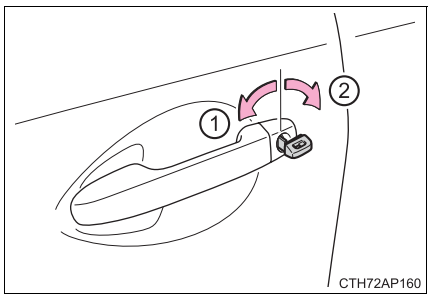
If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P. 135) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system, push button start and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

Locking and unlocking the doors

Use the mechanical key (→P. 119) in order to perform the following operations:

① Locks all the doors

② Unlocks all the doors



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 511 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

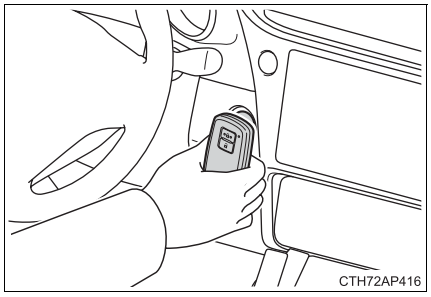
Starting the hybrid system

1 Depress the brake pedal.

2 Touch the Toyota emblem side of the electronic key to the power switch.

When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the power switch will turn to ON mode.

When the smart entry & start system or push button start is deactivated in customization setting, the power switch will turn to ACCESSORY mode.



3 Firmly depress the brake pedal and check that  is shown on the multi-information display.

4 Press the power switch.

In the event that the hybrid system still cannot be started, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

■ Stopping the hybrid system

Set the parking brake, shift the shift position to P and press the power switch as you normally do when stopping the hybrid system.

■ Replacing the key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P. 433)

■ Alarm (if equipped)

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.
If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 512 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ **Changing power switch modes**

Release the brake pedal and press the power switch in step 3 above.
The hybrid system does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P. 197)

■ **When the electronic key does not work properly**

- Make sure that the smart entry & start system and push button start has not been deactivated in the customization setting. If it is off, turn the function on. (Customizable features →P. 540)
- Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. (→P. 134)

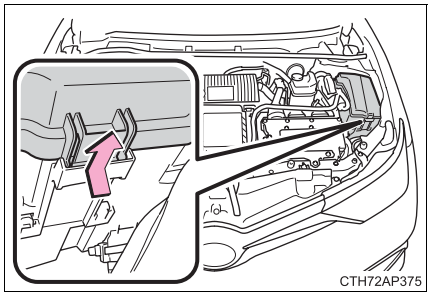
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 513 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If the 12-volt battery is discharged

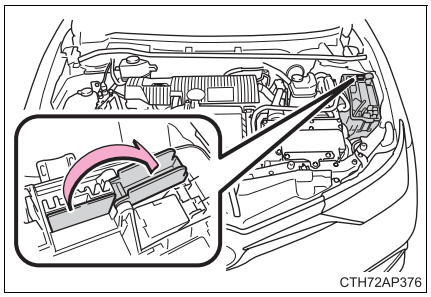
The following procedures may be used to start the hybrid system if the 12-volt battery is discharged.
You can also call any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

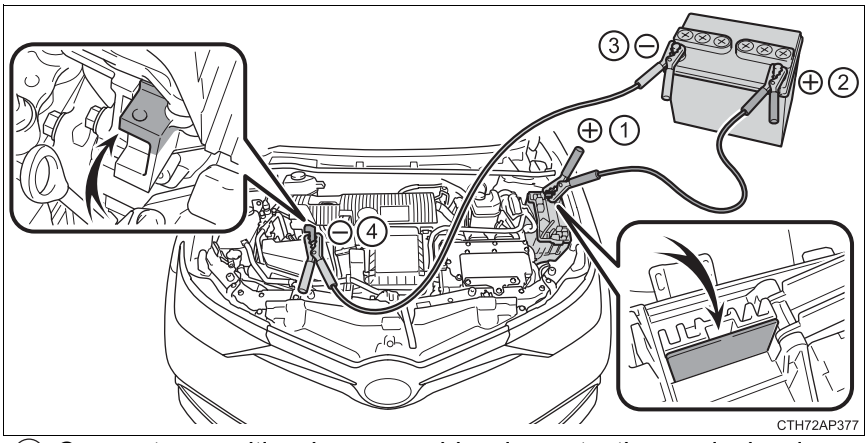
1 Open the hood and fuse block cover.



2 Open the exclusive jump starting terminal cover.



3 Connect the jumper cables according to the following procedure:



① Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to the exclusive jump starting terminal on your vehicle.

② Connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to the positive (+) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

③ Connect a negative cable clamp to the negative (-) battery terminal on the second vehicle.

④ Connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to a solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the exclusive jump starting terminal and any moving parts, as shown in the illustration.

4 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the 12-volt battery of your vehicle.

5 Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the power switch off.

6 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the hybrid system of your vehicle by turning the power switch to ON mode.

7 Make sure the “READY” indicator comes on. If the indicator does not come on, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 515 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

8 Once the hybrid system has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

9 Close the exclusive jump starting terminal cover, and reinstall the fuse box cover to its original position.

When installing, first hook the fuse box cover onto the two rear tabs.

Once the hybrid system starts, have the vehicle inspected at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.

■ **Starting the hybrid system when the 12-volt battery is discharged**

The hybrid system cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **To prevent 12-volt battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the hybrid system is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ **When the 12-volt battery is removed or discharged**

- The hybrid system may not start. (→P. 414)
- If the 12-volt battery is depleted with the shift position in P, it will not be possible to shift the shift position other than P. In this case, the vehicle cannot be towed without lifting both front wheels because the front wheels are locked by the parking lock. (→P. 459)
- When the 12-volt battery is reconnected, start the hybrid system, depress the brake pedal, and confirm that it is possible to shift into each shift position.
- Vehicles with an alarm: Make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle when recharging or replacing the 12-volt battery. The key may be locked in the vehicle if the alarm is activated. (→P. 89)

■ **Charging the 12-volt battery**

The electricity stored in the 12-volt battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the 12-volt battery may discharge, and the hybrid system may be unable to start. (The 12-volt battery recharges automatically while the hybrid system is operating.)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 516 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

When recharging or replacing the 12-volt battery

- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system: In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart entry & start system when the 12-volt battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.
- The hybrid system may not start on the first attempt after the 12-volt battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.
- The power switch mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the 12-volt battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the 12-volt battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the 12-volt battery, turn the power switch off.
  If you are unsure what mode the power switch was in before the 12-volt battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

WARNING

Avoiding 12-volt battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the 12-volt battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the “+” terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the 12-volt battery.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 517 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

⚠ WARNING

■12-volt battery precautions

The 12-volt battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the 12-volt battery:

- When working with the 12-volt battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any 12-volt battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the 12-volt battery.
- In the event that 12-volt battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention.
  Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the 12-volt battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the 12-volt battery.

■After recharging the 12-volt battery

Have the 12-volt battery inspected at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional as soon as possible.
If the 12-volt battery is deteriorating, continued use may cause the 12-volt battery to emit a malodorous gas, which may be detrimental to the health of passengers.

■When replacing the 12-volt battery

→P. 416

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 518 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

If your vehicle overheats

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

- The high engine coolant temperature (→P. 465) is shown on the multi-information display or a loss of hybrid system power is experienced (for example, the vehicle speed does not increase).
- “Hybrid system overheated. Reduced output power.” is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

Correction procedures

■ If the high engine coolant temperature is shown on the multi-information display

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the hybrid system.

2 If you see steam:
Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.

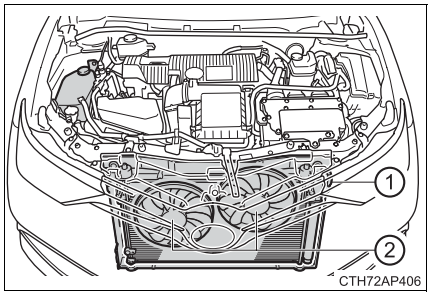
If you do not see steam:
Carefully lift the hood.

3 After the hybrid system has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

① Radiator

② Cooling fans

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.



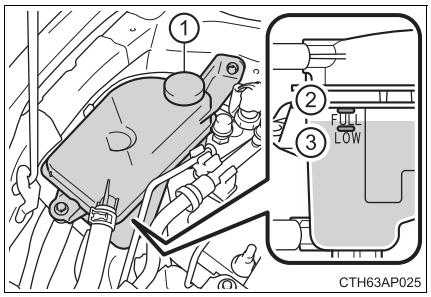
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 519 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir.

① Reservoir

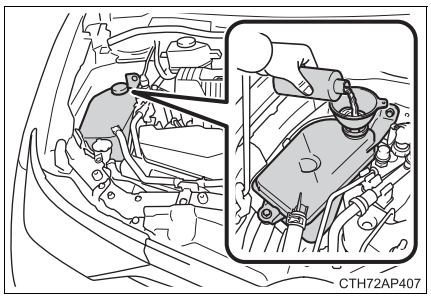
② “FULL”

③ “LOW”



5 Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.



6 Start the hybrid system and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fans operate and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

The fans operate when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fans are operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly.
(The fan may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

7 If the fans are not operating:

Stop the hybrid system immediately and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If the fans are operating:

Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 520 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ If “Hybrid system overheated. Reduced output power.” is shown on the multi-information display

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

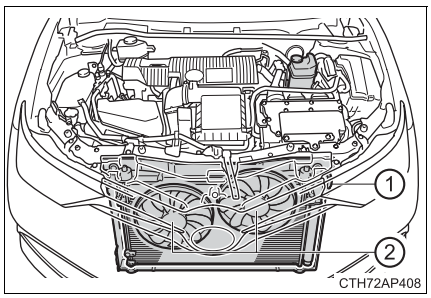
2 Stop the hybrid system and carefully lift the hood.

3 After the hybrid system has cooled down, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

① Radiator

② Cooling fans

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

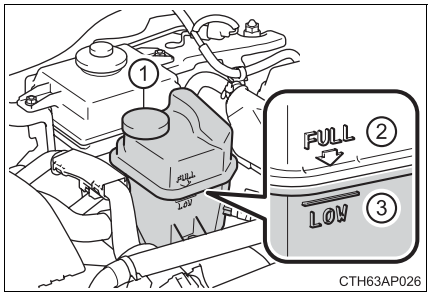


4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir.

① Reservoir

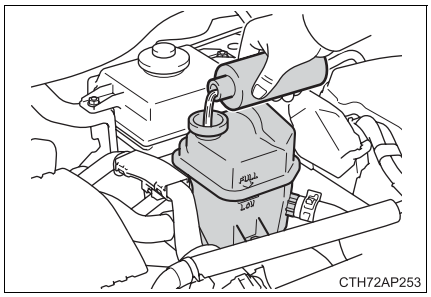
② “FULL”

③ “LOW”



5 Add coolant if necessary.

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 521 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

6 Start the hybrid system and check for the multi-information display.

If the message does not disappear:
Stop the hybrid system and contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

If the message is not displayed:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

WARNING

■When inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.
- After the hybrid system has been turned off, check that the indicator on the power switch and the “READY” indicator are off.
  When the hybrid system is operating, the gasoline engine may automatically start, or the cooling fan may suddenly operate even if the gasoline engine stops. Do not touch or approach rotating parts such as the fan, which may lead to fingers or clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) getting caught, resulting in serious injury.
- Do not loosen the coolant reservoir caps while the hybrid system and radiator are hot.
  High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 522 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

When adding engine/power control unit coolant

Add coolant slowly after the hybrid system has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot hybrid system too quickly can cause damage to the hybrid system.

To prevent damage to the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 523 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

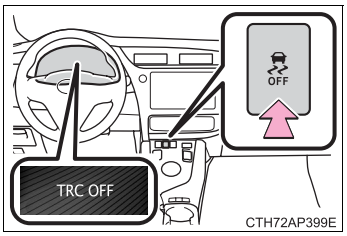
If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

1. Set the parking brake. Shift the shift position to P and stop the hybrid system.
2. Remove the mud, snow, or sand from around the front wheels.
3. Place wood, stones or some other material under the front wheels to help provide traction.
4. Restart the hybrid system.
5. Shift the shift position to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Press  to turn off TRC.



WARNING

When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 524 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

■To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the front wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

Vehicle specifications 9

9-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.).....526

Fuel information.....538

9-2. Customization

Customizable features.....540

9-3. Initialization

Items to initialize.....547

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 526 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions and weights

Overall length		4330 mm (170.5 in.)
Overall width		1760 mm (69.3 in.)
Overall height*1		1475 mm (58.1 in.)
Wheelbase		2600 mm (102.4 in.)
Tread	Front	1535 mm (60.4 in.)*2 1525 mm (60.0 in.)*3 1515 mm (59.6 in.)*4
	Rear	1525 mm (60.0 in.)*2 1515 mm (59.6 in.)*3 1505 mm (59.3 in.)*4
Gross vehicle mass*5		1840 kg (4057 lb.) 1815 kg (4002 lb.)
Maximum permissible axle capacity	Front	1020 kg (2249 lb.)
	Rear	1010 kg (2227 lb.)
Drawbar load*6		55 kg (121 lb.)
Towing capacity*6		385 kg (848 lb.)

*1: Unladen vehicles

*2: Vehicles with 195/65R15 tires

*3: Vehicles with 205/55R16 tires

*4: Vehicles with 225/45R17 tires

*5: Gross vehicle mass is specified on the information tag (manufacturer's label). (→P. 188)

*6: Vehicles with towing package (→P. 185)

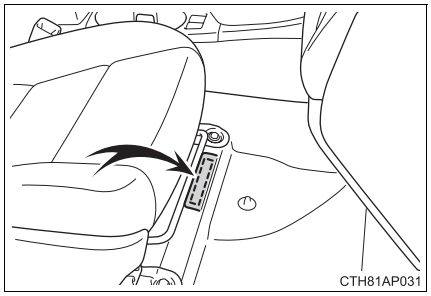
UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 527 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Vehicle identification

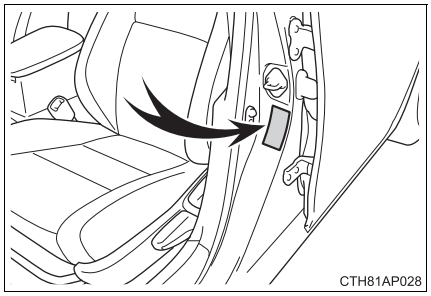
■ Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Toyota. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

This number is stamped under the right-hand front seat.

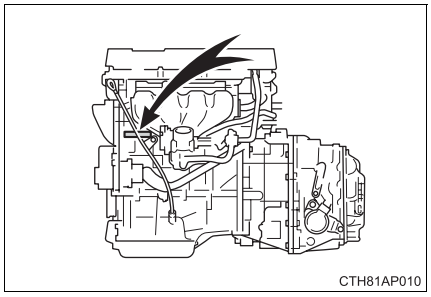


This number is also on the manufacturer's label.



■ Engine number

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.



UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 528 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Engine

Model	2ZR-FXE
Type	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	80.5 × 88.3 mm (3.17 × 3.48 in.)
Displacement	1798 cm^3 (109.7 cu. in.)
Valve clearance (engine cold)	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	EU area: Unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228 only Except EU area: Unleaded gasoline only
Research Octane Number	95 or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	45 L (11.9 gal., 9.9 Imp. gal.)

Electric motor (traction motor)

Type	Permanent magnet motor
Maximum output	60 kW
Maximum torque	207 N•m (21.1 kgf•m, 153 ft•lbf)

Hybrid battery (traction battery)

Type	Nickel-Metal hydride battery
Voltage	7.2 V/module
Capacity	6.5 Ah (3HR)
Quantity	28 modules
Overall voltage	201.6 V

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 529 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Lubrication system

Oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference*) With filter	4.2 L (4.4 qt., 3.7 Imp. qt.)
Without filter	3.9 L (4.1 qt., 3.4 Imp. qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up the engine and turn off the hybrid system, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Engine oil selection

“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” is used in your Toyota vehicle. Toyota recommends the use of approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil”. Another motor oil of matching quality can also be used.

Oil grade:

0W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:
API grade SL “Energy-Conserving”, SM “Energy-Conserving” or SN “Resource-Conserving”; or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

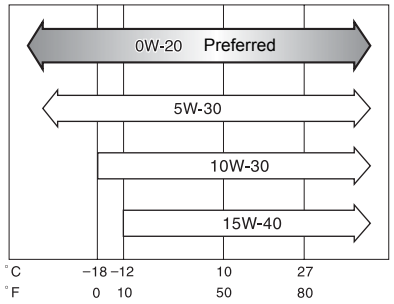
15W-40:
API grade SL, SM or SN multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 0W-20 is filled into your Toyota vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If SAE 0W-20 oil is not available, SAE 5W-30 oil may be used. However, it should be replaced with SAE 0W-20 at the next oil change.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 0W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

ITIOIL148

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

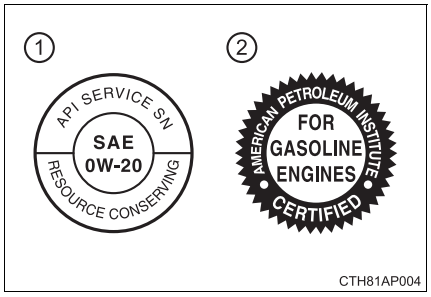
- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.

① API Service Symbol

Top portion: “API SERVICE SN” means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).
Center portion: “SAE 0W-20” means the SAE viscosity grade.
Lower portion: “Resource-Conserving” means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.



② ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 532 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Cooling system

Capacity (reference) Gasoline engine With an exhaust heat recovery system Without an exhaust heat recovery system Power control unit	 7.0 L (7.4 qt., 6.2 Imp. qt.) 6.3 L (6.7 qt., 5.5 Imp. qt.) 2.1 L (2.2 qt., 1.8 Imp. qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following: • “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

Ignition system

Spark plug Make	 DENSO SC20HR11
Gap	1.1 mm (0.043 in.)

NOTICE

Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

Electrical system

12-volt battery Open voltage at 20°C (68°F):	 12.6 — 12.8 V Fully charged 12.2 — 12.4 V Half charged 11.8 — 12.0 V Discharged (Voltage is checked 20 minutes after the hybrid system and all lights are turned off.)
Charging rates	5 A max.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 533 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Hybrid transmission

Fluid capacity*	3.4 L (3.6 qt., 3.0 Imp. qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity.
If replacement is necessary, contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

NOTICE

Transmission fluid type

Using transmission fluid other than “Toyota Genuine ATF WS” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage to the transmission of your vehicle.

Brakes

Pedal clearance*1 Left-hand drive vehicles Right-hand drive vehicles	 73 mm (2.87 in.) Min. 83 mm (3.27 in.) Min.
Pedal free play	1 — 6 mm (0.04 — 0.24 in.)
Parking brake lever travel*2	6 — 9 clicks
Fluid type	SAE J1703 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 3 or SAE J1704 or FMVSS No.116 DOT 4

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 294 N (30 kgf, 66 lbf) while the hybrid system is operating

*2: Parking brake lever travel when pulled up with a force of 200 N (20.4 kgf, 45.0 lbf)

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)

Tires and wheels

▶ 15-inch tires

Tire size	195/65R15 91H		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	Type A*: 260 (2.6, 38) Type B*: 270 (2.7, 39)	Type A*: 260 (2.6, 38) Type B*: 270 (2.7, 39)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	Type A*: 230 (2.3, 33) Type B*: 240 (2.4, 35)	Type A*: 230 (2.3, 33) Type B*: 240 (2.4, 35)
Wheel size	15 × 6 J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

*: The tire inflation pressure is specified on the tire-loading information label. (→P. 427)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 535 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

▶ 16-inch tires

Tire size	205/55R16 91V		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	260 (2.6, 38)	260 (2.6, 38)
	Normal pressure: 160 km/h (100 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)
	ECO pressure*1: 160 km/h (100 mph) or less	250 (2.5, 36)*2	250 (2.5, 36)*2
Wheel size	16 × 6 1/2 J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

*1: For optimizing fuel economy, ECO tire pressure is recommended. Tire pressure affects traveling comfort, road noise and steering characteristics.

*2: Vehicles with ECO tire pressure label (→P. 427)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 536 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

▶ 17-inch tires

Tire size	225/45R17 91W		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm^2 or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	260 (2.6, 38)	260 (2.6, 38)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	230 (2.3, 33)	230 (2.3, 33)
Wheel size	17 × 7 J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

▶ Compact spare tire

Tire size	T125/70D17 98M
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 60 psi)
Wheel size	17 × 4 T
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

■ **When towing a trailer**

Add 20.0 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 3 psi) to the recommended tire inflation pressure and drive at speeds below 100 km/h (62 mph).

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 537 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Light bulbs

	Light Bulbs	W	Type
Exterior	Halogen headlights*	55	A
	Front fog lights*	19	B
	Front turn signal lights	21	C
	Side turn signal lights	5	C
	Rear turn signal lights	21	D
	Stop lights	21	E
	Back-up light	16	F
	Licence plate lights	5	F
Interior	Vanity lights*	5	G
	Front interior lights/personal lights	8	F
	Rear interior light*	8	G
	Rear personal lights*	8	F
	Luggage compartment light	5	G

A: HIR2 halogen bulbs
B: H16 halogen bulbs
C: Wedge base bulbs (amber)
D: Single end bulbs (amber)
E: Single end bulbs (clear)
F: Wedge base bulbs (clear)
G: Double end bulbs
*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 538 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Fuel information

EU area:
Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline conforming to European standard EN228.
For optimum engine performance, select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher.

Except EU area:
Your vehicle must use only unleaded gasoline.
For optimum engine performance, select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 or higher.

■ Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

■ If your engine knocks

- Consult any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 539 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

NOTICE

■Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use leaded gasoline.
  Leaded gasoline will cause the three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and the emission control system to function improperly.
- Do not use the methanol blended gasoline such as M15, M85, M100.
  The use of gasoline containing methanol may cause engine damage or failure.
- EU area: Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as “E50” or “E85” and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. The use of these fuels will damage the vehicle's fuel system. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.
- Except EU area: Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as “E50” or “E85” and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. Your vehicle can use gasoline mixed with 10% max ethanol. The use of fuel with more than 10% ethanol content (E10) will damage the vehicle’s fuel system. You must ensure that refueling is carried out only from a source where fuel specification and quality can be guaranteed. In case of any doubt, ask any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 540 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. The settings of these features can be changed using the meter control switches, on the navigation/multimedia system screen or at any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

Customizing vehicle features

■ Changing on the navigation/multimedia system screen (vehicles with a navigation/multimedia system)

1 Press the “SETUP” button.

2 Touch “Vehicle” on the “Setup” screen.
Select the desired item.

Various settings can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

■ Changing using the meter control switches

→P. 107

Customizable features

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions when customized. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional for further details.

① Settings that can be changed on the navigation/multimedia system screen (vehicles with a navigation/multimedia system)

② Settings that can be changed using the meter control switches

③ Settings that can be changed by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional

Definition of symbols: O = Available, — = Not available

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 541 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Gauges, meters and multi-information display (→P. 101, 104)

Function*1	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Language*2	English	*3	—	O	—
Units*2	km (L/100 km)	km (km/L)	O	O	—
		miles (MPG)			
	°C	°F	O	O	—
EV indicator	On (Self-lighting)	Off	—	O	—
Drive information 1	Current fuel consumption (gauge display)	*4	—	O	—
	Average fuel economy (after reset)				
Drive information 2	Distance (driving range)	*4	—	O	—
	Average vehicle speed (after reset)				
Drive information 3	Average fuel economy (after start)	*4	—	O	—
	Distance (after start)				
Pop-up display*5	On	Off	—	O	—

*1: For details about each function: →P. 110

*2: The default setting varies according to country.

*3: German, French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, Dutch, Swedish, Norwegian, Danish, Russian, Finnish, Greek, Polish, Ukrainian, Turkish, Hungarian, Czech, Slovak, Romanian

*4: 2 of the following items: current fuel consumption (gauge display), current fuel consumption (numerical display), average fuel economy (after reset), average fuel economy (after start), average fuel economy (after refuel), average vehicle speed (after reset), average vehicle speed (after start), elapsed time (after reset), elapsed time (after start), distance (driving range), distance (after start), blank.

*5: If equipped

■ **Smart entry & start system* and wireless remote control (→P. 122, 127, 132)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off	O	—	O
Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	30 seconds	60 seconds	—	—	O
		120 seconds			
Open door warning buzzer	On	Off	—	—	O

*: If equipped

■ **Smart entry & start system*1 (→P. 122, 127, 132)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Smart entry & start system	On	Off	O	—	O
Number of consecutive door lock operations*2	2 times	As many as desired	—	—	O

*1: If equipped

*2: Left-hand drive vehicles

■ **Push button start* (→P. 146)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Push button start	On	Off	O	—	O

*: If equipped

■ **Wireless remote control (→P. 118, 122, 127)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Wireless remote control	On	Off	—	—	O

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 543 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Turn signal lever (→P. 211)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
The number of times the turn signal lights flash automatically when the turn signal lever is moved to the first position during a lane change	3	5	—	—	O
		7			
		Off			

■ Automatic light control system* (→P. 213)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2	O	—	O

*: If equipped

■ Follow me home system (→P. 215)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off	30 seconds	60 seconds	—	—	O
		90 seconds			
		120 seconds			

■ LDA (Lane Departure Alert)* (→P. 242)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
LDA warning sensitivity	High	Standard	—	O	—

*: If equipped

■ **RSA (Road Sign Assist)* (→P. 252)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
RSA system	On	Off	—	O	—
Notification method of excessive speed	Only display	Display and buzzer	—	O	—
		Off			
Notification methods other than excessive speed	Only display	Display and buzzer	—	O	—
		Off			
Notification level of excessive speed	2 km/h (1 mph)	10 km/h (5 mph)	—	O	—
		5 km/h (3 mph)			

*: If equipped

■ **Toyota parking assist-sensor*1 (→P. 262)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Toyota parking assist-sensor system	On	Off	—	O	—
Detection distance of the front center sensors*2	Far	Near	O	—	O
Detection distance of the rear center sensors*2	Far	Near	O	—	O
Buzzer volume*2	5	1 to 4	O	—	O
Display setting*2, 3	All sensors displayed	Display off	O	—	O

*1: If equipped

*2: Vehicles with a navigation/multimedia system

*3: When Toyota parking assist-sensor is operating.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 545 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

■ Automatic air conditioning system (→P. 358)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to “AUTO” switch operation	On	Off	O	—	O

■ Illumination (→P. 368)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Interior light illumination control*	On	Off	O	—	O
Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	7.5 seconds	O*	—	O
		30 seconds			
Operation after the power switch is turned off	On	Off	—	—	O
Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	—	—	O
Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person*	On	Off	—	—	O

*: If equipped

■ Reverse warning buzzer (→P. 207)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	①	②	③
Operation signals (Buzzer) when shifting into R	Beeps repeatedly	Beeps once	—	—	O

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 546 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Vehicle customization

When the doors remain closed after unlocking the doors and the timer activated automatic door lock function activates, signals will be generated in accordance with the operational signal (emergency flashers) function setting.

WARNING

During customization

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

During customization

To prevent 12-volt battery discharge, ensure that the hybrid system is operating while customizing features.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 547 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Items to initialize

The following item must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the 12-volt battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Tire pressure warning system*	• When rotating front and rear tires which have different tire inflation pressures • When changing the tire size • When changing the tire inflation pressure by changing traveling speed or load weight, etc.	P. 419

*: If equipped

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 548 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Index

What to do if...
(Troubleshooting).....550
Alphabetical index.....553

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 550 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed

You lose your keys

- If you lose your keys or mechanical keys, new genuine keys or mechanical keys can be made by any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional. (→P. 119)
- If you lose your keys or electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact any authorized Toyota dealer or repairer, or another duly qualified and equipped professional immediately. (→P. 121)

The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the key battery weak or depleted? (→P. 433)
- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
  Is the power switch in ON mode?
  When locking the doors, turn the power switch off. (→P. 197)
- Vehicles with a smart entry & start system:
  Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?
  When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.
- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P. 135, 148)

The rear door cannot be opened

- Is the child-protector lock set?
  The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set. Open the rear door from outside and then unlock the child-protector lock. (→P. 125)

If you think something is wrong

The hybrid system does not start

- Did you press the power switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P. 195)
- Is the shift position in P? (→P. 195)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P. 132, 147)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted?
  In this case, the hybrid system can be started in a temporary way. (→P. 510)
- Is the 12-volt battery discharged? (→P. 513)

The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

- Is the window lock switch pressed?
  The power window except for the one at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P. 170)

The power switch is turned off automatically

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or ON mode (the hybrid system is not operating) for a period of time. (→P. 198)

A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing
  Are the driver and the front passenger wearing the seat belts? (→P. 467)
- The brake system warning light (red indicator) is on
  Is the parking brake released? (→P. 212)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P. 465, 472)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 552 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

An alarm is activated and the horn sounds (vehicles with an alarm)

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door or anything move inside the vehicle* during setting the alarm?
  The sensor detects them and the alarm sounds. (→P. 87)

*: If the vehicle is equipped with intrusion sensor.

To stop the alarm, turn the power switch to ON mode or start the hybrid system.

A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle (vehicles with a smart entry & start system)

- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?
  Check the message on the multi-information display. (→P. 472)

A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

- When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer to P. 465, 472.

When a problem has occurred

If you have a flat tire

- Vehicles with a spare tire:
  Stop the vehicle in a safe place and replace the flat tire with the spare tire. (→P. 481)
- Vehicles with an emergency tire puncture repair kit:
  Stop the vehicle in a safe place and repair the flat tire temporarily with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. (→P. 493)

The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P. 523)

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 553 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Alphabetical index

A

A/C 358
Air conditioning filter 431
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 283
Warning light 466
Air conditioning filter 431
Air conditioning system 358
Air conditioning filter 431
Airbag manual on-off system ... 48
Airbags 38
Airbag manual on-off system 48
Airbag operating conditions 44
Airbag precautions for your child 40
Correct driving posture 32
Curtain shield airbag operating conditions 44
Curtain shield airbag precautions 42
General airbag precautions 40
Locations of airbags 38
Modification and disposal of airbags 43
Side airbag operating conditions 44
Side airbag precautions 40
Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions 44
Side and curtain shield airbags precautions 40
SRS airbags 38
SRS warning light 466
Alarm 87
Warning buzzer 465, 472
Anchor brackets 60
Antennas (push-button start) 146
Antennas (smart entry & start system) 132
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 283
Warning light 466
Armrest 386
Ashtrays 384
Assist grips 386
Audio input* 298
Audio system* 296
Audio input 298
AUX port/USB port 298
Bluetooth® audio 328
CD player 304
iPod 312
MP3/WMA disc 304
Optimal use 299
Portable music player 327
Radio 301
Steering wheel audio switch 297
USB memory 320
Automatic headlight leveling system 218
Automatic High Beam 248
Automatic light control system 213
AUX port* 298
Auxiliary boxes 376, 379

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 554 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

B

Back door 127
Back-up lights
Replacing light bulb..... 441
Wattage..... 537
Battery
(12-volt battery) 412
Battery checking 412
If the 12-volt battery is discharged..... 513
Preparing and checking before winter..... 292
Battery (traction battery)..... 75
Bluetooth®*
Audio system 345
Hands-free system (for cellular phone)..... 348
Bottle holders..... 374
Brake
Emergency brake signal 284
Fluid 533
Parking brake..... 212
Warning light..... 465
Brake assist..... 283
Break-in tips 175
Brightness control
Meter light control 110

C

Care..... 390, 394
Aluminum wheels..... 391
Exterior 390
Interior..... 394
Seat belts..... 395
Cargo hooks..... 377
CD player*..... 304
Chains..... 293
Child restraint system..... 51
Baby seats, definition..... 51
Baby seats, installation 61
Child seats, definition..... 51
Child seats, installation 61
Installing CRS with ISOFIX rigid anchors..... 65
Installing CRS with seat belts..... 61
Installing CRS with top strap... 66
Junior seats, definition..... 51
Junior seats, installation 63
Child safety 50
12-volt battery precautions..... 415, 517
Airbag precautions..... 40
Child restraint system 51
How your child should wear the seat belt..... 35
Installing child restraints 60
Panoramic roof shade precautions..... 388
Power window lock switch 170
Power window precautions ... 172
Rear door child-protectors 125
Removed electronic key battery precautions..... 434
Seat belt precautions..... 37
Seat heater precautions..... 367

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 555 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Child-protectors **125**
Cleaning **390, 394**
Aluminum wheels 391
Exterior 390
Interior 394
Seat belts 395
Clock **384**
Coat hooks **387**
Condenser **410**
Console box **373**
Cooling system **408**
Hybrid system overheating ... 518
Cruise control **257**
Cup holders **375**
Curtain shield airbags **38**
Customizable features **540**

D

Daytime running light system **217**
Deck board **378**
Defogger
Outside rear view mirrors 362
Rear window 362
Windshield 362
Dimensions **526**
Display
Multi-information display 104
Warning message 472
Do-it-yourself maintenance **400**
Door lock
Back door 127
Side doors 122
Smart entry & start system 122, 127
Wireless remote control 122
Doors
Back door 127
Door lock 122, 127
Door windows 170
Double locking system 93
Open door warning buzzer 125, 128
Outside rear view mirrors 167
Rear door child-protector 125
Side doors 122
Double locking system **93**
Drive information **108**
Driving **174**
Break-in tips 175
Correct posture 32
Hybrid vehicle driving tips 289
Procedures 174
Winter drive tips 292

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

E

ECB (Electronically Controlled Brake System) 283
Eco drive mode.....206
Electric motor (traction motor).....71
Electric Power Steering (EPS).....284
Warning light.....466
Electronic key 118
Battery-saving function.....134, 147
If the electronic key does not operate properly 510
Replacing the battery.....433
Electronically Controlled Brake System (ECB).....283
Emergency, in case of
If a warning light turns on.....465
If a warning message is displayed 472
If the 12-volt battery is discharged.....513
If the electronic key does not operate properly 510
If the hybrid system will not start.....510
If the warning buzzer sounds.....465
If you have a flat tire.....481, 493
If you think something is wrong.....464
If your vehicle becomes stuck.....523
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency...457
If your vehicle needs to be towed.....458
If your vehicle overheats.....518
Emergency brake signal 284
Emergency flashers 456
Emergency tire puncture repair kit.....493
Energy monitor.....113
Engine.....528
ACCESSORY mode 197
Compartment.....405
Engine switch.....197
Hood 402
How to start the hybrid system.....195
Identification number 527
If the hybrid system will not start 508
Ignition switch (power switch) 195
Overheating 518
Power switch.....195

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 557 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Engine coolant 408
Capacity 532
Checking 408
Preparing and checking before winter 292
Warning light 465
Engine oil 406
Capacity 529
Checking 406
Preparing and checking before winter 292
Engine switch 195
EPS (Electric Power Steering) 284
Warning light 466
EV drive mode 201

F

Flat tire
Vehicles with a spare tire 481
Vehicles without a spare tire 493
Floor mats 30
Fluid
Brake 533
Hybrid transmission 533
Washer 410
Fog lights 219
Replacing light bulbs 441
Switch 219
Wattage 537
Follow me home system 215
Front fog lights 219
Replacing light bulbs 441
Switch 219
Wattage 537
Front personal lights 370
Wattage 537
Front position lights 213
Light switch 213
Replacing light bulbs 441
Front seats 157
Adjustment 157
Cleaning 394
Correct driving posture 32
Head restraints 161
Seat heaters 367
Front sensor 231

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 558 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Front turn signal lights.....211
Replacing light bulbs.....441
Turn signal lever 211
Wattage.....537
Fuel 227
Capacity.....528
Fuel gauge.....101
Information.....538
Refueling.....227
Type.....227, 528
Warning light.....467
Fuel filler door.....227
Refueling.....227
Fuses 436

G

Gauges 101
Glove box 373
Grocery bag hooks.....377

H

Hands-free system (for cellular phone)* 348
Head restraints 161
Headlight cleaners.....221
Headlights 213
Automatic High Beam system.....248
Follow me home system.....215
Light switch.....213
Replacing light bulbs.....441
Wattage 537
Heaters
Outside rear view mirrors.....362
Seat heaters 367
High voltage components.....75
Hill-start assist control.....283

Hood.....402
Open.....402
Hooks
Cargo hooks.....377
Coat hooks.....387
Grocery bag hooks.....377
Retaining hooks (floor mat).....30
Horn.....163
Hybrid battery (traction battery).....75
Hybrid battery (traction battery) air vents.....76
Hybrid system.....71
Emergency shut off system.....76
Energy monitor/ consumption screen.....113
EV drive mode.....201
High voltage components.....75
Hybrid System Indicator.....102
Hybrid system precautions.....75
Hybrid vehicle driving tips.....289
If the hybrid system will not start.....508
Overheating.....518
Power (ignition) switch.....195
Starting the hybrid system.....195
Hybrid System Indicator.....102
Hybrid transmission.....203

I

Identification.....527
Engine.....527
Vehicle.....527
Ignition switch (power switch).....195
Illuminated entry system.....371
Immobilizer system.....82
Indicators.....99
Initialization
Meter display settings.....110
Power windows.....171
Tire pressure warning system.....418
Inside rear view mirror.....165
Interior lights.....368
Intrusion sensor.....90
ISOFIX rigid anchors.....60

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 560 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

J

Jack
Positioning the jack 404
Vehicle-equipped jack 482
Jack handle 482
Jam protection function
Panoramic roof shade 388
Power window 171

K

Keyless entry
Smart entry & start system 122, 127
Wireless remote control 122
Keys 118
Battery-saving function 134, 147
Electronic key 118
If the electronic key does not operate properly 510
If you lose your keys 119
Key number plate 118
Keyless entry 122, 127
Mechanical key 119
Power switch 195
Replacing the battery 433
Warning buzzer 133
Wireless remote control key 118
Knee airbags 38

L

Lane Departure Alert (LDA) 242
Language (multi-information display) 111
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 242
Lever
Auxiliary catch lever 402
Hood lock release lever 402
Shift lever 203
Turn signal lever 211
Wiper lever 221, 213
License plate lights 213
Light switch 213
Replacing light bulbs 441
Wattage 537
Light bulbs
Replacing 441
Wattage 537
Lights
Automatic High Beam system 248
Fog light switch 219
Follow me home system 215
Headlight switch 213
Illuminated entry system 371
Interior light 369
Interior lights list 368
Luggage compartment light 128
Personal lights 370
Replacing light bulbs 441
Turn signal lever 211
Vanity lights 369
Wattage 537
Low profile tire 420
Luggage cover 381

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 561 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

M

Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance ... 400
Maintenance data ... 526
Maintenance requirements ... 397
Malfunction indicator lamp ... 466
Manual headlight leveling dial ... 216
Master warning light ... 468
Meter ... 101
Indicators ... 99
Meter light control ... 110
Meters ... 101
Multi-information display ... 104
Settings ... 110
Warning lights ... 97
Meter light control ... 110
Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror ... 165
Outside rear view mirror defoggers ... 362
Outside rear view mirrors ... 167
Vanity mirrors ... 383
MP3 disc* ... 304
Multi-information display ... 104
Drive information ... 108
Language ... 111
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) ... 244
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) ... 234, 235
RSA (Road Sign Assist) ... 253
Settings ... 110

O

Odometer ... 106
Oil
Engine oil ... 529
Opener
Back door ... 127
Fuel filler door ... 229
Hood ... 402
Outside rear view mirrors ... 167
Adjusting and folding ... 167
Outside rear view mirror defoggers ... 362
Outside temperature display ... 101
Overheating, Hybrid system ... 518

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

P

Panoramic roof shade 387
Parking assist sensors..... 262
Parking brake 212
Operation 212
Parking brake engaged warning buzzer 212
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system)..... 234
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) switch 235
Warning light 467
Personal lights 370
Wattage..... 537
Power control unit 75
Power control unit coolant 408
Capacity 532
Checking 408
Preparing and checking before winter..... 292
Power outlets 385
Power steering 284
Warning light 466
Power switch..... 195
Power windows..... 170
Jam protection function..... 171
Operation 170
Window lock switch..... 170
Pre-Crash Safety system (PCS)..... 234
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) switch 235
Warning light 467
Push-button start..... 146
Antenna location 132
Starting the hybrid system 195

R

Radiator 410
Radio* 301
Rear fog light 219
Replacing light bulb 441
Switch 219
Rear personal lights 370
Wattage 537
Rear seat
Folding down 159
Rear turn signal lights..... 211
Replacing light bulbs..... 441
Turn signal lever 211
Wattage 537
Rear view mirror
Inside rear view mirror 165
Outside rear view mirrors..... 167
Rear view monitor system*
Rear window defogger 362
Rear window wiper 225
Refueling 227
Capacity..... 528
Fuel types 528
Opening the fuel tank cap..... 229
Replacing
Electronic key battery 433
Fuses..... 436
Light bulbs 441
Tires..... 481
Road accident cautions 79
Road Sign Assist (RSA)..... 252
RSA (Road Sign Assist)..... 252

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 563 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

S

Seat belt reminder light 467
Seat belts 34
- Adjusting the seat belt 35
- Child restraint system installation 61
- Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt 395
- Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) 35
- How to wear your seat belt 32
- How your child should wear the seat belt 35
- Pregnant women, proper seat belt use 36
- Reminder light and buzzer 467
- Seat belt pretensioners 35
- SRS warning light 466

Seat heaters 367
Seats 157, 159
- Adjustment 157
- Adjustment precautions 158
- Child seats/child restraint system installation 60
- Cleaning 394
- Head restraints 161
- Properly sitting in the seat 32
- Seat heaters 367

Sensor
- Automatic headlight system 217
- Automatic High Beam system 231
- Inside rear view mirror 166
- Intrusion sensor 90
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 242
- PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 231
- Rain-sensing windshield wipers 222
- RSA (Road Sign Assist) 252
- Toyota parking assist-sensor 262

Service plug 75
Shift lever 203
Side airbags 38
Side mirrors 167
- Adjusting and folding 167

Side turn signal lights 211
- Replacing light bulbs 441
- Turn signal lever 211
- Wattage 537

Simple-IPA 269
Smart entry & start system 132
- Antenna location 132
- Entry functions 122, 127
- Starting the hybrid system 195

Snow tires 294
Spare tire 481
- Inflation pressure 536
- Storage location 482

Spark plug 532
Specifications 526
Speech command system*
Speedometer 101

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 564 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Steering wheel 163
Adjustment 163
Audio switches* 297
Stop lights
Replacing light bulbs 441
Wattage 537
Storage feature 372
Stuck
If the vehicle becomes stuck 523
Sun visors 383
Sunshade
Panoramic roof 387
Switches
Airbag manual on-off switch 48
Audio remote control switches* 297
Cruise control switch 257
Door lock switches 124
“ECO MODE” switch 206
Emergency flashers switch ... 456
EV drive mode switch 201
Fog light switch 219
Ignition switch 195
Light switches 213
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) switch 243
Meter control switches 107
Outside rear view mirror switches 167
P position switch 205
Panoramic roof shade switch 387
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) switch 235
Power door lock switch 124
Power switch 195
Power window switches 170
“PWR MODE” switch 206
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch 362
Seat heater switches 367
Simple-IPA switch 270
Talk switch* 333
Telephone switches* 333
Tire pressure warning reset switch 419
“TRIP” switch 106
VSC OFF switch 284, 285
Window lock switch 170
Windshield wiper and washer switch 221, 225

T

Tail lights 213
Light switch 213
Replacing light bulbs 454
Talk switch* 333
Telephone switches* 333
Theft deterrent system
Alarm 87
Double locking system 93
Immobilizer system 82
Intrusion sensor 90
Tire inflation pressure 427
Maintenance data 534

UK AURIS_HV_HB_OM_EE_OM12J68E.book 565 ページ ２０１５年２月２３日 月曜日 午後１０時３８分

Tire pressure warning system 418
Function 418
Initializing 418
Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters 418
Registering ID codes 419
Tire pressure warning reset switch 419
Warning light 468
Tires 417
Chains 293
Checking 417
Emergency tire puncture repair kit 493
If you have a flat tire 481, 493
Inflation pressure 534
Replacing 481
Rotating tires 417
Size 534
Snow tires 294
Spare tire 481
Tire pressure warning system 418
Warning light 468
Tools 482, 494
Top strap 66
Towing
Emergency towing 458
Towing capacity 526
Towing eyelet 461
Trailer towing 185
Toyota parking assist-sensor 262
Toyota Safety Sense 230
Automatic High Beam 248
LDA (Lane Departure Alert) 242
PCS (Pre-Crash Safety system) 234
RSA (Road Sign Assist) 252
Traction battery (hybrid battery) 75
Traction Control (TRC) 283
Traction motor (electric motor) 71
Trailer towing 185
Transmission 203
TRC (Traction Control) 283
Trip meters 106
Turn signal lights 211
Replacing light bulbs 441
Turn signal lever 211
Wattage 537

U

USB port* 298

V

Vanity lights 369
Wattage 537
Vanity mirrors 383
Vehicle identification number 527
Vehicle Stability Control (VSC) 283
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) 283

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

W

Warning buzzers
- Brake system 465
- Electric power steering system 466
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert)..... 242
- Open back door 128
- Open door 125
- Pre-crash warning..... 234
- RSA (Road Sign Assist)..... 252
- Seat belt reminder..... 467
- Toyota parking assist-sensor 262

Warning lights 97
- ABS..... 466
- Brake system 465
- Electric power steering system 466
- High engine coolant temperature warning light ... 465
- Low fuel level 467
- Malfunction indicator lamp 466
- Master warning light..... 468
- PCS warning light 467
- Seat belt reminder light..... 467
- Slip indicator 466
- SRS warning light 466
- Tire pressure warning light.... 468

Warning messages 472
Washer..... 221, 225
- Checking..... 410
- Preparing and checking before winter..... 292
- Switch 221, 225

Washing and waxing 390
Weight..... 526
Wheels 429
- Replacing..... 429
- Size..... 534

Window glasses..... 170
Window lock switch 170
Windows..... 170
- Power windows..... 170
- Rear window defogger..... 362

Windshield wipers 221
- Intermittent wiper with interval adjuster..... 221
- Rain-sensing windshield wipers..... 222

Winter driving tips 292
Wireless remote control key... 118
- Battery-saving function..... 134, 147
- Locking/Unlocking..... 122
- Replacing the battery..... 433

WMA disc* 304

*: For vehicles with navigation/multimedia system, refer to “Navigation and multimedia system Owner’s manual”.

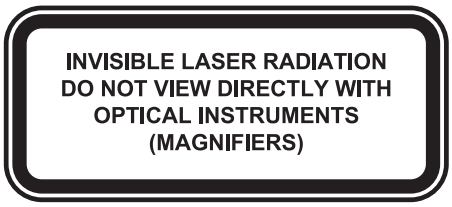
⚠ WARNING

■ Front sensor

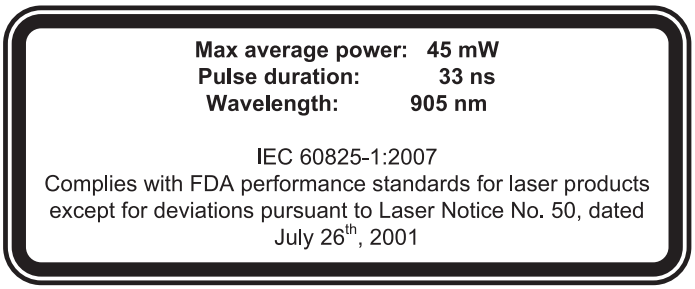
The front sensor uses lasers to detect vehicles ahead of your vehicle. The front sensor is classified as class 1M laser product according to the IEC 60825-1 standard. Under normal usage conditions, these lasers are not harmful to the naked eye. However, it is necessary to observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may result in the loss of eyesight or severe visual impairment.

- To avoid hazardous laser radiation exposure, never attempt to disassemble the front sensor (e.g. remove the lenses). When disassembled, the front sensor is classified as a class 3B laser product according to the IEC 60825-1 standard. Class 3B lasers are hazardous and pose a risk of eye injury under direct exposure.
- Do not attempt to look into the front sensor with a magnifying glass, microscope or other optical instrument within a distance of less than 100 mm (3.9 in.).

Laser classification label



Laser explanatory label

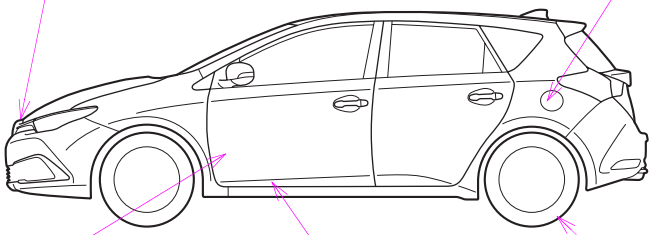


Laser emission data

Maximum average power: 45 mW
Pulse duration: 33 ns
Wave length: 905 nm
Divergence (horizontal x vertical): 28° x 12°

GAS STATION INFORMATION

Auxiliary catch lever		Fuel filler door
P. 402		P. 229



Hood lock release lever	Fuel filler door opener	Tire inflation pressure
P. 402	P. 229	P. 534

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	45 L (11.9 gal., 9.9 Imp. gal.)
Fuel type	P. 528
Cold tire inflation pressure	P. 534
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)	P. 529
Engine oil type	“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent P. 529